

VOLVMEN PRIMVM

DE BELLO GALLICO

Λ

CAIO IVLIO CÆSARE



AD VERBUM TROPICEQVE ÎNTERPRETATVS

AB

ANDREA ÎNGLE

COPYRIGHT INFORMATION

Licensees may copy, distribute, display and perform the work and make derivative works and remixes based on it only if they give the author or licensor the credits (attribution) in the manner specified by these.

Licensees may copy, distribute, display, and perform the work and make derivative works and remixes based on it only for non-commercial purposes.

Licensees may distribute derivative works only under a license identical ("not more restrictive") to the license that governs the original work. Without share-alike, derivative works might be sublicensed with compatible but more restrictive license clauses, e.g. CC BY to CC BY-NC.)



IMPORTANT NOTICE!

This is a work in progress and is by no means a final copy—think of it as an incomplete first draft; the formatting is not complete, and translations and definitions have not been fully edited, and as I have but one year of experience in latin, one can expect many errors within.

Last Updated:
Friday, May 12, 2017
07:29:02

Revision number:	1031
File Name:	Liber.odt
Time Editing:	484:24:54.00
Pages:	628
Paragraphs:	11106
Words:	126767
Characters:	777671
Tables:	1804
Graphics:	2
Objects:	0
Footnotes (+ Definitions)	3000

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Copyright Information	I.VIII
IMPORTANT NOTICE!	Cæsar forbids the Helvians entry.LXXXIX
Formatting Indexvi	I.IX
Abbreviationsvii	The Helvetians depart.XCIX
Referenced worksviii	I.X
The campaign against the Helvetii. .I	Cæsar learns of their plans.CVII
I.I	I.XI
Divisions and peoples.I	The Æduans, Ambarri, & Allobroges seek aid.CXVII
I.II	I.XII
Orgatorix persuades his people to migrate.XVII	Cæsar cuts to pieces one divisionCXXV
I.III	I.XIII
They make preparations.XXXI	Cæsar, bridging the Arar, crosses.CXXXV
I.IV	I.XIV
The conspiracy is revealed.XLIX	Cæsar lays down conditions.CXLVII
I.V	I.XV
The Helvetians prepare to migrate.LVII	The Helvetians resume their march.CLXIII
I.VI	I.XVI
Two possible routes through the Province.LXVII	The Æduans do not bring the promised grain.CLXXI
I.VII	I.XVII
Cæsar hastens to Geneva.LXXV	Liscus discloses the treachery.CLXXXIII

<u>I.XVIII</u>	<u>a tally of the Helvetians and their allies</u>CCXCIX
<u>Cæsar learns that Dumnorix is a traitor</u>CXCI	<u>The campaign against Ariovistus</u>
<u>I.XIX</u>	<u>CCC</u>
<u>Cæsar consults Dumnorix' brother</u>CCIX	<u>I.XXX</u>
<u>I.XX</u>	<u>The Gallic leaders congratulate Cæsar</u>CCCV
<u>Cæsar pardons Dumnorix, but warns him</u>CCXIX	<u>I.XXXI</u>
<u>I.XXI</u>	<u>Cæsar is beseeched to defend Gaul</u>CCCXV
<u>Cæsar plans to crush the Helvetians</u>CCXXXI	<u>I.XXXII</u>
<u>I.XXII</u>	<u>The Seguanians show what might happen</u>CCXXXIX
<u>Through false information the plan fails</u>CCXXXVII	<u>I.XXXIII</u>
<u>I.XXIII</u>	<u>Cæsar promises to help against Ariovistus</u>CCXXLVII
<u>Cæsar turns to go to Bibracte for supplies</u>CCXLVII	<u>I.XXXIV</u>
<u>I.XXIV</u>	<u>Cæsar invites Ariovistus to a conference</u>CCCLVII
<u>Romans and Helvetians prepare for battle</u>CCLIII	<u>I.XXXV</u>
<u>I.XXV</u>	<u>Cæsar makes demands of Ariovistus</u>CCCLXIII
<u>The Romans charge</u>CCLIX	<u>I.XXXVI</u>
<u>I.XXVI</u>	<u>Ariovistus replies, defying Cæsar</u>CCCLXXI
<u>The Helvetians are totally defeated</u>CCLXXI	<u>I.XXXVII</u>
<u>I.XXVII</u>	<u>Cæsar hears further complaints</u>CCCLXXXI
<u>The Helvetians beg for terms</u>CCLXXXI	<u>I.XXXVIII</u>
<u>I.XXVIII</u>	<u>Cæsar hastens to Vesontio</u>CCCLXXXVII
<u>Cæsar deals with the fugitive Verbigens</u>CCLXXXIX	<u>I.XXXIX</u>
<u>I.XXIX</u>	

Panic seizes Cæsar's army. CCCXCV	I.LI
I.XL	Cæsar forces an engagement.DXXXIII
Cæsar employs a persuasive address.CDVII	I.LII
I.XLI	Desperate fighting, hand-to-hand.DXXXIX
The army reinvigorated, Cæsar advances.CDXXXI	I.LIII
I.XLII	Cæsar is victorious.DXLVII
Ariovistus suggests a conference.CDXXXIX	I.LIV
	Cæsar goes to north Italy.DLVII
I.XLIII	AppendixDLXII
Cæsar and Ariovistus meet.CDLI	
I.XLIV	Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar
Ariovistus is uncompromising and defiant.CDLXIII	§39DLXII
I.XLV	§113DLXII
Cæsar declines to make an concessions.CDLXXXV	§146DLXIII
	§147DLXV
I.XLVI	§148DLXV
The conference is disrupted by an attack.CDXCI	§170DLXV
	§194DLXVII
I.XLVII	§196DLXVIII
Ariovistus reopens negotiations.CDXCIX	§282DLXVIII
	§283DLXIX
	§289DLXIX
	§291DLXIX
	§293DLXIX
I.XLVIII	§301DLXX
Arioristus moves camp.DIX	§306DLXX
	§307DLXX
I.XLIX	§308DLXX
Cæsar fortifies a camp beyond Ariovistus.DXIX	§317DLXXI
	§323DLXXI
I.L	§326DLXXI
The Germans consult the spirits.DXXV	§335DLXXII
	§343DLXXII
	§345DLXXII
	§346DLXXIII
	§347DLXXIII

§348	DLXXIII	§424	DLXXXIII
§349	DLXXIV	§425	DLXXXIV
§350	DLXXIV	§426	DLXXXIV
§359	DLXXIV	§427	DLXXXV
§364	DLXXV	§428	DLXXXV
§367	DLXXV	§429	DLXXXV
§368	DLXXV	§431	DLXXXVI
§369	DLXXVI	§432	DLXXXVI
§370	DLXXVI	§434	DLXXXVI
§372	DLXXVI	§439	DLXXXVII
§373	DLXXVI	§444	DLXXXVII
§374	DLXXVI	§450	DLXXXVII
§376	DLXXVI	§452	DLXXXVII
§377	DLXXVII	§457	DLXXXVII
§381	DLXXVII	§463	DLXXXVII
§382	DLXXVII	§469	DLXXXVIII
§383	DLXXVII	§470	DLXXXVIII
§384	DLXXVII	§481	DLXXXVIII
§388	DLXXVIII	§495	DLXXXVIII
§390	DLXXVIII	§496	DLXXXIX
§393	DLXXVIII	§503	DLXXXIX
§396	DLXXVIII	§504	DLXXXIX
§400	DLXXIX	§506	DLXXXIX
§401	DLXXIX	§507	DXC
§402	DLXXIX	§508	DXC
§403	DLXXIX	§509	DXC
§404	DLXXIX	§510	DXC
§405	DLXXIX	§513	DXC
§406	DLXXX	§514	DXCI
§407	DLXXX	§516	DXCII
§408	DLXXX	§524	DXCII
§409	DLXXXI	§526	DXCII
§410	DLXXXI	§527	DXCIII
§411	DLXXXI	§529	DXCIII
§412	DLXXXI	§531	DXCIII
§414	DLXXXI	§534	DXCIII
§415	DLXXXII	§535	DXCIV
§416	DLXXXII	§536	DXCIV
§417	DLXXXII	§537	DXCV
§418	DLXXXII	§539	DXCV
§419	DLXXXIII	§540	DXCV
§420	DLXXXIII	§543	DXCVI
§423	DLXXXIII	§545	DXCVI

§546	DXCVI	§572	DCI
§549	DXCVI	§573	DCI
§551	DXCVI	§576	DCI
§553	DXCVII	§577	DCI
§555	DXCVII	§580	DCIII
§556	DXCVII	§583	DCIII
§557	DXCVII	§584	DCIII
§558	DXCVIII	§586	DCIV
§560	DXCVIII	§587	DCIV
§561	DXCVIII	§588	DCV
§562	DXCIX	§589	DCV
§563	DXCIX	§592	DCV
§564	DXCIX	§593	DCVI
§565	DXCIX	§601	DCVI
§566DC	§640	DCVI
§567DC		
§568DC	Lewis & Short's Latin	
§569DC	Dictionary	

FORMATTING INDEX

Symbol & Structure		Example
I.I.I.	Book; chapter; sentence	I.V.X.
	Authentic Latin text	GALLIA EST OM̄NIS DĪVĪSA IN PARTĒS TRĒS...
""	Direct Latin text translated from indirect text (when applicable)	"MIHI QUIDEM PERSUADETUR"
	Subordinated Latin text	Is sibi lĕgātĭōnem ad cĭvitatēs suscipit
1	Footnotes	Gallia est ¹ omnis ² dīvīsa ^{3 4 5} in partēs ⁶ trēs
=	Ad verbatim translation in English	= <i>all Gaul is separated into three parts</i>
~	Figurative translation in English	~ <i>the whole of Gallia is divided into three parts</i>
	Vocabulary definitions	dīvīdus, -a, -um, ADJ. (DĪVIDO), separated
	Grammatical notes	PRED. NOM. SG.
(...)	Words to smoothen translation	= <i>the Marne and the Seine separates (them) from the Belgæ</i>
[...]	Missing or necessary words	= <i>one [part] of which the Belgæ inhabit</i>
<...>	Hints of grammar not necessary but helpful	= <i>it was a great <source of> hiderance to the Gauls for fighting</i>
text	Text which is considered redundant in the English language	= routes <i>in which (of such a character that by them) they could be able to go forth from (their) home</i>
//	Words from another location in the text inserted	= <i>and /they (the Belgæ) import/ those (things)</i>
	Uncertain text	sē præsente

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	absolute	intr.	intransitive
abs.	absolute	irr.	irregular
acc.	accusative	lit.	literal
adj.	adjective	loc.	locative
adv.	adverb	m.	masculine
aka.	also known as	meton.	by metonymy
char.	characteristic	milit.	military sense
coll.	collective, collectively	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	comparative, compound	neg.	negative
conj.	conjunction	nom.	nominative
const.	construction	num.	numeral
dat.	dative	obj.	object
decl.	declension	opp.	opposed to, opposite
def.	defective	P. a.	participle adjective
dif.	difference	part.	participle
dem.	demonstrative	pass.	passive
dep.	deponent	pers.	person, personal
esp.	especially	perf.	perfect
ex.	example	pl.	plural
dim.	diminutive	plup.	pluperfect
distrib.	distributive	pos.	positive
e.g.	exempli gratia, for example	ppp.	perfect past participle
Eng.	English	præp.	preposition
etc.	et cetera, and so forth	pred.	predicate
equiv.	equivalent	pres.	present
excl.	exclamation	pron.	pronoun, pronominal
expr.	expressed	prop.	proper, -ly, in a proper sense
f.	feminine	purp.	purpose
fig.	figuratively	reflex.	reflexive
fut.	future	rel.	relative
gen.	genitive	res.	result
in gen.	in general	semi-dep.	semi-deponent
id.	idem, the same	sg.	singular
i.e.	id est, that is	signif.	significance.
imp.	imperative	spec.	specification
impers.	impersonal, impersonally	subj.	subjunctive, subject
imperf.	imperfect	subst.	substantive
inch.	inchoative, inceptive	sup.	superlative
indecl.	indeclinable	t. t.	technical term
indef.	indefinite	trans.	translate, translation, transitive
indic.	indicative		
indir.	indirect	trop.	in a tropical or figurative sense
inf.	infinitive	usu.	usually
intens.	intensive	v.	verb
inter.	interrogative	voc.	vocative
interj.	interjection		

REFERENCED WORKS

Harpers' Latin Dictionary: A New Latin Dictionary Founded on the Translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon

Edited by E.A. Andrews An Elementary Latin Dictionary with Brief Helps for Latin Readers Charlton T. Lewis

Cæsar's Gallic War (Allen & Greenough's Edition)

Julius Cæsar, James B. Greenough, Benjamin L. D'ooge, M. Grant Daniel

Allen and Greenough's New Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges

J. B. Greenough, G. L. Kittredge, A. A. Howard, Benjamin. L. D'ooge

Commentaries on the Gallic War – Cæsar Completely Parsed with Interlinear and Marginal Translations

Julius Cæsar, Rev. James B. Finch

C. Iulii. Cæsaris Commentarii Rerum Gestarum. Cæsar's Commentaries – The Gallic War, Books I-IV, With Selections From Books V-VII and from The Civil War

Julius Cæsar, Kelsey W. Frances

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic war: Literally Translated, with Explanatory Notes

Julius Cæsar, Hinds & Noble

De Bello Gallico – Libri VII : Cæsar's Gallic War, with a Life of Cæsar, Geography and People of Gaul, History of the Military Art in Cæsar's Commentaries; Historical and Grammatical Notes; Vocabulary and an Index

Julius Cæsar, Lowe Corneluis Marshall, Ewing J. T

College Cæsar: Latin Text with Facing Vocabulary and Commentary

Julius Cæsar, Geoffrey Steadman

A Latin Reader for the Second Year, with Notes, Exercises for Translation into Latin, Grammatical Appendix, and Vocabularies

Julius Cæsar, John Carew Rolfe, Walter Dennison

Cæsar's Bellum Gallicum Book 1, with Vocabulary, Notes, and Clause Subordination

Julius Cæsar, James A. StephensThe campaign against the Helvetians.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETII.

I.I

DIVISIONS AND PEOPLES.

I.I.I.



ALLIA EST OMNIS DĪVĪSA ĪN PARTĒS TRĒS,
QUĀRUM ŪNAM ĪNCOLUNT BELGÆ, ALIAM
AQUITĀNĪ, TERTIAM QUĪ IPSŌRUM LĪNGUĀ
CELTÆ, NOSTRĀ GALLĪ APPELLANTUR.

Gallia^I est^{II} omnis^{III} dīvisā^{IV V VI} in^{VII} partēs^{VIII} trēs^{IX}

=all Gaul is divided into three ~the whole of Gallia is divided into three parts

quārum^X [partem]^{XI} incolunt^{XII} Belgæ^{XIII}

=one [part] of which the Belgæ ~one of which the Belgæ inhabit

aliā^{XIV} [partem] Aquītānī^{XV} [incolunt]

=another [part] the Aquitani ~the Aquitani another [inhabit]

I **Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul**, the country of the Gauls, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany

II **sum, fui, esse** (ES-; FEV-), AS A PREDICATE, *asserting existence, to be, exist, live*; Of circumstances or condition, *to be, be found, be situated, be placed*; WITH DAT., *to belong, pertain, be possessed, be ascribed*; WITH GEN. POSSESS., *to belong to, pertain to, be of, be the part of, be peculiar to, be characteristic of, be the duty of*; Of events, *to be, happen, occur, befall, take place*; **fōre** FOR *futurum esse* (SEE CHART §170)

III **omnis, -e, adj., pl., all, every**; SG., *every, all, the whole*—"Gallia est omnis divisa," *the whole of Gallia*

IV **est...dīvisā**, PART. USED AS ADJ. PARTICIPLES ARE OFTEN USED AS PREDICATE ADJECTIVES. AS SUCH THEY MAY BE JOINED TO THE SUBJECT BY ESSE OR A COPULATIVE VERB. NOTE. FROM THIS PREDICATE USE ARISE THE COMPOUND TENSES OF THE PASSIVE,—THE PARTICIPLE OF COMPLETED ACTION WITH THE INCOMPLETE TENSES OF ESSE DEVELOPING THE IDEA OF PAST TIME: AS, INTERFECTUS EST, HE WAS (OR HAS BEEN) KILLED, LIT. HE IS HAVING-BEEN-KILLED (I.E. ALREADY SLAIN). §495

V PRED. NOM. SG.

VI **divīdus, a, um, adj. (DIVIDO), separated**; IN PPP. AS ADJ., *divided*

VII **in, prap. with acc. or abl., with acc., in space, with verbs implying entrance, into, to**; WITH ABL., *of space, in, within*; WITH ABL. *Of position, on, upon, over, among, before, in, under*; Of a multitude or number, *in, among, of*; In other relations, in which an aiming at, an inclining or striving towards a thing, is conceivable, *on, about, respecting; towards, against; for, as; in, to; into*; Of purpose, *for, with a view to*; In time, *into, till, for*

VIII **pars, partis, f. (PAR-), a part, piece, portion, share; direction, side; place district**; Fig., *"ex parte," in part, partly*

IX **trēs, tria, gen. trium, card; num., three**

tertiam^I [partem]

=the third [part]

~the third

[eī] quī^{II} ipsōrum^{III} linguā^{IV} v Celtā^{VI} [appellantur]^{VII}

=[those] who in <respect to> the language of themselves [are called] Celts

~those who, in their own language, are called Celts

nostrā [linguā]^{VIII} Gallī appellantur

=in <respect to> our [language], they are called Gauls

~in our language they are called Gauls

X **quī, quæ, quod**, GEN. **cuius**, PRON. (CA-), INTERROG, *who? which? what? what kind of a?*; SG. N., *what, as far as, as much as, to the extent that* (MOSTLY ADJ., AS SUBST., *quī* ASKS THE NATURE OR CHARACTER, *quis* THE NAME); WITH AN ACCESSORY SIGNIF., *causal or final*, JOINED TO THE SUBJ. *As, because, seeing that, since*; AS CONJ., *because* (SEE CHART: RELATIVE PRONOUNS §147 & INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS §148)

XI **ūnus, -a, -um**, ADJ., Prop. In gen., *one, a single*—WITH GEN. PART.; Esp. ADV., **ūnā**, *in one and the same place, at the same time, in company, together* (SEE CHART: ŪNUS, ONE §113)

XII **incolō, -luī, —, ere** (IN + COLŌ), *to be at home, abide, dwell*

XIII **Belgae, -ārum**, M., *the Belgae or Belgians*, a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul

XIV **alius, -a, -ud**, ADJ. PRONOM. (AL-), *another, other, different; alius...alius, one...another*—IN PL., *some...others* (SEE CHART: ALIUS (N. ALIUD), OTHER §113)

XV **Aquitānus, -a, -um**, *of Aquitania, Aquitanian*; IN PL., AS SUBST., *the Aquani or Aquitanians*, inhabiting south-western Gaul

I **tertius, -a, -um** (TER), NUM., *third*

II ANTECEDENT (SP. *eī*) IS OFTEN OMITTED. THE ANTECEDENT NOUN SOMETIMES APPEARS IN BOTH CLAUSES, BUT USUALLY ONLY IN THE ONE THAT PRECEDES. SOMETIMES IT IS WHOLLY OMITTED. III. THE ANTECEDENT MAY BE OMITTED, ESPECIALLY IF IT IS INDEFINITE. §307^{III}

III **ipse, -a, -um**, GEN. **ipsius**. PRON. DEMONSTR., In gen., *to express eminence or emphasis. Self, in person* (often rendered by an emphatic *he*, or by *very, just, precisely*); To EMPHASIZE ONE OF THE SUBJECTS OF A COMMON PREDICATE., WITH *et, he too, himself in person, even he*; To make prominent one of two or more subjects of any predicate, *for his part, he too, also, as well* (SEE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN CHARTS: IPSE, SELF. §146)

I.I.II.

HĪ OMNĒS LINGUĀ, ĪNSTITŪTĪS, LĒGIBUS INTER SĒ
DIFFERUNT.

IV ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. I. TO THIS HEAD ARE TO BE REFERRED MANY EXPRESSIONS WHERE THE ABLATIVE EXPRESSES THAT IN ACCORDANCE WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. NOT E. AS THE ROMANS HAD NO SUCH CATEGORIES AS WE MAKE, IT IS IMPOSSIBLE TO CLASSIFY ALL USES OF THE ABLATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (ORIGINALLY INSTRUMENTAL) IS CLOSELY AKIN TO THAT OF MANNER, AND SHOWS SOME RESEMBLANCE TO MEANS AND CAUSE. §418

V **lingua**, -**æ**, f., *the tongue, the tongue; A tongue, utterance, speech, language*

VI **Celtae**, -**ārum**, m., *Celts, the people of central Gaul*

VII **appellō**, -**āvi**, -**ātus**, -**āre** (AD + PELLO), *to address, speak to, apply to, accost; To call by name, term, name, entitle*

VIII **nostrā** [**linguā**], ABL. OF SPEC. §418

Hī omnēs linguā^I, institūtis^{II III}, lēgibus^{IV V} inter^{VI} sē^{VII} differunt^{VIII}
 =all these (people) differ among ~all these differ from each other
 themselves in <respect to> in language, customs and laws
 language, in <respect to>
 customs, (and) in <respect to>
 laws

I.I.III.

GALLŌS AB AQUITĀNĪS GARUMNA FLŪMEN, Ā BELGĪS
 MATRONA ET SĒQUANA DĪVIDIT.

Gallōs ab Aquitānīs^{IX} Garumna flūmen^X [dīvidit]
 =the river Garonne [separates] ~the river Garonne separates
 the Gauls from the Aquitani the Gauls from the Aquitani

I ABL. OF SPEC. §418

II ABL. OF SPEC. §418

III **institūtum ī**, N. (P. OF INSTITUO), a purpose, intention, design; A practice, custom, usage, habit

IV ABL. OF SPEC. §418

V **lēx lēgis**, F. (LEG-), a formal proposition for a law, motion, bill (offered by a magistrate to the people); A law, precept, regulation, principle, rule, mode, manner

VI **inter**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. (ANA-), between, betwixt; Esp., WITH PRONOUNS, to express all reciprocal relations, among, with, or between one another; mutually, together; With a period, during, in the course of, within, for, by, at

VII **inter sē**, SPECIAL USE OF REF. SPECIAL USES OF THE REFLEXIVE ARE THE FOLLOWING: VI. INTER SĒ (NŌS, VŌS), AMONG THEMSELVES (OURSELVES, YOURSELVES), IS REGULARLY USED TO EXPRESS RECIPROCAL ACTION OR RELATION. §301

VIII **diffĕro, distŭli, dīlātum, differre** (DIF + FERO), to carry different ways; to spread abroad, scatter, disperse, separate; to differ, be different

IX **ab Aquitānīs...ā Belgīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT., DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

X **flūmen, inis**, N. (FLV-), a flowing, flood, stream, running water; river

ā Belgīs Matrona^I [flūmen] et Sēquana^{II III} dīvidit^{IV}

=the Marne [river] and the Seine ~the Marne and the Seine
(river) separate (them) from the separate them from the Belgæ
Belgæ

I.I.IV.

HŌRŪM OMŔNIUM FORTISSIMĪ SŪNT BELGÆ, PROPTERĒA
QUOD Ā CULTŪ ATQUE HŪMĀNITĀTE PRŌVĪNCIÆ
LŌNGISSIMĒ ABSŪNT, MINIMĒQUE AD EŌS MERCĀTŌRĒS
SÆPE COMMEĀNT ATQUE EA QUÆ AD EFFĒMĪNĀNDŌS
ĀNIMŌS PERTĪNĒNT IMPORTĀNT, PROXIMĪQUE SŪNT
GERMĀNĪS QUĪ TRĀNS RHĒNUM ĪNCOLŪNT, QUĪBŪSCUM
CONTĪNĒNTER BELLŪM GERŪNT.

Hōrum^V omnium fortissimī^{VI VII} sunt Belgæ

=of all these men, the bravest ~of all these, the Belgæ are the
are the Belgæ bravest

I Martona, ae, m., the Marne

II ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III Sēquana, -ae, m., the Seine

IV ā Belgīs...Sēquana dīvidit, V. IN PL. WHEN TWO OR MORE SG. OBJS. TWO OR MORE SINGULAR SUBJECTS TAKE A VERB IN THE PLURAL; II. IF THE SUBJECTS ARE CONNECTED BY DISJUNCTIVES (§223i), OR IF THEY ARE CONSIDERED AS A SINGLE WHOLE, THE VERB IS USUALLY SINGULAR. NOTE. ALMOST ALWAYS WHEN THE SUBJECTS ARE ABSTRACT NOUNS. §317II

V horum, PART. GEN. WITH fortissimī. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS, I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NULLUS, ETC. §346I

VI PRED. NOM. SUPERL. ADJ. WITH sunt

VII fortis, -e, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FER-), strong, powerful, mighty; Strong, vigorous, firm, steadfast, stout, courageous, brave, manly, valiant, bold, fearless

propterea^I quod ā cultū^{II} ^{III} atque^{IV} hūmānitāte^V ^{VI} prōvinciāe
longissimē^{VII} ^{VIII} absunt^{IX}

=on that account because they ~because they are furthest from
are the furthest away from the the civilization and refinement
culture and humanity of (our) of our Province
province

minimēque^X ad eōs mercātōrēs^{XI} sæpe^{XII} commeant^{XIII}

=and (because) merchants least ~and merchants least often
often travel to them frequent them

-
- I **propterea**, ADV. (PROPTER), *therefore, for that cause, on that account*; Esp., in the phrase, *propterea quod, because*
- II ABL. OF SEPAR. §401
- III **cultus, -ūs**, M. (COL-), *labor, care, cultivation, culture; Style, care, way of life, cultivation, civilization, refinement, luxury*
- IV **atque** or **ac** (ONLY BEFORE CONSONANTS), CONJ. (AD + QUE), *and* (LIKE -que, it CONNECTS WORDS OR THOUGHTS WHICH FORM A WHOLE, BUT UNLIKE - que GIVES PROMINENCE RATHER TO WHAT FOLLOWS, AND IS RARELY REPEATED); COPULATIVE. CONNECTING SINGLE WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS, *and, as well as, together with*; WITH THE DEM. PRON. *hic, is, and besides, and that, and that too*
- V ABL. OF SEPAR. §401
- VI **hūmānitās, -ātis**, F. (HUMANUS), *human nature, humanity; Civilization, cultivation, good-breeding, elegance, refinement*
- VII **longus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (LEG-), *long, extend; Distant, remote, long delayed; longē, long, in length; To be far away, i.e. to be of no assistance, of no avail; Widely, greatly, much, very much, by far* —ESP. WITH SUP. AND COMP.
- VIII USED AS ADV. SUPERL.
- IX **absum, āfui, āfutūrus** (AB + SUM), In general, *to be away from, be absent*
- X **minimē**, ADV. SUP. (MINIMUS), *least of all, in the smallest degree, least, very little*
- XI **mercātor, -ōris**, M. (MERCOR), *a trader, merchant, wholesale dealer*
- XII **sæpe**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (SAC-), *often, oft, oftentimes, many times, frequently*
- XIII **commeō, commeāvī, commeatum, commeāre** (COM + MEO), *visit or travel to; to frequent; to and fro*

atque^{xiv} ea

=and // those (things)

~and // those things

quæ ad effēminandōsⁱⁱ animōs^{iv} pertinent^v

=which tend to <the purpose of>
effeminating minds

~which tend to enervate the
mind

important^{vi}

=/and/ import /those (things)/

~import

proximīque^{vii} sunt Germānīs^{viii}

=and they are the nearest to the
Germans

~and they are the nearest to the
Germans

XIV atque, CONJ. INDECLFORM., *and, and also*; AFTER WORDS EXPRESSING SIMILARITY, OR THE OPPOSITE, *atque* or *ac* has the force of *than, as*; *as, in parem...condicionem atque ipsi erant, into the same condition...as themselves*, Lit. *as (and) they themselves were* (I.XXVIII)

II ad effēminandōs animōs. ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. WHEN THE GERUND WOULD HAVE AN OBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE, THE GERUNDIVE IS GENERALLY USED INSTEAD. THE GERUNDIVE AGREES WITH ITS NOUN, WHICH TAKES THE CASE THAT THE GERUND WOULD HAVE HAD. §503 & THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

III effēminō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (EX + FEMINA), *to make feminine, represent as feminine*; Fig., *to make womanish, effeminate, enervate*

IV animus, -ī, M. (AN-), *the rational soul*; Of the mind, *the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind*

V pertineō, -uī, —, -ēre (PER + TENEŌ), *to stretch out, reach, extend*; *To have a tendency, tend, lead, conduce*; *To have a tendency, to tend or lead to an object or result*

VI importō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (IN + PORTŌ), *to bring in, introduce, bring from abroad, import*

VII proximus, -a, -um, ADJ. (PROPE), *the nearest, next*; SUBST. N., *the neighborhood, vicinity, nearest place*

VIII DAT. WITH ADJ. OF NEARNESS, proximī. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS; AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS; IDŌNEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFĪNIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICĪNUS; PĀR, DISPĀR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IŪCUNDUS, GRĀTUS; NŌTUS, IGNŌTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

quī trāns^I Rhēnum incolunt

=*who dwell across the Rhine*

~*who dwell beyond the Rhine*

quibuscum^{II} continenter^{III} bellum^{IV} gerunt^V

=*(those men) with whom they*
are continuously bearing war

~*with whom they are*
continuously waging war

I.I.V.

QUĀ DĒ CAUSĀ HELVĒTIĪ QUOQUE RELIQUŌS GALLŌS
VIRTŪTE PRÆCĒDUNT, QUOD FERĒ COTĪDIĀNĪS PRĒLIĪS
CŪM GERMĀNĪS CONTĒNDUNT, CŪM AUT SUĪS FĪNIBUS
EŌS PROHIBENT AUT IPSĪ IN EŌRUM FĪNIBUS BELLUM
GERUNT.

I **trāns**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. (TER-), Of motion, *across, over, to the farther side of*; Of position, *across, beyond, on the other side of*

II **quibuscum** = cum quibus

III **contineō, -tinuī, -tentus, -ēre** (COM- + TENEŌ), *to hold together, bound, limit, comprise, enclose, surround, environ*; Of places, *to bound, limit, enclose*; With the access. idea of hindering, preventing motion, *to keep, keep still, detain, restrain, repress, enclose*; Trop., *to hold back, detain, repress, hold in check, curb, check, stay, stop, tame, subdue, etc.*; ADV., **continenter**, *In time, continuously, without interruption*

IV **bellum, -ī**, N. (DVA-, DVI-), *war*

V **gerō, gessī, gestus, -ere** (GES-), *to bear about, bear, carry, wear, have, hold, sustain*; *To carry out, administer, manage, regulate, rule, govern, conduct, carry on, wage, transact, accomplish, do, perform*

Quā dē causā^{I II} Helvētīi^{III} quoque^{IV} reliquōs^{V VI} Gallōs virtūte^{VII VIII} prācēdunt^{IX}

=concerning which cause the ~for which reason the Helvetii
Helvetii also precede the also surpass the rest of the
remaining Gauls in <respect to> Gauls in valor
valor

I **quā dē causā**, A RELATIVE PRONOUN (OR ADVERB) OFTEN STANDS AT THE BEGINNING OF AN INDEPENDENT SENTENCE OR CLAUSE, SERVING TO CONNECT IT WITH THE SENTENCE OR CLAUSE THAT PRECEDES.. §308VI

II **causa, -æ**, F. (CAV-), a cause, reason, motive, inducement, occasion, opportunity; Esp., **Causā**, IN ABL. WITH GEN. OR POSSESS. ADJ. (*usu. put after the noun*), as *patris causā, meā causā*, on account of, for the sake of, ALMOST ALWAYS REFERRING TO THE FUTURE, AND IMPLYING A PURPOSE

III **Helvētius, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Helvetii (a tribe between Lake Geneva, the Rhone, and the Rhine)

IV **quoque**, CONJ. (QUE + QUO), also, too

V TRANS. AS, “the rest of,” SUPERLATIVES (AND MORE RARELY COMPARATIVES) DENOTING ORDER AND SUCCESSION—ALSO MEDIUS, [CĒTERUS], RELIQUUS—USUALLY DESIGNATE NOT WHAT OBJECT, BUT WHAT PART OF IT, IS MEANT. §293

VI **reliquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (RE- + LIC-), left, left over, remaining

VII ABL. OF SPEC. §418

VIII **virtūs, -ūtis**, F. (VIR), manliness, manhood, i.e. the sum of all the corporeal or mental excellences of man, strength, vigor; bravery, courage; aptness, capacity; worth, excellence, virtue, etc.; Military talents, courage, valor, bravery, gallantry, fortitude

IX **prācēdō, -cessi, -cessus, -ere** (PRÆ + CEDŌ), to go before, precede, lead the way, lead; Trop., to surpass, outstrip, outdo, excel, be superior

quod ferē^I cottidiānis^{II} prœliis^{III} cum^{IV} Germānis contendunt^V

=because they are contending ~as they contend with the
with the Germans in almost Germans in almost daily battles
daily battles

cum aut^{VI} suis finibus^{VII VIII} eōs prohibent^{IX X}

=when they either hold them, ~when they either repel them
(away) from their own borders from their own territories

aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt^{XI}

=or (when) they themselves ~or themselves wage war on
wage war in their territories their frontiers

I **ferē**, ADV. (FER-), *closely, quite, entirely, fully, altogether, just; Of degree, nearly, almost, well-nigh, within a little, for the most part, about*

II **cottidiānus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COTTIDIE; QUOT + DIES), *of every day, daily*

III **cotidiānis prœliis**. ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **cum**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (SEC-), *with, together with, in the company of, in connection with, along with, together, and; Cum* IN ANASTROPHE (ANASTROPHE: INVERSION OF THE USUAL ORDER OF WORDS. §640). SO ALWAYS WITH THE PERS. PRON., *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum*, etc.

V **contendō, -dī, -tus, -ere** (CON + TENDO), *to stretch, bend, draw tight, strain; To measure strength, strive, dispute, fight, contend, vie; To march, press on, seek, journey hastily, hasten; With the access. idea of hindering, preventing motion, to keep, keep still, detain, restrain, repress, enclose*

VI **aut**, CONJ., INTRODUCING AN ANTITHESIS TO WHAT PRECEDES, *or*; SO INTRODUCING SUCCESSIVE ALTERNATIVES, *or...or*; INTRODUCING TWO ALTERNATIVES, *aut ... aut, either...or*

VII **suis finibus**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VIII **finis, -is**, M. (FID-), *that which divides, a boundary, limit, border; Borders, territory, land, country*

IX **cum...prohibent, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM, WHEN, AND SOME PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE DATES OR DEFINES THE TIME AT WHICH THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB OCCURRED. §545

X **prohibeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (PRO + HABEO), *to hold before, hold back, keep away, check, restrain, hinder, prevent, avert, keep off, debar; To keep away, keep, preserve, defend, protect*

XI **cum...gerunt, cum** CLAUSE. §545

I.I.VI.

EÖRUM ŪNA PARS, QUAM GALLŌS OBTĪNĒRE DICTUM EST, ĪNITIUM CAPIT Ā FLŪMĪNE RHODANŌ; CONTĪNĒTUR GARŪMNĀ FLŪMĪNE, ŌCEANŌ, FĪNIBUS BELGĀRUM; ATTĪNGIT ETIAM AB SĒQUANĪS ET HELVĒTIĪS FLŪMĒN RHĒNUM; VERGIT AD SEPTĒNTRIŌNĒS.

Eōrum ūna pars

=one part of these (territories)

~one part of these

quam Gallōs obtinēre^{I II}

=which /it has been said/ that the Gauls occupy

~which /it has been said/ that the Gauls occupy

dictum est^{III IV}

=it was said

~it has been said

I **Gallōs obtinēre.** INDIR. DISC. DEP. ON **dictum est.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **obtimeō, -tinuī, -tentus, -ēre** (OB + TENEO), to hold fast, have, occupy, possess, preserve, keep, maintain

III **quam...obtinēre...dictum est,** SUBST. CLAUSE. A CLAUSE USED AS A NOUN IS CALLED A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE. A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE MAY BE USED AS THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, AS AN APPOSITIVE, OR AS A PREDICATE NOMINATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE. § 561 & A CLAUSE WHICH IS USED AS A NOUN MAY BE CALLED A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, AS CERTAIN RELATIVE CLAUSES ARE SOMETIMES CALLED¹ ADJECTIVE CLAUSES. BUT IN PRACTICE THE TERM IS RESTRICTED TO CLAUSES WHICH REPRESENT A NOMINATIVE OR AN ACCUSATIVE CASE, THE CLAUSES WHICH STAND FOR AN ABLATIVE BEING SOMETIMES CALLED ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. EVEN WITH THIS LIMITATION THE TERM IS NOT QUITE PRECISE. THE FACT IS RATHER THAT THE CLAUSE AND THE LEADING VERB ARE MUTUALLY COMPLEMENTARY; EACH REINFORCES THE OTHER. THE SIMPLEST AND PROBABLY THE EARLIEST FORM OF SUCH SENTENCES IS TO BE FOUND IN THE PARATACTIC USE (SEE §268) OF TWO VERBS LIKE VOLO ABEAS, DICAMUS CENSEO, ADEAM OPTIMUM EST. FROM SUCH VERBS THE USAGE SPREAD BY ANALOGY TO OTHER VERBS, AND THE COMPLEMENTARY RELATION OF THE CLAUSE TO THE VERB CAME TO RESEMBLE THE COMPLEMENTARY FORCE OF THE ACCUSATIVE, ESPECIALLY THE ACCUSATIVE OF COGNATE MEANING (§390). §560 & A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB BECOMES THE SUBJECT WHEN THE VERB IS PUT IN THE PASSIVE (IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.) II. SOME VERBS THAT TAKE AN INFINITIVE INSTEAD OF A SUBJUNCTIVE ARE USED IMPERSONALLY IN THE PASSIVE, AND THE INFINITIVE BECOMES THE SUBJECT OF THE SENTENCE. §566II

initium^{I II} capit^{III} ā flūmine Rhodanō^{IV V}

=takes (its) entrance from the river Rhone ~takes its beginning at the river Rhone

attingit^{VI}

=it borders on ~it borders

IV **dicō, dixī, dictus, -ere** (DIC-), to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert; To appoint, set apart. fix upon, settle

I **initium, -ī**, N. (IN + EO), a going in, entrance; Fig., a beginning, commencement

II ACC. SG. OBJ. OF **capit**

III **capiō, cēpī, captus, -ere** (CAP-), to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp; In partic. Of living objects. To take into possession, take captive, seize, make prisoner—Of places. To occupy, choose, select, take possession of, enter into—mostly milit. t. t., to take up a position, select a place for a camp, etc.—Of things of value, property, money, etc. In gen., to take, seize, wrest, receive, obtain, acquire, get, etc.—Of regular income, revenue, etc., rents, tolls, profits, etc., to collect, receive, obtain; In gen., of any occupation, work, or undertaking, to begin, enter upon, take, undertake, etc.—TRANSF. OF PLACE

IV **ā flūmine Rhodanō.** ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

V **Rhodanus, -ī**, M., the Rhone

VI **attingō, -tigī, -tactus, -ere** (AD + TANGO), to touch, come in contact with; Of places, to be near, border on, adjoin, touch

etiam^I ab^{II} Sēquanīs^{III} et Helvētiīs^{IV} flūmen Rhēnum^V

=/it borders on/ also the river ~too, on the side of the Sequani
Rhine on (the side of) the and the Helvetii, upon the river
Sequani and on (the side of) the Rhine
Helvetii

continētur Garumnā^{VI} flūmine, Ōceanō^{VII}, finibus^{VIII} Belgārum

=it is bound by the river ~it is bounded by the river
Garonne, by the ocean, and by Garonne, the ocean, and the
the territories of the Belgæ territories of the Belgæ

vergit^{IX} ad septentriōnēs^X

=(and) it turns toward the seven ~and lies toward the northern
stars near the north pole regions

I **etiam**, ADV. (ET + IAM), Of time, *now too, yet, as yet, even yet, still, even now*; CONJ. FREQ. WITH COMPARATIVES (SUCH AS *quīn*) for the sake of intensity, *yet, still*

II **āb, ā, abs**, PRÆP. WITH ABL., *from, away from*; To denote the side or direction from which an object is viewed in its local relations (=A PARTE), *at, on, in—Gallia Celtica attingit ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum, on the side of the Sequani, i.e. their country*

III **ab Sēquanīs, ab** + ABL. = PLACE FROM WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. II. POSITION IS FREQUENTLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB (RARELY EX), PROPERLY MEANING FROM. §429

IV **ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs**. ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

V **Rhēnus, -ī**, M., *the Rhine*

VI **Garumna, -ae**, river of S.W. Gaul—now the Garonne

VII **Ōceanus, -ī**, M., *the great sea, outer sea, ocean*

VIII **Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IX **vergō, —, —, -ere** (VERG-), *to bend, turn, be inclined, lie, be situated; NEUT., to bend, turn, incline itself; of places, to lie, be situated in any direction*

X **septentriōnes, -um**, PROP. (SEPTEMTRIO), *the seven plough-oxen; hence, as a constellation; Lit., the seven stars near the north pole (called also the Wain, and the Great or Little Bear); TRANSF. The northern regions, the north (as a quarter of the heavens)*

I.I.VII.

BELGÆ AB EXTRĒMĪS GALLIÆ FĪNIBUS ORIUNTŪR;
PERTINENT AD ĪNFERIŌREM PARTEM FLŪMINIS RHĒNĪ;
SPECTANT ĪN SEPTENTRIŌNĒM ET ORIENTEM SŌLEM.

Belgæ ab extrēmīs^I Galliæ finibus^{II} oriuntur^{III}

=the Belgæ descend from the ~the Belgæ rises from the
furthest frontiers of Gaul extreme frontier of Gaul

pertinent ad ĩnferiŏrem^{IV} partem flūminis Rhēnī

=(and) they extend toward the ~extend to the lower portion of
lower part of the river Rhine the river Rhine

spectant^V in septentriŏnē et orientem^{VI} sŏlem^{VII}

=(and) they look toward the ~and look toward the north and
seven stars near the north pole the rising sun
and the rising sun

I **extrēmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (EXTER), *outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last*

II **ab extrēmīs...finibus**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

III **orior, ortus, orīrī**, DEP. (OL-), *to arise, rise, stir, get up*; Fig., *to rise, come forth, spring, descend, grow, take origin, proceed, start, begin, originate*

IV **īnferus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. SUP. (CF. INFRA), *below, beneath, underneath, lower*

V **spectō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SPECIO), *to look on, look at, behold, gaze at, watch, observe, inspect, attend*; Of localities, *to look, face, lie, be situated towards any quarter*

VI **oriēns, -entis**, M. (PPP. OF ORIOR), *the rising sun, morning sun; The East, Orient*

VII **sŏl, sŏlis**, M. (SER-), *the sun*

I.I.VIII.

AQUITANIA Ā GARUMNĀ FLŪMINE AD PYRĒNĒOS
MONTĒS ET EAM PARTEM ŌCEANĪ QUÆ EST AD
HISPĀNIAM PERTINET; SPECTAT ÎTER OCCĀSUM SŌLIS
ET SEPTENTRIŌNĒS.

Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine^I ad Pyrēnæōs^{II} montēs^{III} et eam
partem Ōceanī

=Aquitania /extends/ from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that part of the ocean
~Aquitania /extends/ from the river Garonne to the Pyrenæan mountains and to that portion of the ocean

quæ est ad^{IV} Hispāniam^V VI

=which is toward Spain

~which is near Spain

-
- I **ā Garumnā flūmine.** ABL. OF SOURCE. §403
- II **Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um,** ADJ., of Pyrene—"Pyrēnæōs montēs," the Pyrenees Mountains
- III **mōns, montis,** M. (MAN-), a mountain, mount, range of mountains
- IV **ad,** PRÆP. WITH ACC., In space, to, toward; Nearness or proximity in gen. (= APUD), near to, by, at, close by; In number or amount, near, near to, almost, about, toward; WITH VERBS WHICH DESIGNATE GOING, COMING, MOVING, BEARING, BRINGING NEAR, ADAPTING, TAKING, RECEIVING, CALLING, EXCITING, ADMONISHING, ETC., WHEN THE V. IS COMPOUNDED WITH **ad**, THE PRÆP. IS NOT ALWAYS REPEATED, BUT THE CONSTR. WITH THE DAT. OR ACC. EMPLOYED—*lĕgātĭōnem ad cĭvĭtātēs suscipit, he undertakes the office of ambassador to the states* (I.III); In other relations, with regard to, in respect of, in relation to, as to, to, in; WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AFTER VERBS OF MOTION, **ad** IS USED IN ANSWER TO THE QUESTION *Whither?* INSTEAD OF THE SIMPLE ACC., but commonly with this difference, that **ad** denotes to the vicinity of, the neighborhood of
- V SPECIAL USE OF PLACE TO WHICH. SPECIAL USES OF PLACE FROM WHICH, TO WHICH, AND WHERE ARE THE FOLLOWING: IV. WITH ALL NAMES OF PLACES AT, MEANING NEAR (NOT IN), IS EXPRESSED BY AD OR APUD WITH THE ACCUSATIVE. §428
- VI **Hispānia, -ae,** F., Spain; PL., Spanish provinces; referring to the division into the two parts, "Hispānia citerior," Hither Spain, "Hispānia ulterior," Further Spain

pertinet

=*extends*

~*extends*

spectat inter occāsum¹ sōlis et septentriōnēs

=*it looks between the setting of
the sun, and the seven stars near
the north pole*

~*it looks between the setting of
the sun, and the north star*

I **occāsus, -ūs**, M. (OB + CAD-), *a falling, going down, setting*

I.II



ORGATORIX PERSUADES HIS PEOPLE TO MIGRATE.



I.II.I.



PUD HELVĒTIŌS LONGĒ NŌBILISSIMUS FUIT ET
DĪTISSIMUS ORGETORĪX.

Apud^I Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus^{II} fuit et dītissimus^{III} Orgetorīx^{IV}
=Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix ~Among the Helvetii, Orgetorix
was by far the most well-known was by far the most noted and
and (the most) wealthy wealthy

I.II.II.

IS, M. MESSĀLĀ ET M. PUPIO PISŌNE CŌNSULIBUS, RĒGNĪ
CUPIDITĀTE INDUCTUS CŌNIŪRĀTIŌNEM NŌBILITĀTIS
FĒCIT ET CĪVITĀTĪ PERSUĀSIT ŪT DĒ FĪNIBUS SUIS CŪM
OMNIBUS CŌPIIS EXĪRENT: PERFACILE ESSE, CŪM
VIRTŪTE OMNIBUS PRĒSTĀRENT, TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ
IMPERIŌ POTĪRĪ.

-
- I **apud**, PRÆP. INDECFORM., PRÆP. GOV. ACC., *with, at, by, near*; In respect of persons, *in* (whose) *presence* or *before* whom any thing is done or takes place; Of persons, of inhabitants of cities or countries, among whom one is, or something is, is done or happens, *among* (= INTER)
- II **nōbilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (GNA-), *that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned*; *High-born, of noble birth, noble* (usu. of families from which the high offices of state had been filled)
- III **dīves, -itis**, WITH COMP. AND SUP, ADJ. (DIV-), *rich, wealthy, opulent*
- IV **Orgetorix, -īgis**, M., *a Helvetian nobleman who formed a plot to seize supreme power*

Is

=he (*Orgetorix*)

~he

M[arcō]^I [Valeriō]^{II} Messālā^{III} ^{IV} et M[arcō] Pupio^V Pisōne^{VI}
 [Calpurnianō] cōsulibus^{VII VIII IX}

=with M[arcus] [Valerius] ~when Messala and Piso were
 Messala and M[arcus] Pupius consuls
 [Calpurnianus] Piso (being)
 consuls (e.g. 61 B.C.)

-
- I **Mārcus, -ī**, m., a Roman first name, equiv. to english *Mark*
 II **Valerius, -ī**, m., a Roman name
 III **Messālā, -ae**, m., a Roman name
 IV **Marcō Valeriō Messālā**, Mārcus Valerius Messālā, consul in 61 B.C.
 V **Pupius, -ī**, m., a Roman name
 VI **Pisō, -ōnis**, m., a Roman name
 VII **M. Messālā et M. Pupio Pisōne cōsulibus.** ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. I. AN ADJECTIVE, OR A SECOND NOUN, MAY TAKE THE PLACE OF THE PARTICIPLE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE CONSTRUCTION §419
 VIII **cōsul, -ulis**, m. (COM- + SAL-), a *consul*—the highest magistracy of the Roman republic was vested in two consuls, chosen annually; In dates, defining the year; USU. ABL. ABSOL.—*Messālā et Pisone consulibus, in the consulship of*
 IX **Marcō Pupio Pisōne Calpurnianō**, consul with M. Valerius Messala in 61 B.C.

rēgnī^I ^{II} cupiditatē^{III} ^{IV} inductus^V coniūratiōnem^{VI} nōbilitatis fēcit^{VII}
 =<having been> led by desire of ~seduced by lust of sovereignty,
 kingship, made a swearing formed a plot among the
 together of the nobility nobility

et cīvitātī^{VIII} ^{IX} persuāsīt^X ^{XI}
 =and persuaded the state ~and persuaded the people

-
- I OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. §348
- II **regnum, -i**, N. (REX), *kingly government, royal authority, kingship, royalty; Dominion, sovereignty, rule, authority, supreme power*
- III ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- IV **cupiditās, ātis**, F. (CUPIDUS), *a longing, desire, passion, eagerness*
- V **indūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (IN + DUCŌ), *to lead in, bring in, introduce, conduct, lead up, bring forward; To move, excite, persuade, induce, mislead, seduce*
- VI **coniūrātiō, -ōnis**, F. (CONIŪRO), *a swearing together; In a bad sense, a conspiracy, plot*
- VII **faciō, fēcī, factus, -ere** (FAC-), *to make, construct, fashion, frame, build, erect, produce, compose; IN PASS., to make in all senses, to do, perform, accomplish, prepare, produce, bring to pass, cause, effect, create, commit, perpetrate, form, fashion, etc.; Of actions, to do, perform, make, carry on, execute*
- VIII **cīvitātī**, DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuāsīt**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- IX **cīvitās, -ātis**, F. (CIVIS), *the condition of a citizen, citizenship, freedom of the city, membership in the community; A community of citizens, body-politic, state*
- X DIR. OBJ. TO THE CLAUSE. **ut...exirent**
- XI **persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsus, -ēre** (PER + SUĀDEŌ), *to convince, persuade*

ut^I dē finibus suis^{II} cum^{III} omnibus cōpiis^{IV} exirent^{V VI}

=that they should go out from ~to go forth from their
their own territories with all territories with all their
(their) possessions possessions

perfacile^{VII VIII} esse^{IX} [dixit]^X

=[he said] that it was very easy ~(saying) that it would be very
easy

I **ut**, CONJ. AND ADJ. (UT), CONJ., WITH SUBJ., Of effect or result, *that, so that*; ADV. REL. ADV. OF MANNER (=eo modo quo), *as*; Causal, *as, = prout, pro eo ut*. Introducing a general statement, in correspondence with the particular assertion of the principal clause, *ut = as, considering... that, in accordance with*; Of manner. Interrog., *how, in what way, in what manner*—USU. IN DEPENDENT QUESTIONS, WITH SUBJ. —AFTER VERBS OF FEARING, *how, in what way, lest...not, that...no*

II ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DĒ, OR EX. §426

III **cum**, CONJ. (CA-). PROP., OF TIME, CONSTR. WITH INDIC. IN AN INDEPENDENT ASSERTION; WITH SUBJ. IN A SUBORDINATE STATEMENT —Fixing a point of time, *when, at the time when*; Fixing or defining a period of time, *when, while, during the time that, as, as long as, after*; Prægn., giving a cause or reason (CUM CAUSALE), *when, since, because, inasmuch as, seeing that, in that, in view of the fact that*

IV **cōpia**, -æ, F. (CO + OPS), Of material objects. Of possessions, *resources, wealth, supplies, riches, prosperity*; In milit. lang. *copia*, AND FAR MORE FREQ. IN PL. **copiæ**, -ārum, *men, troops, forces, army*

V **ut...exirent**. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563.

VI **exeō**, -ii, -itus, -ire (EX + EO), *to go out, go forth, go away, depart, withdraw, retire*

VII PRED. WITH **esse**, NEUTER ADJECTIVES ARE USED SUBSTANTIVELY IN THE FOLLOWING SPECIAL SENSES: IV. A NEUTER ADJECTIVE MAY BE USED AS AN ATTRIBUTIVE OR A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH AN INFINITIVE OR A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE. §289^{IV}

VIII **perfacilis**, -e, ADJ. (PER + FACILIS), *very easy*

IX **perfacile esse**, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. I. THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. IS OFTEN NOT EXPRESSED, BUT IMPLIED IN SOME WORD OR IN THE GENERAL DRIFT OF THE SENTENCE: §58
Q1

cum virtūte^I omnibus^{II} præstarent^{III IV}

=since they excelled all men in ~since they excelled all in valor
<respect to> valor

tōtius^V Galliæ imperiō^{VI VII} potiri^{VIII IX}

=to take possession of the ~to acquire the supreme power
command of the whole of Gaul of the whole of Gaul

X **perfacile esse [dixit]**, INF. IN INDIR. DISC. THE PRESENT, THE PERFECT, OR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE IS USED IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ACCORDING AS THE TIME INDICATED IS PRESENT, PAST, OR FUTURE WITH REFERENCE TO THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. BY WHICH THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS INTRODUCED, SUCH AS: ERROR: REFERENCE SOURCE NOT FOUND SEE CHART: §584

I ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

II DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præstarent**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III **cum...præstarent**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

IV **præstō, -itī, -itus, -āre** (PRÆ + STŌ), to stand out, stand before, be superior, excel, surpass, exceed, be excellent; IMPERS. WITH SUBJECT-CLAUSE, it is preferable, is better

V **tōtus, -a, -um**, GEN. **tōtius** (TV-), all, all the, all at once, the whole, entire, total (SEE CHART: TŌTUS, WHOLE §113)

VI OBJ. OF DEP. V. **persuāsīt**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

VII **imperium, -ī**, N. (IMPERO), WITH ABL., a command, order, direction, injunction; Supreme power, sovereignty, sway, dominion, empire, supremacy, authority

VIII SUBJ. OF V. **esse**

IX **potior, -itus, -iri**, DEP. (POTIS), to become master of, take possession of, get, obtain, acquire, receive

I.II.III.

ID HŌC FACILIUS EĪS PERSUĀSIT, QUOD UNDIQUE LOCĪ
NĀTŪRĀ HELVĒTĪI CONTĪNENTŪR: ŪNĀ EX PARTE
FLŪMĪNE RHĒNŌ LĀTISSIMŌ ATQUE ALTISSIMŌ, QUĪ
AGRŪM HELVĒTIŪM Ā GERMĀNĪS DĪVIDIT; ALTERĀ EX
PARTE MONTE IŪRĀ ALTISSIMŌ, QUĪ EST ĪTER
SĒQUANŌS ET HĒLVETIŌS; TERTIĀ LACŪ LEMĀNNŌ ET
FLŪMĪNE RHODANŌ, QUĪ PRŌVĪNCIAM NOSTRAM AB
HELVĒTIĪS DĪVIDIT.

Id^I hōc^{II} facilius eīs^{III} persuāsit^{IV}

=because of this (thing), he more easily persuaded them (to adopt) that (course) ~to this he the more easily persuaded them

quod undique^V loci^{VI VII} nātūrā^{VIII} Helvētīi continentur

=because the Helvetii are held together from all parts by the nature of (their) place ~because the Helvetii are confined on every side by the nature of their situation

I OBJ. OF **persuasit**. SOME VERBS ORDINARILY INTRANSITIVE MAY HAVE AN ACCUSATIVE OF THE DIRECT OBJECT ALONG WITH THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT. §369

II ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuāsit**. §367

IV **persuādeō, -suāsī, -suāsus, -ēre** (PER + SUĀDEŌ), to convince, persuade

V **undique**, ADV. (UNDE + QUE), from all parts, from every quarter, on all sides, all around, on every part, everywhere

VI **locus, -ī, M. (LOCA)**, a place, spot; Fig. Place, position, situation, condition, relation, state

VII **nātūra, -æ, F.**, birth; Nature, natural constitution, property, quality

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō^I atque altissimō^{II} ^{III}

=from one part by the very ~on one side by the Rhine, a very
broad and very deep Rhine river broad and deep river

quī^{IV} agrum^V Helvētium ā Germānīs^{VI} dividit

=(the Rhine) which divides the ~which separates the Helvetian
territory of the Helvetii from the territory from the Germans
Germans

alterā^{VII} ex parte monte Iūrā^{VIII} ^{IX} altissimō^X

=from the second part by the ~on a second side by the Jura, a
Jura, a very high mountain very high mountain

quī est inter Sēquanōs et Hēlvetiōs

=(the Jura mountain) which is ~which is (situated) between the
(situated) between the Sequani Sequani and the Helvetii
and the Helvetii

I **lātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (STER-), *broad, wide, extensive*

II **flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **altus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (P. OF ALO), *nourished, grown great, high, lofty, tall; deep*

IV TAKES ITS GENDER NOT FROM **flumine**, BUT FROM **Rheno**. A RELATIVE GENERALLY AGREES IN GENDER AND NUMBER WITH AN APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN IN ITS OWN CLAUSE, RATHER THAN WITH AN ANTECEDENT OF DIFFERENT GENDER OR NUMBER. §306

V **ager, -grī**, M. (AGO), *productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain*

VI ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VII **alter, -tera, -terum**, PRONOM. ADJ. (AL-), *one, another, the one, the other* (of two); ESP., AS A NUMERAL, *the second, next* (SEE CHART: **ALTER, -TERIUS, THE OTHER** §113)

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IX **Iūra, -æ**, M., *a chain of mountains extending from the Rhine to the Rhone*

X **Iūra altissimō**, APPPOSITION. A NOUN USED TO DESCRIBE ANOTHER, AND STANDING IN THE SAME PART OF THE SENTENCE WITH THE NOUN DESCRIBED, IS CALLED AN APPOSITIVE, AND IS SAID TO BE IN APPPOSITION. §282

tertiā [ex parte] lacū^I Lemannō^{II} et flūmine Rhodanō^{III}

=from the third [part] by the ~on a third by the Lake of
Lake of Geneva, and by the river Geneva, and by the river Rhone
Rhone

quī prōvinciam^{IV} nostram ab Helvētiīs^V dividit

=(the Lake of Geneva) which ~which separates our province
divides our province from the from the Helvetii
Helvetii

I.II.IV.

HIS RĒBUS FIĒBAT UT ET MĪNUS LĀTĒ VAGĀRENTUR ET
MĪNUS FACILE FĪNITIMĪS BELLUM ĪNERRE POSSENT: QUĀ
EX PARTE HOMĪNĒS BELLANDĪ CŪPIDĪ MAGNŌ DOLŌRE
ADFICIĒBANTUR.

I **lacus, -ūs**, M. (LAC-), an opening, hollow, lake, pond, pool

II **Lemammus, -ī**, M., WITH **lacus**, Lake Geneva

III **lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **prōvincia, æ**, F., A province, i.e. a territory out of Italy, acquired by the Romans (chiefly by conquest), and brought under Roman government; also, to be rendered provincial administration, employment, etc.

V **ab Helvētiīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

His rēbus^{I II} fiēbat^{III}

=because of these things, it was
made

~from these circumstances, it
came to pass

ut et^{IV} minus^V lātē^{VI} vagārentur^{VII}

=both that they roamed less
broadly

~that they could range less
widely

et minus facile finitimīs^{VIII} bellum inferre^{IX} possent^X

=and that they were less easily
able to bear war upon (their)
neighbors

~and could less easily make war
upon their neighbors

I **hīs rēbus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **rēs, reī**, F. (RA-), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case

III IMPF. TENSE EXPRESSES THE CONTINUED EFFECT OF THE CAUSES. THE IMPERFECT DENOTES AN ACTION OR A STATE AS CONTINUED OR REPEATED IN PAST TIME. NOTE. THE IMPERFECT IS A DESCRIPTIVE TENSE AND DENOTES AN ACTION CONCEIVED AS IN PROGRESS OR A STATE OF THINGS AS ACTUALLY OBSERVED. HENCE IN MANY VERBS IT DOES NOT DIFFER IN MEANING FROM THE PERFECT. THUS REX ERAT AND REX FUIT MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT THE FORMER DESCRIBES THE CONDITION WHILE THE LATTER ONLY STATES IT. THE ENGLISH IS LESS EXACT IN DISTINGUISHING THESE TWO MODES OF STATEMENT. HENCE THE LATIN IMPERFECT IS OFTEN TRANSLATED BY THE ENGLISH PRETERITE. §470

IV **et**, CONJ., and; WHEN REPEATED, *et...et*, IT SERVES TO CONNECT TWO IDEAS PARTITIVELY, *both...and, as well...as, not only...but also*

V **parvus, -a, -um**, ADJ. COMP. AND SUP.: **mīnor, mīnimus**. (PAV-), Of magnitude, little, small, petty, puny, inconsiderable; ADV., COMP., **minus**, less; COMP., **mīnor, -us**, less, lesser, smaller, inferior

VI **lātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (STER-), broad, wide, extensive; **lātē**, ADV., broadly, widely, extensively; with *longe*, on all sides, far and wide, everywhere

VII **vagor, -ātus, -āri**, DEP., *vagus*, to stroll about, go to and fro, ramble, wander, roam, range, rove

VIII **finitimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FINIS), bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; SUBST., **finitimi, -ōrum**, M., neighbors

IX **inferō intulī, inlātus, inferre** (IN + FERŌ), to bring in, introduce, bring to, carry in; Milit., *signa (arma) in hostem, or hosti*, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon; IN PHRASES, WITH *bellum, gradum, or pedem*, to make an attack; Fig., to bring forward, adduce, introduce, produce, make, excite, occasion, cause, inflict

quā^I ex parte hominēs^{II} bellandī^{III} ^{IV} cupidī magnō^V dolōre^{VI} ^{VII}
adficiēbantur^{VIII} ^{IX}

=from which part (partly ~for which reason men fond of
because), (these) men, desirous war (as they were) were affected
of waging war, were affected with great regret
with great pain

X **ut...vagārentur...possent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT WITH UT (NEGATIVE UT NŌN) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING THE ACCOMPLISHMENT OF AN EFFORT—SUCH ARE ESPECIALLY FACIŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS (EFFICIŌ, CŌFICIŌ, ETC.) VERBS AND PHRASES TAKING AN UT-CLAUSE OF RESULT AS SUBJECT OR OBJECT ARE ACCĒDIT, ACCIDIT, ADDITUR, ALTERA EST RĒS, COMMITTŌ, CONSEQUOR, CONTINGIT, EFFICIŌ, EVENIT, FACIŌ, FIT, FLERĬ POTEST, FORE, IMPETRŌ, INTEGRUM EST, MŌS EST, MŪNUS EST, NECESSE EST, PROPE EST, RECTUM EST, RELINQUITUR, RELIQUUM EST, RESTAT, TANTŪ EST, TANTUM ABEST, AND A FEW OTHERS. \$568

I A REL. PRON. IS OFTEN USED AT THE BEGINNING OF AN INDEPENDENT CLAUSE, CONNECTING IT WITH THE PRECEDING SENTENCE. A RELATIVE PRONOUN (OR ADVERB) OFTEN STANDS AT THE BEGINNING OF AN INDEPENDENT SENTENCE OR CLAUSE, SERVING TO CONNECT IT WITH THE SENTENCE OR CLAUSE THAT PRECEDES. \$308^{VI}

II **homō, -inis**, M. AND F., *a human being, man, person*

III OBJECTIVE GEN. OF THE GERUND WITH ADJ. **cupidī**. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING AN OBJECT OF REFERENCE GOVERN THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE INCLUDE: ADJECTIVES DENOTING DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, MEMORY, FULLNESS, POWER, SHARING, GUILT, AND THEIR OPPOSITES GOVERN THE GENITIVE. \$349^I & THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. \$504

IV **bellō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre** (BELLUM), *to wage war, carry on war, war*

V **magnus, -a, -um**, Lit., of physical size or quantity, *great, large*; Of things, *vast, extensive, spacious, etc.*; Trop. In gen., *great, grand, mighty, noble, lofty, important, of great weight or importance*; Esp. Of measure, weight, quantity, *great, much, abundant, considerable, etc.*; IN PLUR. SUBST., **māiores, -um**, M., *ancestors, forefathers*

VI **dolor, -ōris**, M. (DAL-), *pain, smart, ache, suffering, anguish; dolor*; Esp, *indignation, wrath, animosity, anger, resentment*

VII **magnō dolōre**, ABL. OF MANNER, THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. \$412

L.II.V.

PRŌ MULTITŪDINE AUTEM HOMINUM ET PRŌ GLŌRIĀ
 BELLĪ ATQUE FORTITŪDĪNIS ANGUSTŌS SĒ FĪNĒS
 HABĒRE ARBITRĀBANTUR, QUI ĪN LONGITŪDĪNEM MĪLIA
 PASSUUM DUCĒNTA QUADRĀGĪNTĀ, ĪN LĀTITŪDĪNEM
 CENTUM OCTŌGĪNTĀ PATĒBANT.

Prō^I multitūdine^{II} autem^{III} hominum

=that, however, in comparison
 with the multitude of men

~considering the extent of their
 population

VIII **afficio, affēci, affectum, -ere** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; WITH ACC. AND ABL., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon; or the ablative and verb may be rendered by the verb corresponding to the ablative, and if an adjective accompany the ablative, this adjective becomes an adverb*

IX **adfficio, adffēci, adfectum, adficere** (AD + FACIO), *to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; WITH ACC. AND ABL., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon*

I **prō**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (PRO-), *Of place, before, in front of, in face of; On account of, for the sake of; Of relation or proportion, for, in proportion, in comparison with, in accordance with, according to, conformably to, by virtue of; Of equivalence, for, the same as, just as, as; Of compensation, for, in exchange for, in return for*

II **multitūdo, īnis**, F. (MULTUS), *a great number, multitude; In partic. Of people, a great number, a crowd, multitude; Of the common people, the crowd, the multitude*

III **autem**, CONJ., AN ADVERSATIVE PARTICLE WHICH REGULARLY FOLLOWS AN EMPHATIC WORD, OR TWO OR MORE CLOSELY CONNECTED WORDS, *but, on the other hand, on the contrary, however*

et prō glōriā^I bellī atque fortitūdinis^{II} angustōs^{III} sē finēs habēre^{IV V}
 =and in comparison with (their) ~and their renown for warfare
 renown of warfare and of and bravery, they had but
 bravery, they had narrow narrow limits
 borders

arbitrābantur^{VI}

=they were thinking

~they thought

quī in longitūdinem^{VII} mīlia^{VIII IX} passuum^{X XI} ducenta quadrāgintā
 =(the territories) which (were ~although they (extended) in
 extending) in length two- length 240 miles
 hundred forty thousands of
 paces

-
- I **glōria, -ae**, F. (CLV-), *glory, fame, renown, praise, honor*—WITH GEN.
- II **fortitūdo, -inis**, F. (FORTIS), *strength; Mentally, firmness, manliness shown in enduring or undertaking hardship; fortitude, resolution, bravery, courage, intrepidity*
- III **angustus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ANG-), WITH COMP. AND SUP, *narrow, strait, contracted*
- IV **habere arbitrābantur**, INF. IN INDIR. DISC. §584
- V **angustōs sē finēs habēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrabantur**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VI **arbitror, -ātus sum, -ārī**, DEP. (ARBITER), In law, of witnesses, *to testify on information and belief, depose to one's best knowledge*; In gen., *to be of an opinion, believe, consider, think*
- VII **longitūdo, -inis**, F. (LONGUS), *length*
- VIII ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE. EXTENT OF SPACE IS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §425
- IX **mille, PL. milia**, NUM. ADJ. (MIL-), *a thousand, ten hundred*; In the phrase, *mille passuum, a thousand paces* (a Roman mile, about 1618 English yards)
- X PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE *alius, alter, nullus*, ETC. §346
- XI **passus, -ūs**, M. (PAT-), *a step, pace*

in lātītūdinem^I centum octōgintā patēbant^{II}

=they were lying open in ~and in breadth 180 (Roman
breadth one-hundred eighty miles)
(thousands of paces)

I lātītūdō, -inis, f. (LATUS), breadth, width

II pateō, -uī, —, -ēre (PAT-), to stand open, lie open, be open; To stretch out, extend

I.III



THEY MAKE PREPARATIONS.



I.III.I.



IS RĒBUS ADDUCTĪ ET AUCTŌRITĀTE
ORGETORĪGIS PERMŌTĪ, CŌNSTITUĒRŪNT EA
QUÆ AD PROFICĪSCENDŪM PERTĪNĒRĒNT
COMPARĀRE, IŪMENTŌRŪM ET CARRŌRŪM
QUAM MAXIMŪM NŪMERŪM CĒMERE, SĒMENTĒS QUAM
MAXIMĀS FACERE UT ĪN ITĪNERE CŌPIA FRŪMENTĪ
SŪPPETERET, CUM PROXIMĪS CĪVITĀTIBUS PĀCEM ET
AMĪCITIAM CŌNFIRMĀRE.

His rēbus^I adducti^{II} et auctōritāte^{III} ^{IV} Orgetorigis permōti^V
cōstituērunt^{VI}

=(the Helvetii), <having been> ~induced by these
led by these things and <having considerations, and influenced
been> moved deeply by the by the counsel of Orgetorix, they
influence of Orgetorix, decided determined to provide

ea

=that those things ~such things

quæ ad proficiscendum^{VII VIII} pertinērent^{IX}

=(those things) which extended ~which pertained to setting out
to <the purpose of> setting forward

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II addūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere (AD + DŪCŌ), to lead to, bring to, bring along; To bring, lead, prompt, move, induce, prevail upon, persuade, incite

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV auctōritās, -ātis, F. (AUCTOR), origination, production; Of persons, influence, weight, dignity, reputation, authority

V permoveō, -mōvī, -mōtus, -ēre (PER + MOVEŌ), to move deeply, rouse, excite, agitate, influence, lead, induce, prevail on

VI cōstituō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere (COM- + STATUŌ), to put, place, set, station; To fix, appoint, determine, define, decide, decree; To establish, set in order, organize, manage, administer, regulate, arrange, dispose; MILIT. To station or post troops somewhere, to draw up, set in order

VII ad proficiscendum. ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. WHEN THE GERUND WOULD HAVE AN OBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE, THE GERUNDIVE IS GENERALLY USED INSTEAD. THE GERUNDIVE AGREES WITH ITS NOUN, WHICH TAKES THE CASE THAT THE GERUND WOULD HAVE HAD. §503 & THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

VIII proficiscor, -fectus, -ī, DEP. (PROFICIO; PRO + FACIO), to set forward, set out, start, go, march, depart; To set out, begin, commence, start

IX quæ...pertinērent, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

comparāre^{I II}

=to prepare

~to prepare

iūmentōrum^{III} et carrōrum^{IV} quam maximum^{V VI} numerum^{VII}
cōemere^{VIII IX}

=to buy up as great a number as
possible of beasts of burden and
wagons

~to purchase as great a number
as possible of beasts of burden
and wagons

sēmentēs^X quam maximās^{XI} facere

=to make (their) sowings as
large as possible

~to make their sowings as large
as possible

I INF. DEPENDING ON **cōstituērunt**. MANY VERBS TAKE EITHER A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OR A COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE, WITHOUT DIFFERENCE OF MEANING. SUCH ARE VERBS SIGNIFYING WILLINGNESS, NECESSITY, PROPRIETY, RESOLVE, COMMAND, PROHIBITION, EFFORT, AND THE LIKE. §457

II **comparō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (COM + PARŌ), to prepare, make ready, set in order, furnish, provide

III **iūmentum, -i, N.**, a beast used for drawing or carrying, draught-cattle, a beast of burden, esp. a horse, mule, or ass

IV **carrus, -i, M.**, a wagon for freight, baggagewagon (with four wheels)

V **quam + super = as...as possible**. THERE ARE TWO PERIPHRASTIC CONIUGATIONS, KNOWN RESPECTIVELY AS THE FIRST (OR ACTIVE) AND THE SECOND (OR PASSIVE). THE PERIPHRASTIC FORMS ARE INFLECTED REGULARLY THROUGHOUT THE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE AND IN THE PRESENT AND PERFECT INFINITIVE. §194^{III}

VI **māximus, -a, -um** (MAC-), Of size, large, great, big, high, tall, long, broad, extensive, spacious

VII **numerus, -i, M.** (NEM-), a number; In partic. A certain collective quantity, a body, number of persons or things

VIII OBJ. OF **cōstituērunt**

IX **coēmō, -ēmī, -ēmtus, -ere** (COM- + EMO), to purchase, buy up, forestall

X **sēmentis, -is, F.** (SEMEN), semen, a seeding, sowing

XI **quam + super = as...as possible**. §194^{III}

ut in itinere^I cōpia^{II} frūmentī^{III} suppeteret^{IV V}

=<in order> that in the journey, ~so that on their march plenty
an ample supply of corn might of corn might be in store
be present

cum proximīs civitatibus pācem^{VI} et^{VII} amīcitiam^{VIII} cōfirmāre^{IX X}

=(and) to strengthen (relations) ~and to strengthen peace and
of peace and friendship with the friendship with the neighboring
nearest states states

-
- I **iter, -itineris**, N. (I-), a going, walk, way; A going, journey, passage, march, voyage; *quam maximis itineribus contendere*, forced marches
- II **cōpia, -æ**, F. (COM- + OPS), an abundance, ample supply, plenty
- III **frūmentum, -ī**, N. (FVG-), corn, grain, harvested grain; WITH *loca*, abounding in corn
- IV **ut suppeteret**, CLAUSE OF PURP. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE IS HORTATORY IN ORIGIN, COMING THROUGH A KIND OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE CONSTRUCTION. §5 29
- V **suppetō, -ivī, -itus, -ere** (SUB + PETO), to be at hand, be in store, be present, be available
- VI **pāx, pācis**, F. (PAC-), a compact, agreement, treaty, peace, treaty of peace, reconciliation
- VII When more than two words stand in the same relation, the Copulative Conjunction may be expressed with all, or omitted with all, or the last two words may be joined by *-que*; in each case English usage generally prefers “and” between the last two words. Thus, *Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis*, the Rauraci, Tulingi, and Latobrigi (I.V); *lingua, institutis, legibus*, in respect to language, institutions, and laws (I.I); *pueri, senes mulieresque*, children, old men, and women (I.XXIX)
- VIII **amīcitia, -æ**, F. (AMICUS), friendship
- IX INF. DEPENDING ON **cōstituērunt**. §457
- X **cōfirmō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (CŌN + FIRMŌ), to make firm, make strong, establish, strengthen; To confirm, give full assurance of a fact, corroborate an assertion, settle, fix, establish, to prove, demonstrate the truth of a thing, etc

I.III.II.

AD EĀS RĒS CŌNFICIENDĀS BIENNIIUM SIBI SATIS ESSE
DŪXĒRUNT: IN TERTIUM ANNUM PROFECTIONEM LĒGE
CŌNFIRMANT.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās^I biennium^{III} sibi^{IV} satis^V esse^{VI}

=that a period of two years is ~that a term of two years would
enough for them for <the be sufficient for them to execute
purpose of> completing those their designs
things

dūxērunt^{VII} ^{VIII}

=(The Helvetii) calculated ~they reckoned

I **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās.** ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURP. §506

II **cōficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (COM- + FACIO), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil; To make a thing completely ready, to make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, etc; to write, draw up

III **biennium, -ī,** N. (BI- + ANNUS), a period of two years, two years

IV DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

V **satis,** ADJ. N. INDECL. (SA-), ONLY NOM. AND ACC, enough, sufficient, satisfactory, ample, adequate

VI **biennium...esse,** IND. DISC. DEP. ON **dūxērunt.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VII **esse dūxērunt,** IMPLIED INDIR. DISC.

VIII **dūcō, -ūxī, -uctus, -ere** (DVC-), to lead, conduct, guide, direct, draw, bring, fetch, escort; To calculate, compute, reckon; With regard to time, to draw out, extend, protract, prolong—put off, delayed; To lead a person, as regards his will or opinions, in any direction; to move, incite, induce, allure, in a good or bad sense

in tertium annum^I ^{II} profectiōnem^{III} lēge^{IV} cōfirmant^V

=they make firm by law (their) ~they fix by decree their
departure for the third year departure for the third year

I.III.III.

AD EĀS RĒS CŌNFCIENDĀS ORGETORĪX DĒLIGITUR.

Ad eās rēs cōnfcientiendās^{VI} Orgetorīx dēligitur^{VII} ^{VIII}

=Orgatorix is chosen <for the ~Orgetorix was chosen to
purpose of> completing those complete these plans
things

I.III.IV.

IS SIBI LĒGĀTIŌNEM AD CĪVITĀTĒS SUSCIPIT.

I **in tertium annum**, 'for' the third year; *in* + ACC. IN CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME. IN MANY IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS OF TIME, THE ACCUSATIVE WITH AD, IN, OR SUB IS USED. SUCH ARE THE FOLLOWING. §424^V

II **annus**, -ī, M. (AC-), a year

III **profectiō**, -ōnis, F. (PRO + FAC-), a going away, setting out, departure

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRĀSENTĀTIŌ. §585. B. N.) §469

VI **ad eās rēs cōnfcientiendās**. ACC. OF GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURP. §506

VII HIST. PRES. §469

VIII **dēligō**, -lēgi, -lēctus, -ere (DE + LEGO), to choose, pick out, select, elect, designate, single out

Is sibi^I lēgatiōnem^{II} ad civitatēs suscipit^{III}

=he (Orgatorix) undertakes for ~he took upon himself the office
himself the office of ambassador of ambassador to the states
to the states

I.III.V.

ÎN EÔ ITÎNERE PERSUÂDET CASTICÔ CATAMANTALÆDIS
FÎLIÔ SĒQUANÔ, CUIUS PATER RĒGNUM ÎN SĒQUANÎS
MULTÔS ANNÔS OBTÎNUERAT ET Â SENÂTÛ POPULÎ
RÔMÂNÎ AMÎCUS APPELLÂTÛS ERAT, ÛT RĒGNUM ÎN
CÎVITÂTE SUÂ OCCUPÂRET QUOD PATER ANTE
HABUERIT; ITEMQUE DUMNORÎGÎ ÆDUÔ FRÂTRÎ
DÎVICIÂCÎ, QUÎ EÔ TEMPORE PRÎNCIPÂTUM ÎN CÎVITÂTE
OBTÎNĒBAT AC MAXIMĒ PLĒBÎ ACCEPTÛS ERAT, ÛT IDEM
CÔNÂRĒTUR PERSUÂDET, EÎQUE FÎLIAM SUÂM ÎN
MÂTRIMÔNÎUM DAT.

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **suscipit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **lēgatiō, -ōnis**, F. (LEGO), the office of ambassador, embassy, legation

III **suscipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (SUB + CAPIO), to take, catch, take up, lift up, receive; Fig., to undertake, assume, begin, incur, enter upon (voluntarily)

In eō itinere persuādet^I Casticō^{II III} Catamantalōedis^{IV} filiō^V Sēquanō
 =in this journey, he persuades ~on this journey he persuaded
 Casticus, the son of Casticus, the son of
 Catamantaledes Catamantaledes

cuius pater^{VI} rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs^{VII} annōs^{VIII} obtinuerat
 =of whose father had held the ~whose father had held the
 royal authority among the sovereignty among the Sequani
 Sequani for many years for many years

I HIST. PRES. §469

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuādet**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III **Casticus, -ī**, M., a certain prominent Sequanian

IV **Catamantalōedis, -ī**, M., a leader among the Sequanians before Caesar's time

V **filius, -ī**, M. (FE-), a son

VI **pater, -tris**, M. (PA-), a father, sire

VII **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., PL., WITH SUBST., OR WITH ADJ. USED AS SUBST, many, a great number

VIII **multōs annōs**, ACC. OF DUR. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

et ā senātū^{I II} populī^{III} Rōmānī amīcus^{IV V} appellātus erat

=and he had been called "friend" ~and had been called "friend" by
by the senate of the Roman the senate of the Roman people
people

ut rēgnū in cīvitatē suā occupāret^{VI}

=that he (Casticus) might take ~to seize the sovereignty in his
into possession the royal own state
authority in his own state

quod pater ante^{VII} habuerit^{VIII}

=(the Royal authority) which ~which his father had held
(his) father had held before him previously

I ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ā* OR *ab*. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES *ā* OR *ab*) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS *occisus gladiō*, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, *occisus ab hoste*, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

II **senātus, -ūs**, M. (SEN-), In Rome, the council of the elders, council of state, Senate, body of senators

III **populus, -ī**, M. (PLE-), a people, nation; In Rome, the whole body of citizens, people

IV PRED. N. OF THE V. **appellātus erat**. WITH *sum* AND A FEW OTHER INTRANSITIVE OR PASSIVE VERBS, A NOUN OR AN ADJECTIVE DESCRIBING OR DEFINING THE SUBJECT MAY STAND IN THE PREDICATE. THIS IS CALLED A PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE. THE VERB *sum* IS ESPECIALLY COMMON IN THIS CONSTRUCTION, AND WHEN SO USED IS CALLED THE COPULA (I.E. CONNECTIVE). OTHER VERBS WHICH TAKE A PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE ARE THE SO-CALLED COPULATIVE VERBS SIGNIFYING TO BECOME, TO BE MADE, TO BE NAMED, TO APPEAR, AND THE LIKE. §283

V **amicus, -ī**, M. (AMICUS), a loved one, loving one, friend

VI **ut...occupāret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *ut* (NEGATIVE *nē*) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

itemque^{IX} Dumnorīgī^X Æduō frātrī^{XI} Diviciācī^{XII}

=and (he), likewise // to ~and he also /prevailed on/
Dumnorix, an Æduan, the Dumnorix, an Æduan, the
brother of Divitiacus brother of Divitiacus

quī eō tempore^{V VI} prīncipātum^{VII} in cīvitātē obtinēbat

=(Divitiacī) who, in that time, ~who at that time possessed the
was occupying the chief part in chief command in his state
the state (the Æduan state)

ac maximē^{VIII} plēbī^{IX X} acceptus erat^{XI}

=and he was exceedingly ~and was exceedingly beloved
accepted to the common people by the plebeians

VII **ante**, PREP. WITH ACC., *before*—In space, or trop. in regard to estimation, judgment, or rank (usu. only of objects at rest. while *præ* is used of those in motion); *Ante diem* (abbrev. a.d.) with an ordinal number gives the date, not of the foregoing, but of the present day —“*ante diem quintum (a.d. V) Kalendas Apriles,*” *the fifth day before the calends of April*

VIII **quod...habuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

IX **item**, ADV. (I- + TAM), *likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well*

X **Dumnorix, -īgis**, M., an Æduan, brother of Divitiacus, and son-in-law of Orgatorix; a bitter enemy of Caesar, and leader of an Æduan anti-Roman party; slain by Caesar's orders while trying to escape from him, 54 B.C.

XI **frāter, -tris**, M., *a brother*; TRANSF., Like our word *brother*, as a familiar appellation of friends and lovers.

XII **Diviciācus, -ī**, M., an Æduan of influence, loyal to Caesar, who at his intercession pardoned Dumnorix and the Bellovaci

V ABL. OF TIME. §423

VI **tempus, -ōris**, N., a portion of time, *time, period, season, interval*

VII **prīncipātus, -ūs**, M. (PRINCEPS), *a beginning, origin; The first place, pre-eminence, chief part, supremacy, leadership; The chief command, post of commander-in-chief*

VIII **māximē**, ADV. (MAXIMUS), *in the highest degree, most particularly, especially, exceedingly, altogether, very*

ut idem^I cōnārētur^{II III}

=that he might attempt the same ~to make a like attempt thing

persuādet^{IV}

=he persuades ~prevailed on

eīque filiam^V suam in mātirimōnium^{VI} dat^{VII}

=and he gives to him his own ~and gave him his daughter in daughter into matrimony marriage

IX DAT. WITH ADJ. **acceptus**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS; AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS; IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFINIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS; PĀR, DISPĀR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IUCUNDUS, GRĀTUS; NOTUS, IGNOTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

X **plēbs, plēbis**, F. (PLE-), the common people, commons, commonalty, plebeians, folk

XI **accipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (AD + CAPIO), to take without effort, receive, get, accept; Of voluntary taking, to take, accept, take into possession, receive; To bear, endure, suffer any thing disagreeable or troublesome

I **idem, eadem, idem**, PRON. (I- + -DEM), the same

II **ut...cōnārētur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III **cōnor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP., to undertake, endeavor, attempt, try, venture, seek, aim, make an effort, begin, make trial of

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V **filia, -æ**, F. (FE-), a daughter

VI **mātirimōnium, ī**, N. (MATER), wedlock, marriage, matrimony

VII **dō, dedī, datus, -are** (DA-), to give; and hence, WITH THE GREATEST VARIETY OF APPLICATION, PASSING OVER INTO THE SENSES OF ITS COMPOUNDS, DERIVATIVES, AND SYNONYMS (edere, tradere, dedere; reddere, donare, largiri, concedere, exhibere, porrigere, præstare, impertire, suppeditare, ministrare, subministrare, præbere, tribuere, offerre, etc.), as, to give away, grant, concede, allow, permit; give up, yield, resign; bestow, present, confer, furnish, afford; offer, etc.; Designating the effect, to cause, make, bring about, inflict, impose

I.III.VI.

PERFACILE FACTŪ ESSE ILLĪS PROBAT CŌNĀTA PERFICERE,
 PROPTEREĀ QUOD IPSE SUĀE CĪVITĀTIS IMPERIUM
 OBTENTŪRUS ESSET: NŌN ESSE DUBIUM QUĒN TŌTĪUS
 GALLIÆ PLŪRIMUM HELVĒTIĪ POSSĒNT; SĒ SUĪS CŌPIĪS
 SUŌQUE EXERCITŪ ILLĪS RĒGNA CŌNCILIĀTŪRUM
 CŌNFIRMAT.

Perfacile factū^{I II} esse^{III}

=that it is easy in the doing

~that it was very easy

illis probat^{IV V}

=he (Orgatorix) makes good to
 them

~he showed them

cōnāta^{VI} perficere^{VII}

=that to accomplish (their)
 attempts

~to accomplish the venture

I ABL. SUPINE. THE SUPINE IN -Ū IS USED WITH A FEW ADJECTIVES AND WITH THE NOUNS FĀS, NEFĀS, AND OPUS, TO DENOTE AN ACTION IN REFERENCE TO WHICH THE QUALITY IS ASSERTED. THE ONLY COMMON SUPINES IN -Ū ARE AUDITŪ, DICTŪ, FACTŪ, INVENTŪ, MEMORĀTŪ, NĀTŪ, VISŪ. IN CLASSIC USE THIS SUPINE IS FOUND IN COMPARATIVELY FEW VERBS. IT IS NEVER FOLLOWED BY AN OBJECT-CASE. NOTE 1. THE SUPINE IN -Ū IS THUS IN APPEARANCE AN ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (§418). §510

II faciō, fēcī, fectus, -ere (FAC-), to do; SUPINE (PPP. STEM + ū), factus, -ūs, M., in doing

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **probat**. §580

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V probō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (PROBUS), to make good, esteem good, approve, esteem, commend; To make credible, show, prove, demonstrate

VI cōnāta, -ōrum, N. (CONATUS), an undertaking, attempt, venture, hazard, plan

VII perficiō -fēcī, -fectus, -ere (PER + FACIO), to achieve, execute, carry out, accomplish, perform, despatch, bring about, bring to an end, finish, complete

proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset^I

=on this account because he ~as he personally was about to
himself (Orgatorix) was about to seize the supreme power in his
obtain command of his own own state
state

nōn esse^{II} *dubium*^{III}

=that it is not doubtful ~that there was no doubt

I *proptereā quod...obtentūrus esset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. CAUSAL CLAUSES TAKE EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACCORDING TO THEIR CONSTRUCTION; THE IDEA OF CAUSE BEING CONTAINED, NOT IN THE MOOD ITSELF, BUT IN THE FORM OF THE ARGUMENT (BY IMPLICATION), IN AN ANTECEDENT OF CAUSAL MEANING (LIKE PROPTEREĀ), OR IN THE CONNECTING PARTICLES. QUOD IS IN ORIGIN THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (STEM QUO-) USED ADVERBially IN THE ACCUSATIVE NEUTER (CF. §214. d) AND GRADUALLY SINKING TO THE POSITION OF A COLORLESS RELATIVE CONJUNCTION (CF. ENGLISH THAT AND SEE §222). ITS USE AS A CAUSAL PARTICLE IS AN EARLY SPECIAL DEVELOPMENT. QUIA IS PERHAPS AN ACCUSATIVE PLURAL NEUTER OF THE RELATIVE STEM QUI-, AND SEEMS TO HAVE DEVELOPED ITS CAUSAL SENSE MORE DISTINCTLY THAN QUOD, AND AT AN EARLIER PERIOD. IT IS USED (VERY RARELY) AS AN INTERROGATIVE, WHY? (SO IN CLASSICAL LATIN WITH NAM ONLY), AND MAY, LIKE QUANDO, HAVE DEVELOPED FROM AN INTERROGATIVE TO A RELATIVE PARTICLE. §539 & §583

II INDIR. DISC. §580

III *dubius, -a, -um*, ADJ. (DVA-), moving two ways, fluctuating; Fig., wavering in opinion, doubting, doubtful, dubious, uncertain

quīn^I tōtīus Galliae^{II} plūrimum^{III} Helvētīi possent^{IV V}

=that the Helvetians were the most able of the whole of Gaul ~that the Helvetii were the most powerful of all the Gauls

sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū^{VI VII} illis^{VIII} rēgna conciliātūrum [esse]^{IX X}

=that he, with his own forces and his own army, would win over the kingship for them ~that he will, with his own resources and his own army, win over the sovereignty for them

cōfirmat^{XI}

=he (Orgatorix) gives assurance (to them) ~he assured them

I **quīn**, CONJ., AS AN INTERROG. PARTICLE, *why not? wherefore not?*; TRANSF. AS A REL. PARTICLE, PROP. *quī* or *qui ne*, AND MOSTLY WHERE THE REL. STANDS FOR A NOM. MASC. OR FOR ABL. OF TIME, *who ... not, that not, but that, but, often* = Eng. *without* AND A PARTICIPIAL CLAUSE; LIT. USED AFTER NEGATIVES, *that or but that*

II PART. GEN. WITH **plūrimum**. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

III **plūrimus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PLUS), *most, very much, very many*; ADV., **plūrimum**

IV **quīn...possent**, A **quīn** CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUIN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUIN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH **NŌN DUBITŌ**, I DO NOT DOUBT, **NŌN EST DUBIUM**, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558

V **possum, potui, posse**, IRREG. (POTIS + SUM), *to be able, have power, can*; In partic. *To be able, to have influence or efficacy, to avail*; In gen. WITH GEN., *able, mighty, powerful, potent*

VI **exercitus, -ūs**, M. (EXERCEO), *a disciplined body of men, army*

VII **suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VIII DAT. OF REF. §376

IX **conciliō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (CONCILIIUM), *to bring together, unite, reconcile, make friendly, win over, conciliate*; *To procure, purchase, obtain, acquire, win, gain*

X **sē...conciliātūrum**, INDIRECT DISC. DEP. ON **cōfirmat**. §580

XI HIST. PRES. §469

I.III.VII.

HĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE ADDUCTĪ ĪTER SĒ FIDEM ET IŪS
IŪRANDUM DANT, ET RĒGNŌ OCCUPĀTŌ PER TRĒS
POTĒNTISSIMŌS AC FIRMISSIMŌS POPULŌS TŌTĪUS
GALLIÆ SĒSĒ POTĪRĪ POSSE SPĒRANT.

Hāc ōrātiōne^I ^{II} adductī inter sē^{III} fidem^{IV} et iūs^V iūrandum^{VI} ^{VII} dant
=(the Helvetians) led in by this ~influenced by this speech, they
discourse, give a promise and a gave a pledge and oath to one
sworn oath between themselves another

et

=and

~and

I **hāc ōrātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **ōrātiō, -ōnis**, F. (ORO), a speaking, speech, discourse, language, faculty of speech, use of language; A set speech, harangue, discourse, oration

III The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter se* (Lit. among themselves), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter se dant*, they gave (Lit. give) to one another (I.III); *inter se differunt*, they differ from one another (I.I); *inter se collocuti*, having conferred with one another (IV.XXX); *cohortati inter se*, urging one another on (IV.XXV); *inter se contenderent*, they strove together (I.XXXI); *inter se*, referring to two persons, with each other (V.XLIV)

IV **fidēs**, —, USU. (FID-), trust, faith, confidence, reliance, credence, belief; An assurance that produces confidence, a promise, engagement, word, assurance, confirmation

V **iūs, iūris**, N. (IV-), that which is binding, right, justice, duty; ABL. As ADV., by right, rightfully, with justice, justly

VI **fidem et ius iurandum**, HENDIADYS. HENDIADYS (HEN DIA DUOIN): THE USE OF TWO NOUNS, WITH A CONJUNCTION, INSTEAD OF A SINGLE MODIFIED NOUN. §640

VII **iūs iūrandum, -is -i**, an oath

rēgnō occupātō^I

=with the supreme power in ~when they had seized the
<having been> seized sovereignty

per^{II} trēs potentissimōs^{III} ac firmissimōs^{IV} populōs tōtius Galliæ^V
sēsē potīrī posse^{VI VII}

=that they, through (the agency of) the three most powerful and the most steadfast nations, are ~they will, by means of the three most influential and very powerful nations, be enabled to obtain possession of the whole of Gaul

spērant^{VIII}

=they hope ~hope that

I **rēgnō occupātō**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. §419

II **per**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., In space, through, across, through the midst of, from side to side of, traversing; Of agency, through, by, by the hands of, by the agency of; Through, by, under pretence of, by the pretext of

III **potēns, -entis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PART. OF *possum*), able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; To be able, be strong, be powerful, have influence, be efficacious, avail, accomplish

IV **firmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FER-), firm (IN OPP. TO *frail, destructible*), steadfast, stable, strong, powerful; Trop., firm in strength or durability, also in opinion, affection, etc., fast, constant, steadfast, immovable, powerful, strong, true, faithful

V GOVERNED BY **potīrī**. THE DEONENTS *ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR*, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. I. *POTIOR* SOMETIMES TAKES THE GENITIVE, AS ALWAYS IN THE PHRASE *POTIRI RERUM*, TO GET CONTROL OR BE MASTER OF AFFAIRS (§357i). §410i

VI EQUIV. TO A FUT. INF. THE PRESENT, THE PERFECT, OR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE IS USED IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ACCORDING AS THE TIME INDICATED IS PRESENT, PAST, OR FUTURE WITH REFERENCE TO THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. BY WHICH THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS INTRODUCED, SUCH AS: THE PRESENT INFINITIVE *POSSE* OFTEN HAS A FUTURE SENSE —“*POTIUS GALLIÆ SĒSĒ POTIRI POSSE SPĒRANT*” (I.III), THEY HOPE THAT THEY SHALL BE ABLE TO GET POSSESSION OF ALL GAUL. §584ii

VII **sēsē... posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **spērant**. §580

VIII **spērō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (SPES), to hope, look for, trust, expect, promise oneself

I.IV



THE CONSPIRACY IS REVEALED.



I.IV.I.

EA RĒS EST HELVĒTIIS PER INDICIUM ĒNŪNTIĀTA.

Ea rēs^I est Helvētiīs per^{II} indicium^{III} ēnūntiāta^{IV}

=this thing (the plan) was ~this conspiracy was disclosed
spoken out to the Helvetii to the Helvetii by an informer
through information

I.IV.II.

MŌRIBŪS SUIS ORGETORĪGEM EX VĪNCLĪS CAUSAM
DĪCERE COĒGĒRUNT.

-
- I **rēs, reī**, F. (RA), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case
- II With Nouns referring to Persons often *per* is used with the Accusative to express the Means through which something is done, as distinguished from Direct Agency, which is expressed by the Ablative with *ab*; as, *per eos*, with their help, Lit. by means of them (I.IV)
- III **indiciū**, -ī, N. (IN + DIC-), a notice, information, discovery, disclosure, charge, evidence
- IV **ēnūntiō**, -āvi, -ātum, -āre (E + NUNTIO), to say out (esp. something that should be kept secret), to divulge, disclose, to report, tell

Mōribus^I suis^{II} Orgetorīgem ex^{III} vinclis^{IV} ^V causam dīcere
coēgērunt^{VI}

=in their own customs, they ~they, in accordance with their
drove together Orgatorix to custom, compelled Orgetorix to
speak (his) cause from chains plead his cause in chains

I.IV.III.

DAMNĀTUM PCĒNAM SEQUĪ OPORTĒBAT UT IGNĪ
CREMĀRĒTUR.

-
- I **mōs, mōris**, m. (MA-), *manner, custom, way, usage, practice, fashion, wont*, as determined not by the laws, but by men's will and *pleasure, humor, self-will, caprice*
- II ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- III *a, ab*, and sometimes *ex*, are often used to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on, in, or at*; as, *a dextro cornu, on the right wing*, Lit. *from* (the point of view of) *the right wing* (I.LII); *a novissimo agmine, on the rear* (I.XXIII); *a fronte, in front* (II.XXIII)
- IV ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403
- V **vinculum, -i**, n. (VINCIO), *a means of binding, fastening, band, bond, rope, cord, fetter, tie*; Fig., *a bond, fetter, restraint*
- VI **cōgō, coēgī, coāctus, -ere** (COM- + AGO), *to drive together, collect, crowd, bring together, summon, congregate, convene*; *To urge, force, compel, constrain*; Esp. with ACC., INF., *ut, ad, in* OR ABSOL., *to urge one to any action, to force, compel, constrain*

[eum] **Damnātum**^{I II} **pœnam**^{III} **sequi**^{IV V}

=that [he], (if) <having been> ~he, if found guilty /it was
condemned /it was necessary/ to necessary/ to follow the penalty
follow the penalty

oportēbat^{VI VII}

=it was necessary

~it was necessary

ut igni^{VIII IX} **cremārētur**^{X XI}

=that he should be burned by ~that he should be consumed
fire burned by fire

I In the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence an Ablative Absolute, a Participle, or other form of expression implying a Condition, may be used in place of the clause with *si*; as, *data facultate*, taking the place of *si facultas data esset*, if an opportunity should have been granted, in the Direct Form, *si facultas data erit* (I.VII); *damnatum (eum)*, him, if condemned, *damnatum* taking the place of *si damnatus esset* (I.IV)

II **damnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DAMNUM), to adjudge guilty, condemn, convict

III **pœna, -æ, f.**, indemnification, compensation, recompense, retribution, satisfaction, expiation, punishment, penalty, price

IV **damnatum pœnam sequi**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **oportebat**. VERBS OF MOTION, COMPOUNDS OF CIRCUM, TRANS, AND PRÆTER, AND A FEW OTHERS, FREQUENTLY BECOME TRANSITIVE, AND TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE. §388^{II} & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **sequor, secūtus, -ī, DEP. (SEC-)**, to follow, come after, follow after, attend, accompany

VI **damnatum...sequi**. INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **oportebat**. §388^{II} & §580

VII **oportet, -uit, -ēre, IMPERS. (OB + PAR-)**, it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IX **ignis, -is, m. (AG-)**, fire

X SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE AFTER **ut**. A SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE USED AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB BECOMES THE SUBJECT WHEN THE VERB IS PUT IN THE PASSIVE (IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.). §566

XI **cremō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (CAR-), to burn, consume by fire

I.IV.IV.

DIĒ CŌSTITŪTĀ CAUSĒ DICTIŌNIS ORGETORĪX AD
IŪDICĪUM OMNEM SUAM FAMILIAM AD HOMĪNŪ MĪLIA
DECEM UNDIQUE COĒGIT, ET OMNĒS CLIENTĒS
OBÆRĀTŌSQUE SUŌS, QUŌRUM MAGNUM NUMERUM
HABĒBAT, EŌDEM CŌNDŪXIT: PER EŌS NĒ CAUSAM
DĪCERET SĒ ĒRIPUIT.

Diē^I cōstitūtā^{II} causæ^{III} dictiōnis^{IV}

=on the day set of speaking of ~on the day appointed for
(his) cause pleading his cause

Orgetorīx ad iūdicium^V omnem suam familiam^{VI} ad hominum^{VII}
mīlia decem undique coēgit

=Orgatorix drove together all ~Orgetorix drew together from
his own family servants from all every quarter to the court, all
parts towards the judgement his domestics to the number of
towards 10,000 of men ten thousand persons

-
- I **diēs, diēī**, M. F. (DIV-), a day, civil day; In general, time, space of time, period; “diem ex die ducere,” from day to day
- II ABL. OF TIME WHEN. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- III OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. §348
- IV **dictiō, -ōnis**, F. (DICO), a saying, speaking, uttering, delivery; In gen. “cause,” a defending, pleading
- V **iūdicium, -ii**, N., a judgment, i.e. a judicial investigation, trial; a judicial sentence
- VI **familia, -æ**, F., the slaves in a household, a household establishment, family servants, domestics (not family, i.e. wife and children)
- VII PARTITIVE GEN. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. §346II

et omnēs clientēs^I obærātōsque^{II} suōs

=and /he led together.../ all the clients and his own debtors ~and /he led together.../ all his dependents and debtor-bondsmen

quōrum magnum numerum habēbat^{III}

=(his own debtors) of whom he was having a great number ~of whom he had a great number

eōdem^{IV} condūxit^V

=he led together (his family servants, clients, and debtors) in the same (place) ~he led together to the same place

per^{VI} eōs

=by means of them ~and with their help

-
- I **cliēns, entis**, M. (P. OF CLUEO), a personal dependant, client; A client, retainer, follower
- II **obærātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (OB + AES), involved in debt; PL. M. AS SUBST., debtors
- III **habeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (HAB-), to have, hold, support, carry, wear; To hold, to make, do, perform, prepare, utter, pronounce, produce, cause; To hold or keep a person or thing in any condition; to have, hold, or regard in any light; WITH A DOUBLE OBJECT, ESP. FREQ. WITH THE PART. PERF. PASS., to have, hold, or possess a person or thing in any quality or capacity, as any thing; to have, hold, or possess an action as completed, finished; To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; to think or believe a person or thing to be so or so
- IV ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429
- V **condūcō dūxī, ductus, ere** (CON + DŪCŌ), to draw together, assemble, collect, gather, unite
- VI PERSONAL AGENT EXPR. BY **per**. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. II. THE PERSONAL AGENT, WHEN CONSIDERED AS INSTRUMENT OR MEANS, IS OFTEN EXPRESSED BY PER WITH THE ACCUSATIVE, OR BY OPERĀ WITH A GENITIVE OR POSSESSIVE. §405II

nē^{I II} causam diceret

=*that he might not speak (his) cause* ~*from the necessity of) pleading his cause*

sē ēripuit^{III}

=*he tore himself away* ~*he rescued himself*

I.IV.V.

CUM CĪVITĀS OB EAM REM ÎNCITĀTA ARMĪS IŪS SUUM
EXSEQUĪ CŌNĀRĒTUR, MULTITŪDÎNEMQUE HOMÎNUM
EX AGRĪS MAGISTRĀTŪS CŌGERENT, ORGETORĪX
MORTUUS EST; NEQUE ABEST SUSPĪCIŌ, UT HELVĒTĪ
ARBITRANTUR, QUÎN IPSE SIBI MORTEM CŌNSCĪVERIT.

I **nē...diceret**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE, PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

II **nē**, ADV. AND CONJ., ADV., the primitive Latin negative particle, *no, not*; whereas the negative particle *non* is a derivative; *Ne...quidem*, applies the negation with emphasis to the word between them, *not even*; IN INTENTIONAL CLAUSES, AND AFTER VERBS OF FEARING AND AVOIDING, *ne* BECOMES A CONJUNCTION. IN INTENTIONAL CLAUSES FOR *ut ne, that not, lest*

III **ēripĭō, -ipui, -eptus, -ere** (EX + RAPIO), *to tear out, snatch away, wrest, pluck, tear, take away*; WITH PRON. REFLEX, *to break away, rescue oneself, escape*

Cum^I civitās ob eam rem incitāta^{II} armīs^{III} ^{IV} iūs suum exsequi^V
cōnārētur^{VI}

=while, the state, urged on, on ~while the state, incensed at
account of this thing, attempted such action, attempted to
to follow to the gave their own enforce its right by arms
law by arms

multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs^{VII} magistrātūs^{VIII} cōgerent

=and the magistrates were ~and the magistrates were
driving together a multitude of convening a large body of men
men from the countries of the from the country
body of the magistrates

I *cum* CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

II **incitō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (IN + CITŌ), to set in rapid motion, urge on, hurry, hasten, accelerate, quicken; Fig, to put in motion, rouse, disturb

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **arma, -ōrum**, N., Lit. What is fitted to the body for its protection, defensive armor, as the shield, coat of mail, helmet, etc.; Implements of war, arms, both of defence and offence (but of the latter only those which are used in close contest, such as the sword, axe, club; in distinction from tela, which are used in contest at a distance; Trop., means of protection, defence, weapons; war

V **exsequor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (EX + SEQUOR), to follow to the grave; To follow up, prosecute, carry out, enforce, perform, execute, accomplish, fulfil

VI *lubeo, order, bid, and veto, forbid*, are regularly used with the Infinitive and Subject Accusative; *conor, attempt*, with the Infinitive; as, *quemque effere iubent, they gave (Lit. give) orders that each person carry away...(I.V); exsequi conaretur, attempted to enforce (I.IV)*

VII ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

VIII **magistrātus, -ūs**, M. (MAGISTER), the office of master, magisterial office, civil office, magistracy; Collect., the body of magistrates, the municipal administration

Orgetorīx mortuus est^{IX}

=*Orgatorix died*

~*Orgetorix died*

neque^{II} abest suspīciō^{III}

=*and it is not away from suspicion*

~*and there is not wanting a suspicion*

ut Helvētīi arbitrantur^{IV}

=*as the Helvetii testified*

~*as the Helvetii believed*

quīn^V ipse sibi mortem^{VI} cōnscīverit^{VII}

=*that he himself approved of death to himself*

~*that he committed suicide*

IX **morior, mortuus, -ī**, DEP. (MAR-), *to die, expire*

II **neque** (OR **ne que**), CONJ. OR ADV., CONJ. In gen. = *et non, and not, also not; In contrasts, but not, not however*

III **suspīciō, -ōnis**, F. (SUB + SPEC-), *mistrust, distrust, suspicion*

IV **ut** + INDIC. = *as*. COPULATIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS CONNECT SIMILAR CONSTRUCTIONS, AND ARE REGULARLY FOLLOWED BY THE SAME CASE OR MOOD THAT PRECEDES THEM. §323

V **quin** CLAUSE. THE ORIGINAL MEANING OF QUIN IS HOW NOT? WHY NOT? (QUI-NE), AND WHEN USED WITH THE INDICATIVE OR (RARELY) WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IT REGULARLY IMPLIES A GENERAL NEGATIVE. THUS, QUIN EGO HOC ROGEM? WHY SHOULDN'T I ASK THIS? IMPLIES THAT THERE IS NO REASON FOR NOT ASKING. THE IMPLIED NEGATIVE WAS THEN EXPRESSED IN A MAIN CLAUSE, LIKE NŪLLA CAUSA EST OR FIERI NŌN POTEST. HENCE COME THE VARIOUS DEPENDENT CONSTRUCTIONS INTRODUCED BY QUIN. §557 & A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUIN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. §558

VI **mors, -tis**, F. (MAR-), *death*

VII **conscīvi, -scīvi, -scītum, -ere** (CON + SCISCO), Publicists' t. t., *to approve of, decree, determine or resolve upon something in common; TRANSF. from the sphere of state affairs; aliquid sibi or absol.; Lit., to adjudge, appropriate to one's self; hence, with the access. idea of personal action, to inflict or bring upon one's self (most frequently death); WITH SIBI, "mortem," to kill one's self*

I.V



THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO MIGRATE.



I.V.I



OST EIUS MORTEM NIHILO MINUS HELVETII ID
QUOD CONSTITUERANT FACERE CONANTUR,
UT E FINIBUS SUIS EXEANT.

Post^I eius mortem nihilō^{II} minus Helvētīi id

=after the death of him, less by ~after his death, the Helvetii
nothing, the Helvetii // the thing nevertheless // that

quod cōstituerant

=/the thing/ which they had ~/that/ which they had resolved
arranged on

facere cōnantur^{III}

=they attempt to do ~attempted to do

I **post**, ADV. (POS-), Of place, *behind, back backwards*; Of time, *afterwards, after, later*

II **nīhil**, (OR CONTR. **nīl**), N. INDECL. (NE + HILUM; NOT THE LEAST), *nothing*; **Nihilo**, WITH COMP., *by nothing, no—nīhilō minus, none the less, no less, nevertheless, notwithstanding*; Adv., *not (as a strengthened non), in nothing, in no respect, not at all*

III HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

ut ē finibus suis^I exeant^{II}

=(namely,) that they go forth ~namely, to go forth from their
from their own territories territories

I.V.II.

VBI IAM SĒ AD EAM REM PARĀTŌS ESSE ARBITRĀTĪ SŪNT,
OPPIDA SŪA OMŪNIA, NŪMERŌ AD DŪODECIM, VĪCŌS AD
QUADRĪNGENTŌS, RELIQUA PRĪVĀTA AĒDIFICIA
INCENDUNT; FRŪMENTUM OMNE, PRĀTERQUAM QUOD
SĒCUM PORTĀTŪRĪ ERĀNT, COMBŪRUNT, UT DOMUM
REDITIŌNIS SPĒ SŪBLĀTĀ, PARĀTIŌRĒS AD OMŪNIA
PERĪCULA SUBEUNDA ESSENT; TRIUM MĒNSUM MOLITA
CIBĀRIA SIBI QUEMQUE DOMŌ EFFERRE IUBĒNT.

Vbi iam^{III}

=when now

~when by this time

sē ad eam rem parātōs esse^{IV V}

=that they were prepared for ~that they were prepared for
that thing this undertaking

arbitrātī sunt

=they (the Helvetii) thought

~they thought

I ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

II SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE AFTER **ut**. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. § 531

III **iam**, ADV. (IA), Of time, denoting a point or moment of time as coinciding with that of the action, etc., described. Of present time, *at this time, now, just now, at present*; In contrast with the time at which something was expected. Of that which occurs sooner, *already, so soon*; As continued from the past, *already, by this time, ere now, till now, hitherto*; Like English *now, by this time, already*; WITH NEGATIVES, DENOTING CESSATION OF PREVIOUS CONDITION, *iam non, no more, no longer*

oppida^I sua omnia, numero^{II} ad duodecim, vicōs^{III} ad quadringentōs reliqua prīvāta^{IV} ædificia^V

=all their own towns—in a number towards twelve; (their) villages—toward (a number of) four-hundred, (and) the remaining private edifices ~all their towns—about twelve in number; to their villages—about four hundred, and to the private buildings that remained

incendunt^{VI}

=(the Helvetii) set fire to

~they set fire to

frūmentum omne

=all the grain

~all the corn

IV **sē...parātōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrātī sunt**. THE ESSENTIAL CHARACTER OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS, THAT THE LANGUAGE OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER IS COMPRESSED INTO A KIND OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, THE VERB OF THE MAIN CLAUSE BECOMING INFINITIVE, WHILE MODIFYING CLAUSES, AS WELL AS ALL HORTATORY FORMS OF SPEECH, TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PERSON OF THE VERB NECESSARILY CONFORMS TO THE NEW RELATION OF PERSONS. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE, HOWEVER, IS NOT LIMITED TO REPORTS OF THE LANGUAGE OF SOME PERSON OTHER THAN THE SPEAKER; IT MAY BE USED TO EXPRESS WHAT ANY ONE—WHETHER THE SPEAKER OR SOME ONE ELSE—SAYS, THINKS, OR PERCEIVES, WHENEVER THAT WHICH IS SAID, THOUGHT, OR PERCEIVED IS CAPABLE OF BEING EXPRESSED IN THE FORM OF A COMPLETE SENTENCE. FOR ANYTHING THAT CAN BE SAID ETC. CAN ALSO BE REPORTED INDIRECTLY AS WELL AS DIRECTLY. (ADD. INFO. §577)

V **parō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PAR-), to make ready, prepare, furnish, provide, arrange, order, contrive, design; TRANSF., to procure, acquire, get, obtain

I **oppidum, -ī**, N. (OB + PED-), a town, city, collection of dwellings

II ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III **vīcus, -ī**, M. (VIC-), a row of houses, street, quarter, ward; A village, hamlet

IV **prīvātus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (P. OF PRIVO), apart from the State, peculiar, personal, individual, private

V **ædificium, ī**, N. (ÆDIFICO), a building, edifice, structure

VI **incendō, -dī, -sus, -ere** (CAND-), to set fire to, kindle, burn

præter^I *quod secum*^{II} *portatūrī erant*^{III}

=*except (that) which they were* ~*except what they intended to*
about to bear with them *carry along with them*

combūrunt^{IV}

=*they burn up* ~*they burned up*

ut

=<*in order*> *that* ~*so that*

-
- I **præter**, ADV. (PRO-), *except, besides, unless, save, other than, not*
 II With the Ablative of the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns *cum* is ordinarily joined; thus *vobiscum*, *with us* (V.XVII); *secum*, *with him* (I.VIII), *with himself* (I.XXXVI); *quibuscum*, *with whom* (I.I)
 III **portō, -āvī, -ātus, -are** (PAR-), *to bear, carry, convey, take*
 IV **combūrō, -ūssī, -ūstus, -ere** (PVR-), *to burn up, consume*

domum^{I II} reditiōnis^{III IV} spē^V sublātā^{VI VII}

=with the hope of going back ~after destroying the hope of a home <having been> taken away return home

parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula^{VIII} subeunda essent^{IX X}

=they might be more prepared ~they might be the more ready for <the purpose of> undergoing for undergoing all dangers all dangers

I ACC. OF PLACE WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE TO WHICH, BY THE ACCUSATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427^{II}

II **domus, -ūs, f. (DOM-), a house, dwelling-house, building, mansion, palace; A home, dwelling, abode, residence**

III OBJECTIVE. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

IV **reditiō, -ōnis, f. (RED- + I-), a going back, coming back, returning, return**

V **spēs, speī, f. (SPA-), hope**

VI **tollō, sustulī, sublātus, -ere (TAL-), to lift, take up, raise, elevate, exalt; To take up, take away, remove, carry off, make way with**

VII **spē sublātā, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420**

VIII **perīculum, -i, n. (PAR-), a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay; Risk, hazard, danger, peril (which accompanies an attempt)**

IX **ut...essent. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE AFTER ut. §531**

X **subeō, -ire, -iī, -itus (SUB + EO), to come under, go under, enter; HENCE, WITH tectum, i.e. enter a house; To subject oneself to, take upon oneself, undergo, submit to, sustain, accept, endure, suffer**

trium mēnsium^{I II} molita^{III} cibāria^{IV} sibi^V quemque^{VI} domo^{VII}
 efferre^{VIII IX}

=each (man) to bear three of months ground food, for himself, from home
 ~every man to carry forth from home for himself three months ground rations

iubent^X

=(and) they order ~they ordered

I **trium mēnsium**, GEN. OF QUALITY. §326

II **mēnsis, -is**, M. (MA-), a month

III **molō, -ere, -uī, -itus**, to grind

IV **cibāria, -ōrum**, N., food, nutriment, victuals, provisions, fare, ration, fodder

V DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

VI **quisque, quæque, quidque**, AND (ADJ.) **quodque**, PRON. INDEF. (QUIS, QUÆ, QUID... + QUE), whoever it be, whatever, each, each one, every, everybody, every one, everything (of more than two); WITH SUP., to express universality (*quisque* IS THEN PLACED AFTER THE SUP.; WITH SG. AND NEUT. PL.; RARE WITH PL. M. AND F.)

VII ABL. FROM PLACE WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427i

VIII **quemque...efferre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iubent**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IX **efferō, extulī, ēlātus, ferre** (EX + FERŌ), to carry out, take out, bring forth, take away, remove; Fig., to set forth, spread abroad, utter, publish, proclaim, express

X **iūbēō, -iussi, -iussum, -iusse**, to order one to do something, to bid, tell, command

I.V.III.

PERSUĀDENT RAURACĪS ET TULINGĪS ET LATOVICĪS
FĪNITIMĪS, UTĪ EÖDEM ŪSĪ CŌNSILIŌ, OPPIDĪS SUĪS
VĪCISQUE EXUSTĪS, ŪNĀ CUM IĪS PROFICĪSCANTUR,
BOIŌSQUE, QUĪ TRĀNS RHĒNUM INCOLUERANT ET IN
AGRUM NŌRICUM TRĀNSIERANT NŌREIAMQUE
OPPUĜNĀBANT, RECEPTŌS AD SĒ SOCIŌS SIBI
ADSCĪSCUNT.

Persuādent Rauracīs^I et Tulingīs^{II} et Latovicīs^{III} finitimīs^{IV} suīs

=they persuade the Rauraci, and ~they persuaded the Rauraci,
the Tulingi, and the Latobrigi, and the Tulingi, and the
their neighbors Latobrigi, their neighbors

utĪ

=that

~to

eödem ūsĪ^V cŏnsiliŏ^{VII VIII}

=(those men) use the same plan ~adopt the same plan

I **Rauracī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people along the upper Rhine, north of the Helvetians

II **Tulingī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people near the Helvetians

III **Latobrigī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people near people near the Helvetians

IV **Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs**. DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuādent**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

V **ūtōr, ūsus, -ī**, DEP. TAKES ABL., to use, make use of, employ, profit by, take advantage of, enjoy, serve oneself with

VI PPP. PL. MASC. NOM.

VII ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūsī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

VIII **consīlium, -ii**, N. (CON + SAL-), deliberation, consultation, a considering together, counsel; Meton. In abstr., A conclusion made with consideration, a determination, resolution, measure, plan, purpose, intention

oppidīs suīs vicisque exustis^{I II}

=(and) with their towns and villages <having been> burned down ~and after burning down their towns and villages

ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur^{III}

=to set forward together with them ~to set out with them

Boiōsque^{IV}

=and the Boii ~and the Boii

quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant

=who had dwelt on the across the Rhine ~who had dwelt across the Rhine

I **oppidīs suīs vicisque exustis**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II **exūrō, -ūssī, -ūstus, -ere** (EX + ŪRŌ), to burn out, burn up, consume; To consume, destroy

III **utī...proficiscantur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV **Boiī, -ōrum**, M. PL., Boians, Boii, a Celtic people once widely diffused over Europe

et in agrum^I Nōricum^{II} trānsierant^{III}

=and (the Boii) had gone over ~and had crossed over into the
into the territory of the Norici Norican territory

Nōreiamque oppugnābant^{IV}

=and they (the Boii) were ~and had stormed Noreia
fighting against Noreia

receptōs^V [Helvētīi] ad sē sociōs^{VI} sibi^{VII} adscīscunt^{VIII}

=[the Helvetii] accepted to ~and they received to their
themselves (the Boii) <having number and united to
been> received again, as allies to themselves as allies
themselves

I **ager, agrī**, M., *productive land, a field, farm, estate, arable land, pasture; A territory, district, domain*

II **Nōricus, -ī**, M., *of the Norici, Norican—now Neumarks*

III **trānseō, -īi, -itus, -ire** (TRANS + EŌ), *to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass*

IV **oppūgnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (OB + PUGNO), *to fight against, attack, assail, assault, storm, besiege, war with*

V **recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (RE + CAPIO), *To take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain, recover; To get back, receive again, regain, recover, repossess; With se, to draw back, withdraw from or to any place, to betake one's self anywhere; In milit. lang., to retire, retreat*

VI **socius, -ī**, M., *a fellow, sharer, partner, comrade, companion, associate*

VII **sibi**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **adscīscunt**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VIII **scīscō, scīvī, scītus, -ere**, INCH. (SCIO), *Of the people, to accept, approve, assent to, enact, decree, ordain*

I.VI



TWO POSSIBLE ROUTES THROUGH THE PROVINCE.



I.VI.I

ERANT OMNĪNŌ ITĪNERA DUO, QUIBUS ITĪNERIBUS DOMŌ EXĪRE POSSĒNT: ŪNUM PER SĒQUANŌS, ANGUSTUM ET DIFFICILE, ĪTER MONTEM IŪRAM ET FLŪMEN RHODANUM, VIX QUĀ SĪNGULĪ CARRĪ DŪCERĒNTŪR; MŌNS AUTEM ALTISSIMUS IMPENDĒBAT, UT FACILE PERPAUCĪ PROHIBĒRE POSSĒNT: ALTERUM PER PRŌVĪNCIAM NOSTRAM, MULTŌ FACILIUS ATQUE EXPEDĪTIUS, PROPTEREĀ QUOD ĪTER FĪNĒS HELVĒTIŌRUM ET ALLOBROGUM, QUI NŪPER PĀCĀTĪ ERANT, RHODANUS FLUIT, ISQUE NŌN NŪLLĪS LOCĪS VADŌ TRĀNSĪTUR.

Erant omnīnō¹ itinera duo

=there were altogether two ~there were only two routes

I **omnīnō**, ADV. (OMNIS), *altogether, wholly, entirely, utterly, at all*; IN PARTIC. WITH NUMERALS, *in all, altogether, only, but, just*

quibus itineribus domō^I exīre possent^{II}

=routes in which (of such a ~by which they could go forth
character that by them) they from their country
(the Helvetii) could be able to go
forth from (their) home

ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum^{III} et difficile^{IV}, inter montem
Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum

=one (route), through the ~one through the Sequani,
Sequani, narrow and difficult, narrow and difficult, between
between Mount Jura and the Mount Jura and the river Rhone
river Rhone

vix^V quā singulī^{VI} carrī dūcerentur^{VII}

=by which (way) with difficulty ~where scarcely one wagon at a
single carts (only) would be led time could be led

mōns autem altissimus impendēbat^{VIII}

=there was, moreover, a very ~there was, moreover, a very
high mountain overhanging high mountain overhanging

I ABL. PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

II **quibus itineribus...possent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

III **angustum, ī**, N. (ANGUSTUS), a narrow place

IV **difficilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (DIS- + FACILIS), hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous

V **vix**, ADV., with difficulty, scarcely, barely

VI **singulus, -a, -um**, single; apiece; every; one each, one at a time

VII **quā...dūcerentur**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

VIII **impendeō, —, —, -ēre** (IN + PENDEŌ), to hang over, overhang

ut facile [eōs] perpauci^I prohibēre^{II} possent^{III}

=so that a very few [men] might be able to easily intercept (them) ~so that a very few men might easily intercept them

alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō^{IV} facilius atque expeditius^V

=another (route) through our province, more easy and more disengaged (from obstacles) by much ~the other, through our Province, much easier and freer from obstacles

propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum^{VI}

=on account of this because // between the boundaries of the helvetii and of the Allobroges ~because // between the boundaries of the Helvetii and those of the Allobroges

quī nūper^{VII} pācātī erant^{VIII}

=(the Helvetii and Allobroges) who were newly pacified ~who had lately been subdued

I **perpaucus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PER + PAUCUS), *very little, very few*

II DIR. OBJ. OF **prohibēre** IS OMITTED

III **ut...possent**, CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PUR RE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537.

IV ABL. DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414.

V **expediō, -īvi, -itus, -īre** (EX + PES), *to extricate, disengage, let loose, set free, liberate*; **expēditus, -a, -um**, (P. A.), *unimpeded, unincumbered, disengaged, free, easy, ready, at hand*

VI **Allobrogēs, -um**, M., a Gallic people in the northern part of the province—Acc. SG., **Allobrogem**, an *Allobrogian*

VII **nūper**, ADV. (NV-), *newly, lately, recently, freshly, not long ago, just*

VIII **pāco, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (PAX), *to bring into a state of peace and quietness, to make peaceful, to quiet, pacify, subdue, soothe*

Rhodanus fluit^I

=the Rhone flows

~the Rhone flows

isque nōn nūllis^{II} locis vadō^{IV} trānsitur

=and it (the Rhone) in not not ~and is in some places crossed
any places is crossed by a by a ford
shallow place

I.VI.II.

EXTRĒMUM OPPIDUM ALLOBROGUM EST PROXIMUMQUE
HELVĒTIŌRUM FĪNIBUS GENAVA.

I fluō, fluxī, fluxus, -ere (FLV-), to flow, stream

II nūllus, nūllius, ADJ. (NE + ULLUS), not any, none, no (SEE CHART: NŪLLUS, NO, NONE §113)

III nōn nūllis locis, TWO NEGATIVES MAKE AN AFFIRMATIVE. AS, in not not any places = in several places. TWO NEGATIVES ARE EQUIVALENT TO AN AFFIRMATIVE. MANY COMPOUNDS OR PHRASES OF WHICH NŌN IS THE FIRST PART EXPRESS AN INDEFINITE AFFIRMATIVE: NŌN NŪLLUS, SOME; NŌN NŪLLI (=ALIIQVI), SOME FEW. §326i

IV ABL. OF MEANS. MEANS, INSTRUMENT, MANNER, AND ACCOMPANIMENT ARE DENOTED BY THE INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE (SEE §398), BUT SOME OF THESE USES MORE COMMONLY REQUIRE A PREPOSITION. AS THEY ALL COME FROM ONE SOURCE (THE OLD INSTRUMENTAL CASE) NO SHARP LINE CAN BE DRAWN BETWEEN THEM, AND INDEED THE ROMANS THEMSELVES CAN HARDLY HAVE THOUGHT OF ANY DISTINCTION. THUS, IN OMNIBUS PRECIBUS ORĀBANT, THEY ENTREATED WITH EVERY [KIND OF] PRAYER, THE ABLATIVE, PROPERLY THAT OF MEANS, CANNOT BE DISTINGUISHED FROM THAT OF MANNER. §408

V vadum, -ī, N. (BA-), a shallow place, shallow, shoal, ford

Extrēmum^I oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus^{II} Genava^{III}

=the outermost town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetii, is Geneva

~the farthest town of the Allobroges, and the nearest to the territories of the Helvetii, is Geneva

I.VI.III.

EX EŌ OPPIDŌ PŌNS AD HĒLVETIŌS PERTINET.

Ex eō oppidō pōns^{IV} ad Hēlvetiōs pertinet

=out from this town a bridge extends to the Helvetii

~from this town a bridge extends to the Helvetii

I.VI.IV.

ALLOBROGIBUS SĒSĒ VEL PERSUĀSŪRŌS, QUOD NŌNDUM BONŌ ĀNIMŌ ĪN POPULUM RŌMĀNUM VIDĒRENTUR, EXĪSTMĀBĀNT VEL VĪ COĀCTŪRŌS UT PER SUŌS FĪNĒS EŌS ĪRE PATERENTUR.

I **extrēmus, -a, -um** ADJ. SUP. (EXTER), *outermost, utmost, extreme, farthest, last*

II ABL. WITH **proximum** USED AS A PRÆP. CERTAIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES ARE SOMETIMES USED AS PREPOSITIONS: THE ADVERBS PRIDĒ, POSTRIDĒ, PROPIUS, PROXIME, LESS FREQUENTLY THE ADJECTIVES PROPRIOR AND PROXIMUS, MAY BE FOLLOWED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §432^I

III **Genava, -ae**, M., a city of the Allobroges, on the Lacus Lemanus, now Geneva

IV **pōns, -ontis**, M. (PAT-), *a bridge*

Allobrogibus^I sēsē vel^{II} persuāsūrōs [esse]

=that they (the Helvetians) ~that they should either
would either persuade the persuade the Allobroges
Allobroges

quod nōndum^{III} bonō^{IV} animō^{V VI} in populum Rōmānum
vidērentur^{VII VIII}

=because they not yet seemed in ~because they did not seem as
good rational soul toward the yet in a good mind toward the
Roman people Roman people

exīstimābant^{IX}

=they were estimating ~they thought

I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuāsūrōs**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

II **vel**, CONJ., or; and...or

III **nōndum**, ADV. (NON + DUM), the while, a while, now, yet, not yet

IV **bonus**, -a, -um, ADJ., AS COMP. IN USE **melior**, -ōris, BETTER; AS SUP. **optimus**, best. (AP-, OP-), good; WITH **animus**, good spirits, kindly

V **animus**, -ī, M. (AN-), the rational soul; Of the mind, the mental powers, intelligence, reason, intellect, mind

VI **bonō animō**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY THE GENITIVE OR THE ABLATIVE MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT PHYSICAL QUALITIES ARE OFTENER DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE. §415

VII **quod...vidērentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VIII **videō**, **vidī**, **vīsus**, -ēre (VID-), to see, discern, perceive; PASS, to be looked upon, be regarded, seem, appear

IX **exīstimō**, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (EX + AESTIMO), to value, estimate, reckon; To appreciate, value, esteem, judge, consider, suppose, think, expect

[sēsē] vel vī^{I II} [eos] coāctūrōs [esse]

=or [those men (the Helvetians)] ~or compel them perforce
would drive together [those
men] (the Allobroges) by
strength

ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur^{III}

=<in order> that they might bear ~to permit them to pass through
them (the Helvetians) to go their territories
through their own (the
Allobroges') territories

I.VI.V.

OMNIBUS RĒBUS AD PROFECTIONEM COMPARATĪS DIEM
DĪCUNT, QUĀ DIĒ AD RĪPAM RHODANĪ OMNĒS
CONVENIANT.

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparatīs

=with all things <having been> ~having provided everything for
prepared for <the purpose of> departure
departing

diem dicunt^{IV}

=they say a day ~they appoint a day

I ABL. OF MEANS. §408

II **vīs**, —, ABL. **vī**, F., strength, force, vigor, power, energy, virtue; Hostile strength, force, violence, compulsion

III **ut...paterentur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV **dīcō, dixī, dictus, -ere** (DIC-), to say, speak, utter, tell, mention, relate, affirm, declare, state, assert; To appoint, set apart, fix upon, settle

quā diē^v ad rīpam^{vi} Rhodanī omnēs conveniant^{vii} ^{viii}

=~~a day in~~ which all (the men) ~they should all meet on the
would come together toward the bank of the Rhone
bank of the Rhone

I.VI.VI.

IS DIĒS ERAT A.D. V. KAL. APRIL., L. PĪSŌNE A. GABĪNĪŌ
CŌNSULIBUS.

Is diēs erat a[nte]^v d[iem] quīntum Kal[endās]^{vi} Aprīl[ēs]^{vii}
L[ūciō]^{viii} Pīsōne, A[ulō]^{ix} Gabīniō^x cōnsulibus^{xi}

=this day was the fifth day ~this day was the fifth before the
before the April kalends (i.e. the kalends of April, in the
28th of March), with Lucius Piso consulship of Lucius Piso and
(and) Aulus Gabinius being Aulus Gabinius
consuls (B.C. 58.)

V REDUNDANT PRON. AND MAY BE OMITTED IN ENGLISH TRANSLATION

VI **rīpa**, -**æ**, F. (RIC-), a bank, margin (of a river)

VII **quā diē...convenient**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

VIII **conveniō**, -**vēnī**, -**ventus**, -**ire** (CON + VENIŌ), to come together, meet, assemble, gather, come in a body; To address, accost, meet, visit, obtain an interview with; Trop, to come to a decision, be concluded, be agreed on, be settled

V **ante**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (ANT-), ADV., of space, before, in front, forwards; PRÆP. WITH ACC, before

VI **Kalendæ**, -**ārum**, F. (CAL-), PROP. the day when the order of days was proclaimed; hence, the Calends, the first day of the month

VII **april**, -**is**, the month of April, April

VIII **Lūcius**, -**ī**, M., a Roman first name; ABR., L.

IX **Aulus**, -**ī**, M., a Roman first name

X **Gabinius**, -**ī**, M., Aulus Gabinius, consul with Lucius Calpurnius Piso, 58 B.C.

XI **L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus**, ABL., ABS. TRANS. WITH being. §420

I.VII

CÆSAR HASTENS TO GENEVA.

I.VII.I



CÆSARĪ CUM ID NŪNTIĀTUM ESSET, EŌS PER PRŌVINCIAM NOSTRAM ITER FACERE CŌNĀRĪ, MĀTŪRAT AB URBE PROFICĪSCĪ ET QUAM MAXIMĪS POTEST ITĪNERIBUS IN GALLIAM ULTERIŌREM CONTĒNDIT, ET AD GENĀVAM PERVENIT.

Cæsarī cum id nūntiātum esset^I

=when it had been reported to ~when it was reported to Cæsar
Cæsar

eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī^{II}

=that they are attempting to ~that they were attempting to
make a journey through our make their route through our
Province Province

I **cum...nūntiātum esset, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **eōs...cōnārī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum esset**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

mātūrat^{I II} ab urbe proficīscī

=he (Cæsar) makes haste to depart from the city (Rome) ~he hastened to set out from the city

et quam maximīs^{III} potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem^{IV} contendit^{V VI}

=and, by as great marches as he (Cæsar) is able, strives into Further Gaul ~and, by as great marches as he can, pressed on to Further Gaul

et ad Genavam pervenit^{VII}

=and he arrives at Geneva ~and arrived at Geneva

I.VII.II.

PRŌVINCIAE TŌTĪ QUAM MAXIMUM POTEST MĪLITUM
NŪMERUM IMPERAT (ERAT OMNĪNŌ IN GALLIĀ
ULTERIŌRE LEGIŌ ŪNA), PONTEM, QUI ERAT AD
GENAVAM IUBET RESCĪNDĪ.

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

II **mātūrō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (MATURUS), to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity; Fig., to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite

III **quam** + SUPER = *as...as possible*. BESIDES THEIR REGULAR SIGNIFICATION (AS IN ENGLISH), THE FORMS OF COMPARISON ARE USED AS FOLLOWS: WITH QUAM, VEL, OR ŪNUS THE SUPERLATIVE DENOTES THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEGREE. §291^{III}

IV **ūterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP., *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

V HIST. PRES. §469

VI **contendō, -dī, -tus, -ere** (CON + TENDO), to stretch, bend, draw tight, strain; To strive for, press, pursue, prosecute, hasten, exert oneself; To march, press on, seek, journey hastily, hasten

VII HIST. PRES. §469

Prōvinciæ^I tōtī quam maximum^{II} potest mīlitum^{III} [cōgendum]
numerus imperat^{IV}

=*he orders the whole Province a
greatest number of soldiers as it
is able [to be gathered]* ~*he ordered the whole Province
[to furnish] as great a number of
soldiers as possible*

erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna

=*(as) there was altogether one
legion in Further Gaul* ~*as there was in all only one
legion in Further Gaul*

pontem

=*the bridge* ~*the bridge*

quī erat ad^V Genavam^{VI}

=*which was toward Geneva* ~*at Geneva*

iubet^{VII}

=*he orders* ~*he orders*

I DAT. OF SPECIAL V. **imperat.** MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE. TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

II **quam** + SUPER = *as...as possible.* §291^{III}

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346^{II}

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V **ad**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., Of approach. In space, *to, toward*; Of nearness or proximity. In gen., *near to, by, at, close by*

VI **ad Genavam**, ACC. OF PLACE TO WHICH. I. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS AB IS OFTEN USED TO DENOTE FROM THE VICINITY OF, AND AD TO DENOTE TOWARDS, TO THE NEIGHBORHOOD OF. §428^I

VII HIST. PRES. §469

rescindī^I II

=to be broken down

~to be broken down

I.VII.III.

VBI DĒ EIUS ADVENTŪ HELVĒTIŪ CERTIŌRĒS FACTĪ SŪNT, LĒGĀTŌS AD EUM MITTUNT NŌBILISSIMŌS CĪVITĀTIS, CUIUS LĒGĀTIŌNIS NAMMEIUS ET VERŪCLĒTIUS PRĪNCIPEM LOCUM OBTĪNĒBANT, QŪI DĪCERĒNT SIBI ESSE ĪN ĀNIMŌ SĪNE ŪLLŌ MALEFICIŌ ITER PER PRŌVĪNCIAM FACERE, PROPTEREĀ QUOD ALIUD ITER HABĒRĒNT NŪLLUM: ROGĀRE UT EIUS VOLŪNTĀTE ID SIBI FACERE LICEAT.

"NOBIS EST ĪN ĀNIMO SĪNE ULLO MALEFICIO ITER PER PROVĪNCIAM FACERE, PROPTEREA QUOD ALIUD ITER HABEMUS NŪLLUM; ROGAMUS, UT TUA VOLŪNTATE ID NOBIS FACERE LICEAT."

Vbi dē eius adventū^{III} Helvētiū certiōrēs^{IV} V factī sunt

=when the Helvetii are made ~when the Helvetii were more certain concerning his informed of his arrival arrival

I **rescindō -scidī, -scissus, -ere**, (RE + SCINDŌ), to cut off, cut loose, cut down, tear open: *pontem*, i.e. break down

II **pontem...rescindī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iubet**. §580

III **adventus, ūs**, M (AD + BA-, VEN-), a coming, approach, arrival

IV PRED. ADJ. WITH SUM AND A FEW OTHER INTRANSITIVE OR PASSIVE VERBS, A NOUN OR AN ADJECTIVE DESCRIBING OR DEFINING THE SUBJECT MAY STAND IN THE PREDICATE. THIS IS CALLED A PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE. THE VERB SUM IS ESPECIALLY COMMON IN THIS CONSTRUCTION, AND WHEN SO USED IS CALLED THE COPULA (I.E. CONNECTIVE). §283

V **certus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PPP. OF CERNO), determined, resolved, fixed, settled, purposed, certain; WITH *facere*, to inform, apprise one of a thing

lēgātōs ad eum mittunt^I nōbilissimōs^{II} cīvitātis

=they send to him the most well-known men of (their) state as ambassadors *~they sent to him, as ambassadors, the most celebrated men of their state*

cuius lēgātiōnis Nammeius^{III} et Verucloëtius^{IV} prīncipem^V locum obtinēbant

=of which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius were holding the chief place *~in which embassy Numeius and Verudoctius possessed the chief place*

quī dīcerent^{VI}

=who should say *~to say*

I HIST. PRES. §469

II Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, *veri* (Neuter) *simile*, *probable*, lit, *like truth* (III.XIII); *nostri*, *our men* (I.LII); *novissimis* (Masculine), *for the rear*, Lit. *for those last* (I.XXV); *sua*, *their possessions* (I.XI); *pro viso*, *as seen*, Lit. *for (that which was) seen* (I.XXII)

III **Nammeius, -ī**, M., a Helvetian sent as envoy to Caesar

IV **Verucloëtius, -ī**, M., a Helvetian who went as envoy to Caesar

V **prīnceps, cipis**, ADJ. (PRIMUS + CAP-), *first in order, foremost; The first, chief, most eminent, most noble*

VI **quī dīcerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

sibi^I esse^{II} in animō sine^{III} ūllō^{IV} maleficiō^V iter per prōvinciam
facere

=*that there is in mind for those men to make a journey through (their) province without (doing) any evil-doing* ~*that it was their intention to march through the Province without doing any nefarious activities*

proptereā quod aliud iter habērent^{VI} nūllum

=*on this account because another route they were having none* ~*because they had, according to their own representations, no other route*

[se] rogāre^{VII}

=(and) *that [they] are asking* ~*that they requested*

I DAT. OF POSS. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. NOTE. THE GENITIVE OR A POSSESSIVE WITH ESSE EMPHASIZES THE POSSESSOR; THE DATIVE, THE FACT OF POSSESSION; AS.—LIBER EST MEUS, THE BOOK IS MINE (AND NO ONE'S ELSE); EST MIHI LIBER, I HAVE A BOOK (AMONG OTHER THINGS). §373

II **esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicerent**. §580

III **sine**, PRÆP. WITH ABL. (SI + NE), *without*

IV **ūllus, -a, -um**, ADJ., WITH A NEGATION, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, *any, any one* (SEE CHART: ŪLLUS, ANY §113)

V **maleficium, -ī**, N. (MALEFICUS), *evil-doing, nefarious, vicious, wicked, criminal*

VI **proptereā quod...habērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII **rogō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, *to ask, question, interrogate; To ask, beg, request, solicit, implore*

ut eius voluntātē^I ^{II} id sibi^{III} facere liceat^{IV} ^V

=that might be allowed to do it ~to be permitted to do so with
(i.e. cross their territories) with his consent
his (Cæsar's) will

I.VII.IV.

CÆSAR, QUOD MEMORIĀ TENĒBAT L. CASSIUM
CŌNSULEM OCCĪSUM EXERCITUMQUE EIUS AB HELVĒTIIS
PULSUM ET SUB IUGUM MISSUM, CONCĒDENDUM NON
PUTĀBAT; NEQUE HOMINĒS INIMICŌ ANIMŌ, DATĀ
FACULTĀTE PER PRŌVĪNCIAM ITĪNERIS FACIENDĪ,
TEMPERĀTŪRŌS AB INIŪRIĀ ET MALEFICIŌ EXĪSTIMĀBAT.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

-
- I **voluntās, -ātis**, F. (VOL-), *will, free-will, wish, choice, desire, inclination*; ABL., *of one's own will, of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily*
- II **eius voluntātē**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- III DAT. WITH IMPERS. V. **liceat**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH THE IMPERSONALS LIBET (LUBET), IT PLEASES, AND LICET, IT IS ALLOWED. §368
- IV **ut...liceat**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563
- V **licet, -cuit and citum est, -ēre**, IMPERS. (LIC-), *It is lawful, is allowed, is permitted*, WITH OR WITHOUT DAT. OF PERSON—WITHOUT SUBJECT

quod memoriā^I tenēbat^{II III}

=was holding this thing in (his) ~inasmuch as he kept in
memory remembrance

L[ūcium] Cassium^{IV} cōnulem occīsum [esse]^{V VI}

=that L[ucius] Cassius, the ~that Lucius Cassius, the consul,
consul, had been cut down had been slain

exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs^{VII} pulsum [esse]^{VIII IX}

=and his army had been ~and his army routed // by the
propelled // by the Helvetii Helvetii

I **memoria, -æ**, f. (MEMOR), *memory, remembrance*

II **quod...tenebat**, CAUSAL CLAUSE. INDIC. AS IT IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE SPEAKER. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

III **teneō, tenuī, —, ēre** (TA-), *to hold, keep, have, grasp, hold fast; Fig., to hold in mind, take in, understand, conceive, comprehend, know*

IV **Cassius, -ī**, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, praetor 111 B.C.; when consul, 107 B.C., he engaged in battle with the Tigurians in the territory of the Allobroges, and was defeated and slain

V PERF. PASS. INF; IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **memoria tenebat**. §580

VI **occidō, -cidi, -cīsus, -ere** (OB + CÆDO), *to strike down, knock down; To cut down, cut off, kill, slay*

VII **ab Helvētiīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES **ā** OR **ab**) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

VIII PERF. PASS. INF; IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **memoria tenebat**. §580

IX **pellō, pepulī, pulsus, -ere** (PAL-), *to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel; In partic. To drive out or away, to thrust or turn out, expel, banish; ESP. MILIT., to drive back, discomfit, rout the enemy* —CONSTR. WITH ABL., WITH **ex**, RARELY WITH **de**; ALSO WITH **ab** AND ABL. OF THE PLACE FROM WHICH ONE IS REPELLED OR DRIVEN BACK, BUT HAS NOT ENTERED

et sub^I iugum^{II} missum [esse]^{III}

=and (they) were sent under a yoke ~and made to pass under the yoke

concēdendum non [sibi] [esse]^{IV}

=that it is not <having> to be granted [by him] ~that (their request) ought not to be granted

putābat^V

=was thinking ~thought

-
- I **sub**, PRÆP. WITH ACC. AND ABL., WITH ABL., of position in space, *under, below, beneath, underneath, behind*; TRANSF., of lofty objects, at the foot of which, or in whose immediate neighborhood, any thing is situated, *under, below, beneath, at the foot of, at, by, near, before*; Of time, *in, within, during, at, by*; In gen., of subjection, domination, stipulation, influence, effect, reason, etc., *under, beneath, with*; Trop., *under, subject to, in the power of; during, in the time of, upon, etc.*; WITH ACC., to point out the object under which a thing comes, goes, extends, etc., *under, below, beneath*; Of space, USU. WITH VERBS OF MOTION; Of time, denoting a close approximation, *Before, towards, about, shortly before, up to, until*
- II **iūgum, -i**, N., a yoke for oxen, a collar for horses; Esp. as the symbol of humiliation and defeat, *a yoke* (consisting of two upright spears, and a third laid transversely upon them, under which vanquished enemies were made to pass)
- III PERF. PASS. INF; IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **memoria tenebat**. §580
- IV **concēdō, -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (CON + CĒDŌ), INTRANS, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove; To yield, submit to one's will, comply with one's wishes*—IMPERS.
- V **putō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PUTUS), *to clean, cleanse, trim, prune; To judge, suppose, account, consider, suspect, believe, think, imagine*

neque hominēs inimicō^I animō^{II}

=nor /was he thinking/ that men
with hostile mind

~nor /was he of the opinion/ that
men of hostile intellect

datā facultātē^{III IV} per prōvinciam itineris faciendī^V

=with the capability <having
been> given of making a journey
through the province

~if an opportunity of marching
through the Province should
have been granted to them

temperātūrōs [esse]^{VI VII} ab iniūriā^{VIII} et maleficiō^{IX}

=would abstain from injury and
misdeed

~would abstain from outrage
and mischief

exīstimābat

=/nor/ was he thinking

~/nor/ was he of the opinion

- I **inimicus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (IN + AMICUS), *unfriendly, hostile, inimica*
- II ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY THE GENITIVE OR THE ABLATIVE MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT PHYSICAL QUALITIES ARE OFTENER DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE. §415
- III **facultās, -ātis**, F. (FACILIS), *capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability*
- IV **datā facultāte**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420
- V **itineris faciendī**, OBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504
- VI **temperō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (TEMPUS), *to observe proper measure, be moderate, restrain oneself, forbear, abstain, be temperate, act temperately*
- VII **hominēs...temperātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimābat**. §580
- VIII **iniūriā, -æ**, F. (INIURIUS; IN + IŪS), *any thing that is done contrary to justice and equity, injury, wrong, violence; TRANSF., injurious, unlawful, or unjust conduct; ACT., injustice, wrongdoing*
- IX **ab iniūriā et maleficiō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

I.VII.V.

TAMEN, UT SPATIUM INTERCĒDERE POSSET DUM MĪLITĒS
QUŌS IMPERĀVERAT CONVENIRENT, LĒGĀTIS RESPONDIT
DIEM SĒ AD DĒLIBERANDUM SŪMPTŪRUM: SĪ QUID
VELLENT, AD ID. APRIL. REVERTERENTUR.

“AD DELIBERANDUM SUMAM; SI QUID VULTIS, AD. ID.
APR. REVERTIMINI.”

Tamen^I

=*nevertheless*

~*yet*

ut spatium^{II} intercēdere^{III} posset^{IV}

=<in order> that a space (of ~in order that a period might
time) might be able to come intervene
between

dum^V mīlitēs^{VI}

=*until the soldiers*

~*until the soldiers*

quōs imperāverat^{VII}

=*whom he had ordered (to be
furnished)*

~*whom he had ordered (to be
furnished)*

I **tamen**, ADV. (TA-), AFTER A CONCESSIVE OR COND. PARTICLE, *notwithstanding, nevertheless, for all that, however, yet, still* (BEGINNING THE CLAUSE OR AFTER ITS EMPHATIC WORD)

II **spatium**, -ī, N. (SPA-), *a space, room, extent; A portion of time, space, interval, period*

III **intercēdō**, -cessī, -cessus, -ere (inter + cēdō), *to come between, intervene, be between*

IV **ut...posset**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

V **dum**, CONJ. (DUM), *while, whilst, at the time that, during the time in which, where; Of immediate succession, to the time when, all the time till, until*

VI **mīles**, -itis, M. AND F. (MIL-), *a soldier*

VII **imperō**, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (IN + PARO), *to command, order, enjoin, bid, give an order; To exercise authority, command, rule, control, govern*

convenirent^I

=should assemble

~should assemble

lēgātīs^{II} respondit^{III}

=he replied to the ambassadors

~he replied to the ambassadors

diem sē ad dēliberandum^{IV V} sūmptūrum [esse]^{VI VII}

=that he would take up a day for
<the purpose of> deliberating

~that he would take time to
deliberate

sī quid^{VIII} vellent^{IX}

=if they wanted anything

~if they wanted anything

I **dum...convenirent, dum** TEMPORAL CLAUSE; *Dum* + PRES. OR IMPER. SUBJ. = INTENTION OR EXPECTANCY. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE. SUCH ARE VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §553

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **respondit.** §367

III **respondeō, -spondī, -spōnsus, -ēre** (RE + SPONDEŌ), *to answer, reply, respond, make answer*

IV **ad dēliberandum,** ACC. OF THE GERUND EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

V **dēliberō, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (DE + LIBRA, *balance*), *to weigh well in one's mind, to consider maturely, deliberate respecting a thing; to take counsel, consult, advise upon*

VI **sūmō, sūmpsī, sūmptus, -ere** (SUB + EMO), *to take, take up, take in hand, lay hold of, assume; Fig., to take, take up, assume*

VII **sē...sūmptūrum,** INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit.** §580

VIII **quis, quis, quid,** PRON INDEF. (CA-), *any one, anybody, anything, some one, somebody, something; aliquis, aliquid* IS A COMMON INDEFINITE PRONOUN (*anyone, anything*), BUT *quis, quid* ARE COMMONLY USED AFTER *sī, nisi, num,* AND *nē* AS AN INDEFINITE—*who = anyone; what = anything* (SEE INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS §148)

IX **volō, voluī, velle** (VOL-), *to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine*

ad Īd[ūs]^I Aprīl[ēs] reverterentur^{II III}

=they might return towards the
ides of April

~they might return on the ides of
April (on April 2th)

I **Id, -ūs** (4TH DECL.), **Ides, the 13th of April**—the *Ides* denotes the time of the month when there is a full moon

II **sī...vellent...reverterentur**, COND. IN INDIR. DISC. THE APODOSIS IS SUBJUNCTIVE BECAUSE IT WOULD HAVE BEEN IMPERATIVE IN DIRECT DISCOURSE. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588 & CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III **rēverto and rēvertor, versus** (RE + VERTO), *to turn back, turn about; to come back, return*

I.VIII

CÆSAR FORBIDS THE HELVTIANS ENTRY.

I.VIII.I



INTEREĀ EĀ LEGIŌNE QUAM SĒCUM HABĒBAT
MĪLITIBUSQUE QUI EX PRŌVINCĪA
CONVĒNERANT Ā LACŪ LEMANNŌ, QUI IN
FLŪMEN RHODANUM INFLUIT, AD MŌTEM
IŪRAM, QUI FĪNĒS SĒQUANŌRUM AB HELVĒTIIS DĪVIDIT,
MĪLIA PASSUUM ŪNDEVĪGINTĪ MŪRUM IN ALTITŪDĪNEM
PEDUM SĒDECIM FOSSAMQUE PERDŪCIT.

Intereā^I eā legiōne^{II III}

=*meanwhile, with that legion*

~*meanwhile, with the legion*

quam sēcum habēbat

=*which he was having with him*

~*which he had with him*

militibusque^{IV}

=*and the soldiers*

~*and the soldiers*

I **intereā**, ADV. (INTER + EA), *meanwhile, in the meantime, in the interim*

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **legiō, ōnis**, F. (LEG-), *a body of soldiers, legion* (containing 10 cohorts of foot-soldiers and 300 cavalry, in all between 4200 and 6000 men. These were Roman citizens; only on pressing necessity were slaves admitted. The legions were numbered in the order of their levy, but were often known by particular names); PL., *legions, soldiers*

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant

=*who had come together from the Province*

~*which had assembled from the Province*

ā lacū Lemannō^I

=*from the Lake of Geneva*

~*from the Lake of Geneva*

quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit^{II}

=*which flows into the river Rhone*

~*which flows into the river Rhone*

ad montem Iūram

=*to Mount Jura*

~*to Mount Jura*

quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis^{III} dīvidit

=*which separates the territories of the Sequani from (those territories of) the Helvetii*

~*which separates the territories of the Sequani from those of the Helvetii*

I **ā lacū Lemannō**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426¹

II **influo**, -uxī, uxor, -ere (IN + FLUO), *to flow in, run in*

III **ab Helvētiis**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

mīlia^I passuum^{II} ūndēvīgintī mūrum^{III} in altitūdinem^{IV} pedum^V
sēdecim fossamque^{VI} perdūcit^{VII}

=he had drew up for nineteen ~he constructed, for nineteen
thousands of paces, into the miles a wall, to the height of
height of sixteen feet, a wall and sixteen feet, a wall and a trench
a trench

I.VIII.II.

EŌ OPERE PERFECTŌ, PRÆSIDIA DISPŌNIT, CASTELLA
COMMŪNIT, QUŌ FACILIUS, SĪ SĒ ĪNVĪTŌ TRĀNSĪRE
CŌNĀRENTŪR, PROHIBĒRE POSSET.

Eō opere^{VIII} perfectō^{IX}

=with that work <having been> ~when that work was finished
completed

-
- I ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE. EXTENT OF SPACE IS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §425
- II PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346
- III **mūrus, -ī**, M. (MV-), a wall, city wall
- IV **altitūdō, -dinis**, F. (ALTUS), height, altitude; Meton., depth
- V GEN. OF QUALITY. THE GENITIVE IS USED TO DENOTE QUALITY, BUT ONLY WHEN THE QUALITY IS MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE. THE GENITIVE OF QUALITY, WITH NUMERALS, IS USED TO DEFINE MEASURES OF LENGTH, DEPTH, ETC. (GENITIVE OF MEASURE.) §345
- VI **fossa, -æ**, F. (FOSSUS; TO DIG, FOD-), a ditch, trench, fosse
- VII **perdūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, ere** (PER + DŪCŌ), To lead, bring, conduct, guide a person or thing to any place
- VIII **opus, -eris**, N. (AP-), work, labor, toil; TRANSF., ABSTR. IN NOM. AND ACC., need, necessity; hence, *Opus est, it is needful, wanting; there is need of, use for—opus est mihi, tibi, etc., I (thou, etc.) have need of, need, want*
- IX **eō opere perfectō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

præsidia^x dispōnit^{xi}

=he arranges defences

~he distributed the garrisons

castellaⁱⁱⁱ commūnit^{iv}

=(and) he fortifies the redoubts

~and closely fortified the redoubts

quō facilius^v

=in which more easily

~in order that he may the more easily

sī^{vi} sē invītō^{vii viii} trānsīre^{ix} cōnārentur^x

=if they should attempt to cross with him <being> unwilling

~if they should attempt to cross over against his will

X **præsidium, -ī**, N. (PRÆSES), defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid, assistance; A guard, escort, convoy, garrison

XI **dispōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (DIS + PŌNŌ), to place here and there, array, distribute, set in order, arrange, dispose

III **castellum, -ī**, N. dim. (CASTRUM), a castle, fort, citadel, fortress, stronghold

IV **commūniō, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, -īre** (COM + MŪNIŌ), to fortify on all sides or strongly, to secure, barricade, intrench

V **facilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FAC-), easy to do, easy, without difficulty

VI **sī**, CONJ. (SOVO-), AS A COND. PARTICLE.—WITH INDIC., in conditions assumed as true, or (WITH FUT.) which will probably be fulfilled, *if, when, inasmuch as, since*; WITH *quod*, and *if, but if, if however, if*

VII **sē...invītō**, ABL. ABS.; ADD 'being' FOR PROPER TRANSLATION, AS, *with him being unwilling*. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

VIII **invītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + VICITUS?), against one's will, unwilling, reluctant; As SUBST. M., reluctant, unwilling

IX **trānsēō, -ii, -itus, -īre** (TRĀNS + EŌ), to go over, go across, cross over, pass over, pass by, pass

[eos] prohibēre possit¹

=he may be able to prohibit ~intercept them
[those men]

I.VIII.III.

VBI EA DIĒS QUAM CŌNSTITUERAT CUM LĒGĀTĪS VĒNIT
ET LĒGĀTĪ AD EUM REVERTĒRŪNT, NEGAT SĒ MŌRE ET
EXEMPLŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ POSSE ITER ŪLLĪ PER
PRŌVĪNCIAM DARE ET, SĪ VIM FACERE CŌNENTUR,
PROHIBITŪRUM OSTĒNDIT.

"MORE ET EXEMPLO POPULI ROMANI NON POSSUM ITER
ULLI PER PROVINCIA M DARE; SI VIM FACERE
CONABIMINI, PROHIBEBO."

Vbi ea diēs

=when that day

~when the day

X ***sī...cōnārentur***, PROTASIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID COND. FUTURE CONDITIONS MAY BE MORE VIVID OR LESS VIVID. IN A LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION, THE SUPPOSITION IS LESS DISTINCT, THE APODOSIS EXPRESSING WHAT WOULD BE THE RESULT IN THE CASE SUPPOSED. IN THE LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN BOTH PROTASIS AND APODOSIS. §526 FUTURE CONDITIONS MAY BE MORE VIVID OR LESS VIVID. IN A LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION, THE SUPPOSITION IS LESS DISTINCT, THE APODOSIS EXPRESSING WHAT WOULD BE THE RESULT IN THE CASE SUPPOSED. IN THE LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITION THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN BOTH PROTASIS AND APODOSIS. §516ⁱⁱ

I ***quō facilius...possit***, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UT) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §539 RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. THE ABLATIVE QUO (= UT EO) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531

quam cōstituerat^I cum lēgātis

=which he had appointed with
the ambassadors

~which he had appointed with
the ambassadors

vēnit^{II}

=came

~came

et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt

=and the the ambassadors
returned to him

~and they returned to him

negat^{III}

=he denies

~he refused

se mōre^{IV} ^V et exemplō ^{VI} ^{VII} populī Rōmānī posse^{VIII} iter ūllī per
prōvinciam dare

=that, by the habit and by the
manner of the Roman people, he
was able to grant the journey to
anyone through the province

~that in accordance with the
custom and (in accordance with)
precedent of the Roman people,
he will grant any one a passage
through the Province

I **cōstituō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere** (COM- + STATUO; STA-), to put, place, set, station; To designate, select, assign, appoint

II **veniō, vēnī, ventus, -īre** (BA-), to come; Fig. to come into, fall into any state or condition; PASS, we, they, etc., came or have come, etc

III **negō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (AG-), to say no, deny, refuse

IV ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

V **mōs, mōris**, M. (MA-), a will, way, habit, manner, fashion, caprice, humor

VI ABL. OF SPEC. §418

VII **exemplum, -ī**, N. (EM-), a sample, specimen; A way, manner, kind, nature

VIII **sē...posse**. INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **negat**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

et si vim facere cōnentur

=and if they should attempt to
make force

~if they should attempt to
execute violence

[se] [eos] prohibītūrum [esse]^I

=[he] (Cæsar) would oppose
[those men]

~that he would oppose them

ostendit^{II}

=he pointed out

~and he gives them to
understand

I.VIII.IV.

HELVĒTIĪ EĀ SPĒ DĒIECTĪ, NĀVIBUS IŪNCTĪS RATIBUSQUE
COMPLŪRIBUS FACTĪS ALIĪ VADĪS RHODANĪ, QUĀ MĪNIMA
ALTITŪDŌ FLŪMĪNIS ERAT, NŌN NUMQUAM ĪNTERDIŪ,
SÆPIUS NOCTŪ, SĪ PERRŪPERE POSSĒNT CŌNĀTĪ,
OPERIS MŪNĪTIŌNE ET MĪLITUM CŌNCURSŪ ET TĒLĪS
REPULSĪ, HŌC CŌNĀTŪ DĒSTITĒRŪNT.

I **si...cōnentur...prohibītūrum**, FUT. LESS VIVID COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II **ostendō, -dī, -tus, -ere** (OBS + TENDO), *to stretch out, spread before, expose to view, show, point out, exhibit, display*

Helvētī eā spē^I dēiectī^{II}, [aliī] nāvibus iūctīs^{III} ^{IV} ratibusque complūribus factīs^V, aliī vadīs^{VI} Rhodanī

=the Helvetii, thrown down from that hope // [some men] with boats <having been> joined together, and with several rafts <having been> made, other (men) in the fords of the Rhone ~The Helvetii, deprived of this hope // some by means of a bridge of boats and numerous rafts constructed for the purpose, others by the fords of the Rhone

quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat

=in which the depth of the river was least ~where the depth of the river was least

nōn numquam^{VII} interdiū^{VIII}, sēpius^{IX} noctū^X

=not never by day, (but) more often by night ~sometimes by day, but more frequently at night

I ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

II **dēiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (DE + IACIO), to throw down, hurl down, precipitate, prostrate, raze, fell, cut down, tear down, destroy; To prevent from obtaining, deprive, rob of

III **iungo, -nxi, -nctum**, to join or unite together, connect, attach, fasten, yoke, harness

IV **ñāviibus iūctīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **ratibusque complūribus factīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **vadīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VII **numquam**, ADV. (NE + UMQUAM), at no time, never

VIII **interdiū**, ADV. (DIV-), during the day, in the daytime, by day

IX **sēpis, -e**, ADJ., that happens often, frequent

X **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), night—ad multam noctem: (up) to late in the night

sī perrumpere^I possent^{II}

=(to see) if they should be able to
break through

~to see whether they could
break through

cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne^{III} ^{IV} et militum concursū^V ^{VI} et tēlis^{VII} ^{VIII}
repulsī^{IX}, hōc cōnātū^X dēstitērunt^{XI}

=<having> tried // (those men,
<having been> repulsed by the
fortification of the works, ~~and~~ by
the running together of the
soldiers, and by the spears, they
left off from this attempt

~trying // but being kept at bay
by the strength of our works,
and by the concourse of the
soldiers, and by the missiles,
they desisted from this attempt

I **perrumpō, -rūpī, -ruptus, -ere** (PER + RUMPŌ; RVP-), to break through, force a way through, get across

II **sī...possent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS OCCASIONALLY INTRODUCED BY SĪ IN THE SENSE OF WHETHER. §576^I

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **mūnitiō, -ōnis**, F. (MUNIO), a defending, fortifying, protecting; A defence, fortification, rampart, bulwark, intrenchment, walls

V ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **concursum, -ūs**, M. (CON + CURRO), a running together, concourse, throng, mob, tumult; An assault, onset, attack, charge

VII ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VIII **tēlum, -ī**, N. (TEC-), a missile weapon, missile, dart, spear, shaft, javelin

IX **repellō, reppulī, repulsus, -ere** (RE + PELLŌ), to drive back, thrust back, drive away, reject, repulse, repel

X ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

XI **dēsistō, -stitī, -stitus, -ere** (DE + SISTŌ; TO STAND, STA-), to leave off, cease, give over, desist from

LIX

THE HELVETIANS DEPART.

LIX.I.



RELINQUĒBĀTUR ŪNA PER SĒQUANŌS VIA, QUĀ
SĒQUANĪS INVĪTĪS PROPTER ANGUŖTIĀS ĪRE
NŌN POTERANT.

Relinquĕbātur^I ūna per Sēquanōs via^{II}

=there was remaining one path, ~there was left one way,
(namely,) through the Sequani [namely] through the Sequani

quā^{III}

=by which

~where

-
- I **relinquo, -liqui, -lictus, -ere** (RE + LINQUO), to leave behind, not take along, not stay with, leave, move away from, quit, abandon; To leave a thing behind; to leave remaining; to allow or permit to remain, to let remain, leave; PASS., to be left, to remain
- II **via, -ae, f. (VAG-),** a way, highway, road, path, street; A way, passage, channel, pipe, entrance
- III **ABL. OF PLACE.** THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC.
- \$429

Sēquanīs invītīs^I

=with the Sequani <being> ~if the Sequani were unwilling
unwilling

propter angustias ire^{II} nōn poterant

=on account of the narrowness, ~on account of its narrowness,
they (the Helvetii) were not able they could not pass
to pass

I.IX.II.

HIS CUM SUĀ SPONTE PERSUADĒRE NŌN POSSENT,
LĒGĀTŌS AD DUMNORĪGEM ÆDUUM MITTUNT, UT EŌ
DĒPRECĀTŌRE Ā SĒQUANĪS IMPETRĀRENT.

I **Sēquanīs invītīs**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II **eō, ivi** OR **ii, iturus, ire** (I-), to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance (against a foe)

His^I cum suā^{II} sponte^{III IV} persuādēre nōn possent^V

=when they were not able to ~as they could not of themselves
persuade these (men) (the prevail on them
Sequani) by their own free will

lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Æduum mittunt^{VI VII}

=they send ambassadors to ~they sent ambassadors to
Dumnorix the Æduan Dumnorix the Æduan

ut

=<in order> that ~in order that

eō dēprecātōre^{VIII IX}

=with that (man) <being> an ~through his intercession
intercessor

- I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **persuādēre**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- II When expressed for Clearness, and unemphatically, the Possessive Pronoun follows its Noun, as, *in civitate sua*, in his state (I.III); when used for Emphasis or Contrast, the Possessive Pronoun precedes its Noun, as, *meum officium*, my duty (IV.XXV)
- III **spons, spontis**, F., **sponte**, IN GOOD PROSE ALWAYS JOINED WITH *meā, tuā, suā* —of free will, of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously
- IV **suā sponte**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- V **cum...possent, cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549
- VI HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469
- VII **mitto, mīsi, missum, -ere**, to set in motion, to cause to go, let go, send, to send off, despatch, etc.; To send, throw, hurl, cast, launch
- VIII **eō dēprecātōre**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420
- IX **dēprecātor, -ōris**, M. (DEPRECOR), an averter, intercessor

ā Sēquanīs impetrārent^{I II}

=they might achieve (their ~to obtain their request from the request) from the Sequani Sequani

I.IX.III.

DUMNORĪX GRĀTIĀ ET LARGĪTIŌNE APUD SĒQUANŌS PLŪRIMŪM POTERAT ET HELVĒTIĪS ERAT AMĪCŪS, QUOD EX EĀ CĪVITĀTE ORGETORĪGIS FĪLIAM ĪN MĀTRIMŌNIUM DŪXERAT ET, CŪPIDITĀTE RĒGNĪ ADDŪCTUS, NOVĪS RĒBŪS STUDEBAT ET QUAM PLŪRIMĀS CĪVITĀTĒS SUŌ BENEFICIŌ HABĒRE OBSTRICĀS VOLĒBAT.

Dumnorīx grātiā^{III} et largītiōne^{IV V} apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat

=Dumnorix, because of (his) ~Dumnorix, by his friendship favor and because of (his) giving and generousoty, had great freely among the Sequani, was influence among the Sequani very able

et Helvētiīs^{VI} erat amīcus

=and he was a friend to the ~and was friendly to the Helvetii Helveti

I **impetrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (IN + PATRO; PAT-), to gain one's end, achieve, bring to pass, effect, get, obtain, procure

II **ut...impetrārent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

III **grātia, -æ**, F. (GRATUS), favor, esteem, regard, liking, love, friendship, partiality

IV **grātiā et largītiōne**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

V **largitiō, -ōnis**, F. (LARGIOR), a giving freely, granting, bestowing, dispensing, generosity, largess

quod ex eā cīvitātē^I Orgetorīgis filiā^{II} in mātirimōnium dūxerat^{III}
 =because out from that state he ~because out of that state he had
 had led the daughter of married the daughter of
 Orgetorix into matrimony Orgetorix

et cupiditatē^{IV} rēgnī^V adductus novīs rēbus^{VI VII} studēbat
 =and <having been> led by ~and, incited by lust of
 desire of reign, he was eager for sovereignty, was devoted to
 new things making a revolution

VI DAT. WITH ADJ. **amicus**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS; AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS; IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFINIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS; PAR, DISPAR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IUCUNDUS, GRATUS; NOTUS, IGNOTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

I **ex eā cīvitātē**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

II **fīlia, -æ, f. (FE-), a daughter**

III **quod...dūxerat, quod** CLAUSE. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

VI **rēs, rei, f. (RA-), a thing, object, matter, affair, business, event, fact, circumstance, occurrence, deed, condition, case; thus, res + novus, as, revolution; Effects, substance, property, possessions**

VII **novīs rēbus**, DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **studēbat**. §367

et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō^I ^{II} habēre obstrictās^{III} volēbat

=and he was wishing to have as many states as possible bound (to him) by his own beneficence ~and wished to have as many states as possible obliged to him by his kindness toward them

I.IX.IV.

ITAQUE REM SUSCIPIT ET Ā SĒQUANĪS IMPETRAT UT PER FĪNĒS SUŌS HELVĒTIŌS ĪRE PATIANTŪR, OBSIDĒSQUE UTĪ ĪNTER SĒSĒ DENT PERFICIT: SĒQUANĪ, NĒ ITĪNERE HELVĒTIŌS PROHIBEANT; HELVĒTIĪ, UT SĪNE MALEFICIŌ ET ĪNĪŪRIĀ TRĀNSEANT.

Itaque^{IV} rem suscipit

=he, therefore, undertakes the affair ~he, therefore, undertook the affair

et ā Sēquanīs impetrat

=and he obtains from the Sequani ~and procures upon the Sequani

I **suō beneficiō**, ABL. OF MEANS, §409

II **beneficium**, -ī, N. (BENE + FAC-), a favor, benefit, service, kindness

III **obstringo**, -strinxi, -strictum (OB + STRINGO), To bind, bind up, close up by binding; PPP. **obstrictus**, -a, -us, bound, obliged

IV **ita**, ADV. (I-), In gen., referring to what precedes, in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said; Referring to what follows, thus, in the following manner, as follows, in this way; Of a natural consequence or inference, so, thus, accordingly, under these circumstances, in this manner, therefore; Prægn., of kind or quality, so, such, of this nature, of this kind

ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire^I patiantur^{II III}

=that they bear the Helvetii to go through their own territories ~to allow the Helvetii to march through their territories

obsidēsque^{IV V} utī inter sēsē dent^{VI}

=and /(he) carries out/ that they should give hostages among themselves ~and /(he) arranges/ that they should give hostages to each other

perficit

=(he) carries out ~he arranges

Sēquani

=the Sequani (give hostages) ~the Sequani (gave hostages)

nē itinere^{VII} Helvētiōs prohibeant^{VIII}

=(he arranges) <in order> that they may not prohibit the Helvetii from (their) march ~so that they may not obstruct the Helvetii in their march

Helvētīi [obsidēs dant]

=the Helvetii [give hostages] ~the Helvetii (gave hostages)

I **eō, -ivī or -iī, itūrus, -ire** (I-), to go, walk, ride, sail, fly, move, pass; To go, march, move, advance (against a foe)

II **ut...patiantur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

III **patior, passus, -i**, DEP., to bear, support, undergo, suffer, endure; To suffer, endure, bear, allow, permit, let

IV These were persons of prominence given by one state to another as security for fidelity. If the compact were broken, the hostages, usually children of prominent persons, would be held responsible and punished

V **obses, obsidis** (OB + SEDEO), a hostage

VI **utī...dent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. §563

VII ABL. OF SEPAR. **VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX).** §401

VIII **nē...prohibeant**, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant^{I II}

=<in order> that they may cross ~to pass without mischief and
over without misdeeds and outrage
injury

I **ut...trānseant**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

II **trānseō, -iī, -īvi, -itus, -ire** (TRĀNS + EŌ), to go over, go across, cross
over, pass over, pass by, pass

I.X

CÆSAR LEARNS OF THEIR PLANS.

I.X.I.



CÆSARĪ RENŪNTIĀTUR HELVĒTIĪS ESSE IN ANIMŌ PER AGRUM SĒQUANŌRUM ET ÆDUŌRUM ITER IN SANTONUM FĪNĒS FACERE, QUI NŌN LONGĒ Ā TOLŌSĀTIUM FĪNIBŪS ABSUNT, QUÆ CĪVITĀS EST IN PRŌVĪNCIĀ.

Cæsarī renūntiātur^I II

=it is being reported back to ~it is again told Cæsar
Cæsar

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE, THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

II **renūntiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (RE + NŪNTIŌ), to bring back word, carry tidings back, report, give notice, declare, announce

Helvétii^I esse^{II III} in animō

=that it was to the Helvetians in mind ~that the Helvetii had in mind

per agrum Sēquanōrum et Æduōrum iter in Santonum^{IV} finēs facere^V

=to make a journey through the land of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the territories of the Santones ~to march through the country of the Sequani and the Ædui into the territories of the Santones

quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus^{VI} absunt

=(these territories) which are not by far away from the boundaries of the Tolosates ~which are not far distant from those boundaries of the Tolosates

I DAT. OF POSS. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. NOTE. THE GENITIVE OR A POSSESSIVE WITH ESSE EMPHASIZES THE POSSESSOR; THE DATIVE, THE FACT OF POSSESSION; AS,—LIBER EST MEUS, THE BOOK IS MINE (AND NO ONE'S ELSE); EST MIHI LIBER, I HAVE A BOOK (AMONG OTHER THINGS). §373

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **renūtiātur**. THE ESSENTIAL CHARACTER OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS, THAT THE LANGUAGE OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER IS COMPRESSED INTO A KIND OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE, THE VERB OF THE MAIN CLAUSE BECOMING INFINITIVE, WHILE MODIFYING CLAUSES, AS WELL AS ALL HORTATORY FORMS OF SPEECH, TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PERSON OF THE VERB NECESSARILY CONFORMS TO THE NEW RELATION OF PERSONS. §577

III **renūtiātur...esse**, INF. IN INDIR DISC. THE PRESENT, THE PERFECT, OR THE FUTURE INFINITIVE IS USED IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ACCORDING AS THE TIME INDICATED IS PRESENT, PAST, OR FUTURE WITH REFERENCE TO THE VERB OF SAYING ETC. BY WHICH THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE IS INTRODUCED, SUCH AS: **ERROR: REFERENCE SOURCE NOT FOUND SEE CHART: §584**

IV **Santonēs, -um** (OR PL., **Santonī, ōrum**), M., a Gallic people on the seacoast north of the Garumna (Garonne)

V INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ESSE. §577

VI **ā Tolōsātium finibus**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

quæ cīvitas est in prōvinciā

=which is a state in the province

~which (viz. Tolosa, Toulouse) is
a state in the Province

I.X.II.

ID SĪ FIERET, ĪNTELLEGĒBAT MAGNŌ CŪM PERĪCULŌ
PRŌVĪNCIÆ FUTŪRUM UT HOMĪNĒS BELLICŌSŌS, POPŪLĪ
RŌMĀNĪ ĪNIMĪCŌS, LOCĪS PATENTIBUS MAXIMĒQUE
FRŪMENTĀRIIS FĪNITIMŌS HABĒRET.

Id^I sī fieret^{II}

=if it should be done

~if this took place

intellegebāt^{III}

=he (Cæsar) was understanding

~he saw

I NOM. SG. N. SUBST.; refers to the Helvetii settling among the Santones;
SUBJ. OF **fieret**

II PASS. OF **facio**; **sī fieret**, FUT. COND. IN INDIRECT DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III **intellegō, -ere -ēxi, -ēctus** (INTER + LEGO; LEG-), to come to know, see into, perceive, understand, discern, comprehend, gather

magnō cum periculōⁱ prōvinciāⁱⁱ futūrum [esse]ⁱⁱⁱ

=that (it) would be (attended) ~that it would be attended with
with great danger to the great danger to the Province
province

ut hominēs bellicōsōs^{iv}, populī Rōmānī inimicōs

=that /[the province] would ~that /to have/ warlike men,
have/ warlike men, enemies of enemies of the Roman people
the Roman people

I ***magnō cum periculō***, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

II OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

III INDIR. STATEMENT DEPENDENT ON ***intellegēbat***. §577

IV ***bellicōsus, -a, -um***, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (BELLICUS; BELLUM), *warlike, martial, valorous, given to fighting*

[prōvincia] locīs patentibus^I maximēque frūmentāriis^{II} finitimōs habēret^{III}

=[the province] would have // ~to have // bordering upon bordering upon laid open places accessible places and greatly (i.e. vulnerable to attack) and abounding in corn greatly (abounding) with corn

I.X.III.

OB EAS CAUSAS EI MŪNITIŌNĪ QUAM FĒCERAT T. LABIĒNUM LĒGĀTUM PRÆFICIT; IPSE IN ITALIAM MAGNĪS ITĪNERIBUS CONTĒNDIT, DUASQUE IBI LEGIŌNĒS CŌNSCRĪBIT, ET TRĒS QUÆ CIRCUM AQUILEIAM HIEMĀBANT EX HĪBERNĪS ĒDŪCIT ET, QUĀ PROXIMUM ITER IN ŪLTERIŌREM GALLIAM PER ALPĒS ERAT, CUM EĪS QUINQUE LEGIŌNIBUS IRE CONTĒNDIT.

-
- I **pateō, -uī, —, -ēre (PAT-),** to stand open, lie open, be open; To lie open, be exposed
- II **locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriis,** DAT. WITH ADJ. **finitimōs.** THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS, AMICUS, INIMICUS, INFESTUS, INVISUS, MOLESTUS, IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS, UTILIS, INUTILIS, AFFĪNIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS, PĀR, DISPĀR, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS, IUCUNDUS, GRĀTUS, NŌTUS, IGNŌTUS, AND OTHERS. §384
- III **ut...habēret,** CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

Ob^I eās causās eī mūnitiōnī^{II}

=on account of those reasons // ~for these reasons // to the
(to be a commander) for this command of the fortification
fortification

quam fēcerat

=which he had made

~which he had made

T[itum]^{III} Labiēnum^{IV} lēgātum præficit^V

=he appointed T[itus] Labienus, ~he appointed Titus Labienus,
(his) lieutenant his lieutenant

ipse in Ītaliā^{VI} magnīs itineribus^{VII} contendit

=(and) he himself hastens by ~he himself pressed on to Italy
great marches into Italy by forced marches

duāsque ibī^{VIII} legiōnēs cōscribit^{IX}

=and there he levies two legions ~and there levied two legions

I **ob**, PRÆP., WITH ACC. WITH VERBS OF MOTION, *towards, to*; TRANSF., to indicate the object or cause, *on account of, for, because of, by reason of, etc*

II DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præfēcit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRÆ., PRŌ., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM., ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRÆ., PRŌ., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM., ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III **Titus, -ī**, M., a Roman first name; ABB., T

IV **Labiēnus, -ī**, M., *Titus Labienus*, the mpst prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic War; in the Civil War he went over to the side of Pompey, but displayed small abilities as commander, and fell at the battle of Munda, 45 B.C.

V **præficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (PRÆ + FACIO), *to set over, place in authority over, place at the head, appoint to command*

VI **Italia, -ae**, F., *Italy*

VII ABL. OF MANNER, §412

VIII **ibī**, ADV. (I-), *in space, in that place, there*

IX **cōscribō, -ipsī, -iptus, -ere** (CŌN + SCRIBŌ), Lit., *to write together, i.e., To write together in a roll or list, to enroll*; very freq. as a milit. t. t., of the levying of troops

et trēs [legiōnēs]

=and the third [legion]

~three

quæ circum^I Aquileiam^{II} hiemābant^{III}

=(those men) (the third legion) ~which were wintering near
which were wintering around Aquileia
Aquileia

ex hibernīs^{IV} v^V ēdūcit^{VI}

=he leads out from (their)
winter-quarters

~and led out from winter-
quarters

et

=and

~and

quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem^{VII} Galliam per Alpēs^{VIII} erat

=in which the closest route into ~where the nearest route across
further Gaul was through the the Alps into Further Gaul
Alps

I **circum**, (ACC. OF CIRCUS), ADV. AND PRÆP., ADV., *around, round about, all around*; PRÆP. WITH ACC. (SOMETIMES FOLLOWING ITS CASE), *around, about, all around*; *In the neighborhood of, around, about, at, near by*

II **Aquileia, -ae**, M., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea

III **hiemō, -āvī, -ātūrus, -āre** (HIEMS), *to winter, pass the winter, keep winter-quarters*

IV **hibernus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (HIEMS), *of winter, wintry, winter-; PL. N. AS SUBST., winter-quarters*

V **ex hibernīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VI **ēdūcō, dūxī, ductus, -ere** (EX + DŪCŌ), *to lead forth, draw out, bring off, take away*

VII **ūterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP. *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*

VIII **Alpēs, -ium**, F. PL., *Alps*, general term for the mountains separating Cisalpine Gaul from Transalpine Gaul and Germany

cum eīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit

=he hastens to go with those five legions ~with these five legions marches rapidly

I.X.IV.

IBI CEUTRONĒS ET GRAIOCELĪ ET CATURĪGĒS, LOCĪS
SUPERIŌRIBUS OCCUPĀTIS, ITĪNERE EXERCITUM
PROHIBĒRE CŌNANTUR.

Ibi Ceutronēs^I et Graiocelī^{II} et Caturīgēs^{III}

=there the Centrones, and the Graioceli, and the Caturiges ~there the Centrones and the Graioceli and the Caturiges

locīs superiōribus^{IV} occupātis^{V VI}

=with the higher land <having been> seized ~upon taking possession of the higher parts

I **Ceutronēs, um**, M. PL., A Belgic people, subject to the Nervians; A people in the eastern part of the province

II **Graiocelī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic people in the Alps

III **Caturīgēs, -um**, M. PL., a Gallic people in the eastern part of the province

IV **superus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (SUPER), POSIT, *that is above, upper, higher*; COMP. *superior*; Of place, *higher, upper*

V **locīs superiōribus occupātis**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

VI **occupō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OB + CAP-), *to take into possession, seize, occupy, master, win*

itinere^I *exercitum prohibere cōnantur*

=try to prohibit the troop in (their) journey ~attempt to obstruct the army in their march

I.X.V.

COMPLŪRIBUS EĪS PRĒLIĪS PŪLSĪS AB OCELŌ, QUOD EST CITERIŌRIS PRŌVĪNCIÆ EXTRĒMUM, ĪN FĪNĒS VOCONTIŌRŪM ULTERIŌRIS PRŌVĪNCIÆ DIĒ SEPTIMŌ PERVENIT; ĪNDE ĪN ALLOBROGŪM FĪNĒS, AB ALLOBROGIBUS ĪN SEGUSIĀVŌS EXERCITUM DŪCIT.

Complūeribus^{II} hīs^{III} praeliis^{IV} pulsīs^V VI

=with these several battles ~after having routed these in <having been> repulsed several battles

ab Ocelō^{VII} VIII

=from Ocelum ~from Ocelum

quod est [oppidum] citeriōris^{IX} prōvinciæ extrēmum

=which is the outermost (i.e. the most westerly) [town] of this side of the province ~which is the most furthest town of the Hither Province

I ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

II **complūrēs, -ium**, ADJ. (COM + PLŪRĒS), more than one, not a few, several, a number, many

III **his praeliis**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **proelium, -i, n**, a battle, combat

V **complūribus...pulsīs**, ABL. ABS. §419

VI **pellō, pepulī, pulsus, -ere** (PAL-), to beat, strike, knock, push, drive, hurl, impel, propel

VII **ab Ocelō**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §409

VIII **Ocelum, -i**, a town of the Graioceli in the Alps, west of modern Turin

IX **cīter, -tra, -trum**, ADJ., on this side

in finēs Vocontiōrum^I ulteriōris^{II} prōvinciæ^{III} diē septimō^{IV}
pervenit^V

=he arrives in the territories of the further side of the province of the Vocontii on the seventh day ~he arrived in the territories of the Vocontii in the Further Province on the seventh day

inde^{VI} in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus^{VII} in Segusiāvōs^{VIII}
exercitum dūcit

=then he (Cæsar) leads (his) army into the territories of the Allobroges, (and) from the Allobroges to the Segusiani ~thence he leads his army into the country of the Allobroges, and from the Allobroges to the Segusiani

I.X.VI.

HĪ SUNT EXTRĀ PRŌVĪNCIAM TRĀNS RHODĀNUM PRĪMĪ.

-
- I **Vocontiī, ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic people in the province
- II **ūlterior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP., *farther, on the farther side, that is beyond, more remote*
- III **ulteriōris prōvinciæ** LIMITS **Vocantiōrum**
- IV **diē septimō**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- V **pervenio, -vēnī, -ventus, -ire** (PER + VENIO), *to come up, arrive*
- VI **inde**, ADV. (I + IM-), Of place, *from that place, thence*; Of time, *from that time, thenceforward, since; After that, thereafter, thereupon, then*
- VII **ab Allobrogibus**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426
- VIII **Segusiāvī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic people, subject to the Æduans

Hī sunt extrā^I prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum [populī] prīmī^{II}

=these [people] are the first ~these people were the first
beyond the province (and) beyond the Province on the
across the Rhone opposite side of the Rhone

I **extrā**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (EXTER), ADV., *on the outside, without*; PRÆP., WITH ACC., *outside of, without, beyond*

II **primus**, -a, -um, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; First in rank or station, *chief, principal, most excellent, eminent, distinguished, noble*; **primum**, *at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning*—IN ENUMERATIONS, FOLLOWING. *deinde, tum*

LXI

THE ÆDUANS, AMBARRI, ET ALLOBROGES SEEK
AID.

I.XI.I.



ELVĒTĪ IAM PER ANGSTIĀS ET FĪNĒS
SĒQUANŌRŪM SUĀS CŌPIĀS TRĀDŪXERANT,
ET ĪN ÆDUŌRŪM FĪNĒS PERVĒNERANT
EŌRŪMQŪE AGRŌS POPULĀBANTUR.

Helvētī iam^I per angustīas et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās
trādūxerant^{II}

=the Helvetii had now led their
forces through the narrow
(defile) and (through) the
territories of the Sequani

~the Helvetii had by this time led
their forces through the narrow
defile and the territories of the
Sequani

et in Æduōrum finēs pervēnerant

=and had came through in the
territories of the Ædui

~and had arrived at the
territories of the Ædui

I **iam**, ADV. (IA-), As opp. to past or future, at this time, now, just now, at present; Like English now, by this time, already

II **trādūco**, -xi, -ctum, -ere (TRANS + DUCO), to lead, bring, or conduct across; to lead, bring, or carry over any thing; In partic. To lead or convey across, to transport over a stream or bridge

eōrumque agrōs populābantur^I

=and they were laying waste the lands of those (men) ~and were ravaging their lands

I.XI.II.

ÆDUĪ, CUM SĒ SUAQVE AB EĪS DĒFENDERE NŌN POSSENT, LĒGĀTŌS AD CÆSAREM MITTUNT ROGĀTUM AUXILIUM: ITA SĒ OMNĪ TEMPORE DĒ POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ MERITŌS ESSE UT PÆNE ĪN CŌNSPECTŪ EXERCITUS NOSTRĪ AGRĪ VĀSTĀRĪ, LĪBERĪ EORUM ĪN SERVITŪTEM ABDŪCĪ, OPPIDA EXPUGNĀRĪ NŌN DĒBUERĪNT.

"ITA [NOS] ... MERITI SUMUS, UT PÆNE ĪN CŌNSPECTU EXERCITUS VOSTRI, ... LIBERI NOSTRI ... NŌN DEBUERĪNT."

Ædui

=the Ædui

~the Ædui

cum sē suaque ab eīs^{II} dēfendere^{III} nōn possent^{IV}

=as they could not defend themselves and their own (thing) from those men ~as they could not defend themselves and their possessions against them

lēgātōs ad Cæsarem mittunt

=send ambassadors to Cæsar

~sent ambassadors to Cæsar

I **populō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SCAL-), to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage, spoil

II **ab eis**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

III **dēfendō, -dī, -sus, -ere** (DĒ + FENDŌ), to ward off, repel, avert, keep off; To defend, guard, protect, cover

IV **cum...possent**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

rogātum^V auxilium^{VI}

=to ask for assistance

~to ask assistance

=ita^{III} sē omnī tempore^{IV} dē^V populō Rōmānō meritōs^{VI} esse^{VII}
[dixerunt]

=[(those men) said] that they
had in all times to such a degree
deserved of the Roman people

~[they said] that they had at all
times so well deserved of the
Roman people

ut pæne^{VIII} in cōspectū^{IX} exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī^X

=that almost in sight of our
army, (their) fields were made
empty

~that almost before the eyes of
our army, their fields ought not
to have been laid waste

V ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

VI **auxilium, -ī**, N. (AVC-), *help, aid, assistance, support, succor*

III **ita**, ADV. (I-), In gen., referring to what precedes, *in this manner, in this wise, in such a way, so, thus, accordingly, as has been said*; To denote degree, *so, to such a degree, so very, so much*

IV **omnī tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

V **dē**, PRÆP., WITH ABL., Of separation, *in space, from, away from, down from, out of*; Of duration, *De nocte, de vigilia*, etc., to designate an act which begins or takes its origin from the night time, Eng. *during* or *in the course of the night, at night, by night*, etc.—“*Cæsar de tertia vigilia e castris profectus*,” *in the third night-watch*; Of origin or source, *of, from, from among, out of, proceeding from, derived from*; To indicate the producing cause or reason, *for, on account of, because of*

VI **mereor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP. (SMAR-), *to deserve, merit, be entitled to*

VII **sē...esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **rogātum**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VIII **pæne**, ADV., *nearly, almost, as I may say*

IX **cōspectus, -ūs**, M. (COM- + SPEC-), *a seeing, look, sight, view, range of sight, power of vision*—“*pæne in conspectu exercitūs nostri*,” *before the eyes*

X **vāstō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (VASTUS), *to make empty, deprive of occupants, desert, vacate, void, empty, lay waste, desolate, ravage, devastate, destroy*

liberī^I eorum in servitūtem^{II} abducī^{III}

=that the children of those (men) ~their children carried off into
were led away into slavery slavery

oppida expugnārī^{IV} nōn dēbuerint^{V VI}

=(and) that their towns ought ~their towns stormed
not to have been taken by
assault

I.XI.III.

EÖDEM TEMPORE AEDUĪ AMBARRĪ, NECESSĀRĪ ET
CŌNSANGUĪNEĪ HÆDUÖRUM, CÆSAREM CERTIÖREM
FACIUNT SĒSĒ DĒPOPULĀTĪS AGRĪS NŌN FACILE AB
OPPIDĪS VIM HOSTIUM PROHIBĒRE.

-
- I **liberī, -erōrum** (LIBER), *free persons; hence, the children of a family, children*
- II **servitūs, -ūtis**, F. (SERVUS), *the condition of a servant, slavery, serfdom, service, servitude*
- III **abducō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (AB-DŪCŌ), *to lead away, take away, carry off, remove, lead aside*
- IV **expugnō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (EX + PŪGNŌ), *to take by assault, storm, capture, reduce, subdue*
- V **ut...nōn dēbuerint**, CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537
- VI **dēbeo, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (DE + HABEO), *to withhold, keep back; WITH INF., to be bound, in duty bound to do something—I ought, must, should, etc., do it (in class. prose always in the sense of moral necessity)*

Eodem tempore^I Æduī Ambarri^{II}, necessariū^{III} et cōsanguineī^{IV}
Hæduōrum

=at the same time the Ambarri, ~at the same time the Ambarri,
friends and kinsmen of the Ædui friends and kinsmen of the Ædui

Cæsarem certiōrem faciunt^V

=make Cæsar more certain ~apprized Cæsar

sēsē

=that they ~that they

dēpopulātis^{VI} agrīs^{VII}

=with (their) fields <having ~now that their fields had been
been> laid waste devastated

I **eodem tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

II **Ambarri, -ōrum**, M. PL., a people east of the Arar (Saone), near its junction with the Rhone

III **necessarius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NECESSE), *unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory*; SUBST. M. and F., a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patron

IV **cōsanguineus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CŌN + SANGUINEUS), *of the same blood, related by blood, kindred, fraternal*; SUBST. M., a brother, F. a sister; PL., kindred, kinsmen

V HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

VI **dēpopulor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (DĒ + POPULOR), *to lay waste, ravage, plunder, pillage*

VII **dēpopulātis agrīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

nōn facile^I ab oppidīs^{II} vim hostium^{III} prohibēre^{IV}

=it was not easy for them to prohibit the force of the enemy from (their) towns
~it was not easy for them to ward off the violence of the enemy from their towns

I.XI.IV.

ITEM ALLOBROGĒS, QUĪ TRĀNS RHODANUM VĪCŌS POSSESSIŌNĒSQUE HABĒBANT, FUGĀ SĒ AD CÆSAREM RECIPIUNT ET DĒMŌNSTRANT SIBI PRÆTER AGRĪ SOLUM NIHIL ESSE RELIQUĪ.

Item Allobrogēs

=the Allobroges likewise ~the Allobroges likewise

quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque^V habēbant

=who are having villages and possessions across the Rhone
~who had villages and possessions on the other side of the Rhone

fugā^{VI} sē ad Cæsarem recipiunt

=took themselves back in flight towards Cæsar
~withdrew to Cæsar

I **facilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FAC-), *easy to do, easy, without difficulty*

II **ab oppidīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III **hostis, -is**, M AND F. (HAS-), *a stranger, foreigner; An enemy in arms or of one's country (opp. inimicus, a private enemy, or one who is inimically disposed).*

IV **sēsē...prohibēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **certiōrem faciunt**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **possessiō, -ōnis**, F. (SED-), TRANSF. In abstr., *a possessing, holding, possession, occupation; In concr., a thing possessed, a possession, property, esp. an estate*

VI **fuga, -æ**, F. (FVG-), *a fleeing, flight, running away*

et dēmōnstrant^I

=and they point out (to him)

~and proved to him

sibi^{II} præter agrī solum^{III} nihil esse^{IV V} reliquī^{VI}

=that to them there is nothing of
remaining except the soil of the
land

~that they had nothing
remaining, except the soil of
their land

I. XI. V.

QUIBUS RĒBUS ADDUCTUS CÆSAR NŌN EXPECTANDUM
SIBI STATUIT DUM, OMNIBUS FORTŪNĪS SOCIŌRUM
CŌNSUMPTĪS, IN SANTONŌS HELVĒTĪI PERVENĪRENT.

Quibus rēbus^{VII} adductus Cæsar

=Cæsar, <having been> induced
by these things

~Cæsar, induced by these
circumstances

I **dēmōnstrō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DE + MŌNSTRŌ), to point out, indicate, designate, show; Fig., to designate, indicate, show, prove, demonstrate, establish

II DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

III **solum, -ī**, the lowest part, bottom, ground, base, foundation, floor, pavement, site; The ground, earth, soil

IV **nihil esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dēmōnstrant**. §580

V HIST. PRES. §469

VI PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

VII **quibus rēbus**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

nōn expectandum^I [esse]^{II} sibi^{III}

=that it is not <having> to be ~that he ought not to wait
looked out for by him

statuit^{IV}

=decides ~decided

dum

=until ~until

omnibus fortūnīs^V sociōrum cōsūptīs^{VI VII}

=with all the fortunes of the ~after destroying all the
allies <having been> used up property of his allies

I **expectō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (EX + SPECTŌ), to look out for, await, wait for

II FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **statuit**. THERE ARE TWO PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS, KNOWN RESPECTIVELY AS THE FIRST (OR ACTIVE) AND THE SECOND (OR PASSIVE). THE FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION COMBINES THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE WITH THE FORMS OF SUM, AND DENOTES A FUTURE OR INTENDED ACTION. §194

III DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. THIS IS THE REGULAR WAY OF EXPRESSING THE AGENT WITH THE SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (§196). §374

IV **statuō, -ui, -ūtus, -ere** (STATUS), to cause to stand, set up, set, station, fix upright, erect, plant; To decide, determine, with reference to a result, to settle, fix, bring about, choose, make a decision; WITH cognoscere, to examine (officially) and decide; WITH INDEF. OBJ., GENERALLY WITH IN AND ACC.—*aliquid gravius in aliquem*, to proceed severely against

V **fortūna, -æ**, F. (FORS), chance, hap, luck, fate, fortune

VI **cōsūmō, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, -ere** (CŌN + SŪMO), to use up, eat, devour; Fig., to consume, devour, waste, squander, annihilate, destroy

VII **omnibus fortūnīs...cōsūptīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

in Santonōs Helvētīi pervenīrent^I

=the Helvetii // should come
through into the Santones

~the Helvetii // should arrive
among the Santones

I ***dum...pervenīrent***, TEMPORAL CLAUSE IMPLYING INTENTION OR EXPECTANCY. DUM
AND QUOAD, UNTIL, TAKE THE PRESENT OR IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN TEMPORAL CLAUSES
IMPLYING INTENTION OR EXPECTANCY. §553

I.XII



CAESAR CUTS TO PIECES ONE DIVISION



I.XII.I



LŪMĒN EST ARAR, QUOD PER FĪNĒS
ÆDUŌRŪM ET SĒQUANŌRŪM ĪN RHODANUM
ĪNFLUIT, ĪNCRĒDIBILĪ LĒNITĀTE, ITA UT
OCULĪS ĪN UTRAM PARTEM FLUAT ĪUDICĀRĪ
NŌN POSSIT.

Flūmen est Arar^I

=there is a river (called) the Arar ~there is a river [called] the Saone

I **Arar, -aris**, ACC. **-im**, M., presently known as the Saone; pronounced 'Sōn.' It rises the Vosges (vōzh) Mts., and flows southward into the Rhone

quod per finēs Æduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit^I,
incrēdibilī^{II} lēnitātē^{III} IV ita

=which flows in through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone, with such incredible gentleness ~which flows through the territories of the Ædui and Sequani into the Rhone with such incredible gentleness

ut oculis^V VI

=that by the eyes ~by the eye

in utram^{VII} partem fluat^{VIII}

=in which part it flows ~in which direction it flows

iūdicārī^{IX} nōn possit^X

=it is not able to be judged ~it can not be determined

I **inflūō, -uxī, -uxus, -ere** (IN + FLUŌ; FLV-), to flow in, run in

II **incrēdibilis, -e**, ADJ. (IN + CRĒDIBILIS), not to be believed, incredible, beyond belief, extraordinary, unparalleled

III **incrēdibilī lēnitātē**, ABLATIVE OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

IV **lēnitās, -ātis**, F. (LENIS), softness, smoothness, gentleness, mildness

V **ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409**

VI **oculus, -ī**, M. (AC-), an eye

VII **uter, utra, utrum**, PRON. (CA-), INTERROGATIVE, which of two, which, whether (SEE UTER, -TRIUS, WHICH (OF TWO) §113)

VIII **in utram...fluat**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IX **iūdicō, -āvi, -ātum, -ere** (IUDEX), to examine judicially, to judge, be a judge, pass judgment, decide; TRANSF. beyond the legal sphere. To judge, judge of a thing; To determine, resolve, conclude

X **ita ut...nōn possit**, CLAUSE OF RESULT. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. §537

I.XII.II.

ID HELVĒTIŪ RATIBUS AC LINTRIBUS IŪNCTIS
TRĀNSĪBANT.

Id Helvētiū ratibus^{I II} ac lintribus^{III} iūnctis^{IV} trānsībant

=*the Helvetii were crossing it* ~*this the Helvetii were crossing*
(*the Arar*) *by rafts and boats* *by rafts and boats* *joined*
<*having been*> *joined together* *together*

I.XII.III.

VBI PER EXPLŌRĀTŌRĒS CÆSAR CERTIOR FACTUS EST
TRĒS IAM PARTĒS CŌPIĀRUM HELVĒTIŌS ID FLŪMEN
TRĀDŪXISSE, QUĀRTAM FERĒ PARTEM CITRĀ FLŪMEN
ARARIM RELIQUAM ESSE, DĒ TERTIĀ VIGILIĀ CŪM
LEGIŌNIBUS TRIBUS Ē CASTRĪS PROPECTUS AD EAM
PARTEM PERVĒNIT, QUÆ NŌNDUM FLŪMEN TRĀNSIERAT.

Vbi per explōrātōrēs^V Cæsar certior factus est

=*when Cæsar was made more* ~*when Cæsar was informed by*
certain through scouts *spies*

trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse^{VI}

=*that the Helvetii had already* ~*that the Helvetii had already*
led three parts of (their) forces *conveyed three divisions of their*
across that river *forces across that river*

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **ratis, -is**, F. (AR-), A vessel made of logs fastened together, a *raft*

III **linter, -tris**, F., a *trough, vat, tub*; TRANSF., a *boat, skiff, wherry*

IV **lintribus iūnctis**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **explōrātor, -ōris**, M. (EXPLORO), an *explorer, spy, scout*

VI **partēs...trādūxisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **certior factus est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam^I esse^{II}

=(but) that the fourth part was just left over on this side of the Arar
~but that the fourth division was, for the most part, remaining on this side of the Saone

dē^{III} tertiā vigiliā^{IV} v cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs^{VI} VII profectus ad eam partem pervēnit

=(he) <having> set forward from the camp with three legions from the third watch, came to that part
~he set out from the camp with three legions during the third watch, and came up with that division

quæ nōndum flūmen trānsierat

=(the division) which had not yet crossed the river
~which had not yet crossed the river

I **reliquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (RE- + LIC-), left, left over, remaining

II **partem...esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **dē**, PRÆP., WITH ABL., Of separation, in space, from, away from, down from, out of; Of duration, during, in the course of, at, by

IV **dē tertiā vigiliā**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

V **vigilia, -æ**, F. (VIGIL), a watching, wakefulness, sleeplessness, lying awake; In partic. Lit., a keeping awake for the security of a place, esp. of a city or camp, a watching, watch, guard; A watch, i.e. the time of keeping watch by night, among the Romans a fourth part of the night (I.XII.III), (I.XL.XIV); The watch, i. e. those standing on guard, watchmen, sentinels (I.XXI.III)

VI **ē castrīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VII **castrum, -i**, N. (KINDRED WITH CASA), IN SG., any fortified place, a castle, fort, fortress; IN PL., **castra, -ōrum**, N. Lit., several soldiers' tents situated together; hence, a military camp, an encampment; among the Romans a square (quadrata)

I.XII.IV.

EŌS IMPEDĪTŌS ET ĪNOPĪNANTĒS ADGRESSUS MAGNAM
PARTEM EŌRŪM CONCĪDIT: RELIQUĪ SĒSĒ FUGÆ
MANDĀRUNT ATQUE ĪN PROXIMĀS SILVĀS ABDIDĒRUNT.

Eōs impedītōs^I et inopīnantēs^{II} adgressus^{III} magnam partem
eōrum concīdit^{IV}

=(he) <having> assaulted those ~attacking them hindered with
hampered and unaware men, baggage, and not expecting him,
cut to pieces a great part of he cut to pieces a great part of
those (men) them

reliquī sēsē fugæ^V mandā[vē]runt^{VI}

=the remaining men delivered ~the rest betook themselves to
themselves over to flight flight

atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt^{VII}

=and they put away into the ~and concealed themselves in
nearest forests the nearest woods

I **impediō, -īvī, -ītus, -īre** (PED-), to entangle, ensnare, shackle, hamper, hinder, hold fast; To be in the way, hinder, detain, obstruct, check, prevent, impede

II **WIKT, inopināns, inopinantis**, M. F. N., unaware; unexpected

III **aggredior, aggressus, -ī**, DEP., to go against, fall upon, attack, assault

IV **concīdo, -cīdi, -cīsum, -ere** (CON + CĪDO), to cut up, cut through, cut away, cut to pieces, to bring to ruin, destroy, etc; To cut to pieces in war, to cut down, destroy, kill

V INDIR. OBJ. WITH SPECIAL V. **mandā[vē]runt**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE, §367

VI **mandō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (MANUS + DO), to put in hand, deliver over, commit, consign, intrust, confide, commission—"fugæ sese," betake himself to flight

VII **abdō, -idi, -itus, -ere** (AB + DŌ), to put away, remove, set aside; Prægn., to hide, conceal, put out of sight, keep secret

I.XII.V.

IS PĀGUS APPELLĀBĀTUR TIGURĪNUS: NAM OMNIS
CĪVITĀS HELVĒTIA IN QUATTUOR PĀGŌS DĪVĪSA EST.

Is pāgus^I appellābātur Tigurīnus^{II}

=that canton (which was cut down) was called the Tigurine ~that district was called the Tigurine

nam^{III} omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est

=for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons ~for the whole Helvetian state is divided into four cantons

I.XII.VI.

HIC PĀGUS ŪNUS, CUM DOMŌ EXĪSSET, PATRUM
NOSTRŌRUM MEMORIĀ, L. CASSIUM CŌNSULEM
ĪNTERFĒCERAT ET EIUS EXERCITUM SUB IUGUM MĪSERAT.

Hic pāgus ūnus

=this single canton ~this single canton

cum domō^{IV} exīisset^V

=when it went forth from (its) home ~having withdrawn their native country

I **pāgus, -ī, m. (PAC-), a district, canton, hundred, province, region**

II **Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., Tigurian. As a noun, Tigurīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Tigurians, one of the four divisions of the Helvetians**

III **nam, conj., To introduce a confirmation or explanation, for (always in prose beginning the sentence)—Introducing an explanation or fuller statement of something already said**

IV **ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427**

V **cum...exīisset, cum clause, A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546**

patrum nostrōrum memoriā^I, L[ūcius] Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat^{II}

=*in the memory of our fathers, /that single canton/ had put out of the way L[ūcius] Cassius, the consul* ~*within the recollection of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius the consul*

et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat

=*and had sent the army of him under the yoke* ~*and had made his army pass under the yoke*

I. XII. VII.

ITA SĪVE CĀSŪ SĪVE CŌNSILIŌ DEŌRŪM IMMORTĀLIUM, QUÆ PARS CĪVITĀTIS HELVĒTIÆ ĪNSIGNEM CALAMITĀTEM POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ ĪNTULERAT, EA PRĪNCEPS PCĒNĀS PERSOLVIT.

Ita sīve^{III} cāsū^{IV} sīve cōnsiliō deōrum^V immortalium

=*thus, be it by chance, or be it by the council of the immortal gods* ~*thus, whether by chance, or by the intention of the immortal gods*

I **patrum nostrōrum memoriā**, ABL. OF TIME, §423

II **interficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (INTER + FACIO), *to put out of the way, destroy, bring to naught; To kill, slay, murder*

III **sīve**, CONJ. (SI + VE), *or if; In the formula, sive...sive, be it that...or that, if...or if, whether...or*

IV **cāsū...cōnsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS, §409

V **deus, -ī**, M. (DIV-), *a god, deity*

quæ pars cīvitātis Helvētiæ insignem^I calamitatem^{II} populō Rōmānō^{III} intulerat

=the part of the Helvetian state which had borne a remarkable calamity to the Roman people ~that part of the Helvetian state which had brought a extraordinary calamity upon the Roman people

ea prīnceps pœnās persolvit^{IV}

=he was the first to pay the penalty ~was the first to pay the penalty

I. XII. VIII.

QUĀ IN RĒ CÆSAR NŌN SŌLUM PŪBLICĀS, SED ETIAM PRĪVĀTĀS ĪNIŪRIĀS ULTUS EST, QUOD EIUS SOCERĪ L. PĪSŌNIS AVUM, L. PĪSŌNEM LĒGĀTUM, TIGURĪNĪ EŌDEM PRĒLIŌ QUŌ CASSIUM ĪNTERFĒCERĀNT.

I **insignis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (IN + SIGNUM), distinguished by a mark, remarkable, noted, eminent, distinguished, prominent, extraordinary; militaria, ornaments, probably on the helmets of the officers

II **calamitās, -ātis**, F. (SCAL-), loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster; Esp., the misfortunes of war, disaster, overthrow, defeat

III **populō Rōmānō**, INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP. V. **intulerat**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

IV **persolvō, -ere, -solvi, -solūtus** (PER + SOLVO), to unravel, solve, explain; To pay, give, show, render, suffer

Quā^I in rē Cæsar nōn solum publicās^{II}, sed^{III} etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus^{IV} est^V

=(and) in which thing Cæsar ~and in this Cæsar took
avenged (himself) on not only vengeance on not only the public
the public, but also (his own) but also his own personal
personal injuries wrongs

quod eius socerī^{VI} L[ūciū] Pīsōnis avum^{VII}, L[ūcium] Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem prœliō^{VIII}

=because the Tigurini /had slain/ ~because the Tigurini /had slain/
L[ucius] Piso the lieutenant (of Lucius Piso the lieutenant (of
Cassius), the grandfather of Cassius), the grandfather of
L[ucius] Calpurnius Piso, the Lucius Calpurnius Piso, his
father-in-law of him, in the same (Cæsar's) father-in-law, in the
battle same battle

- I A Relative is often used at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *Qua de causa, And for this reason* (I.I); *Qui...prœlium committunt* (Historical Present), *They* (or *And they*)...joined battle (I.XV)
- II **pūblicus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CONTR. FROM POPULICUS, FROM POPULUS), *of or belonging to the people, State, or community; that is done for the sake or at the expense of the State; public, common*; ADV., **publicē**, *On account, at the cost, in behalf, or in charge of the State*
- III **sed**, CONJ., After a negative clause and introducing a direct opposition, *but, on the contrary, but also, but even, but in fact*; Introducing a climax, usu. in the formula, *non modo or non solum . . . sed* (or *sed etiam*), *not only, not merely . . . but, but also, but even, but indeed*
- IV PPP. OF V. **ulciscor**
- V **ulciscor, -ūltus, -ī**, DEP., *To avenge one's self on, take vengeance on, or punish for wrong done*—WITH A PERSONAL OBJECT; *To take revenge for, to avenge, punish injustice, wrongs, etc.*
- VI **socer, -erī**, M., *a father-in-law*
- VII **avus, -ī**, M. (AV-), *a grandfather*
- VIII **eōdem prœliō**, ABL. OF PLACE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429

quō Cassium [interfēcerant]

=(the same battle) in which [they ~as Cassius himself
had slain] Cassius

interfēcerant¹

=they had slain

~had slain

I **quod...interfēcerant, quod** INTRODUCES A CAUSAL CLAUSE. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §540. **quō** STARTS A REL. CLAUSE WITH **interfēcerant**, WHICH COMPLETES THE CLAUSE

LXIII

CAESAR, BRIDGING THE ARAR, CROSSES.

LXIII.I.



HOC PRÆLIO FACTO, RELIQUAS CŌPIAS
HELVĒTIŌRUM UT CŌNSEQUI POSSET,
PONTEM IN ARARE FACIENDUM CŪRAT
ATQUE ITA EXERCITUM TRĀDUCIT.

Hoc praelio factō^I

=with this battle <having been> ~this battle ended
done

reliquas cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequi^{II} posset^{III}

=<in order> that he might be ~that he might be able to come
able to follow the remaining up with the remaining forces of
forces of the Helvetii the Helvetii

-
- I **hōc praeliō factō**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE, THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419
- II **cōsequor, secūtus, -ī**, DEP. (CŌN + SEQUOR), to follow, follow up, press upon, go after, attend, accompany, pursue
- III **ut...posset**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

pontem in Arare faciendum^I [esse] cūrat^{II}

=he sees to it that a bridge is ~he orders a bridge must be
<having> to be made across the made across the Saone
Arar

atque ita exercitum trādūcit^{III}

=and thus he leads (his) army ~and thus leads his army over
across

I.XIII.II.

HELVĒTIĪ REPĒNTĪNŌ EIUS ADVĒNTŪ COMMŌTĪ, CŪM ID
QUOD IPSĪ DIĒBŪS VĪGĪNTĪ ÆGERRIMĒ CŌNFĒCERANT,
UT FLŪMĒN TRĀNSĪRĒNT, ILLŪM ŪNŌ DIĒ FĒCISSE
ĪNTELLEGERĒNT, LĒGĀTŌS AD EŪM MITTŪNT; CUIUS
LĒGĀTĪŌNIS DĪVICŌ PRĪNCEPS FUIT, QUĪ BELLŌ
CASSIĀNŌ DŪX HELVĒTIŌRŪM FUERAT.

Helvētiī repēntīnō^{IV} eius adventū^V commōtī

=the Helvetii, <having been> ~the Helvetii, confused by his
moved by the sudden arrival of sudden arrival
his

cum id

=since this thing (bridge) ~since

I **pontem faciendum**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

II **cūrō, āvī, -ātus, -āre** (cura), to care for, take pains with, be solicitous for, look to, attend to, regard; WITH ACC. and gerundive, to have done, see to, order

III **trādūco, -xi, -ctum, -ere** (TRANS + DUCO), to lead, bring, or conduct across; to lead, bring, or carry over any thing

IV **repēntinus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (REPENS), sudden, hasty, unlooked for, unexpected, impetuous

V ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

quod ipsī diēbus vīginti^I ægerrimē^{II} cōnfēcerant^{III}

=(this bridge) which they ~what they, themselves had with
themselves had, with difficulty, the utmost difficulty
made together in twenty days accomplished in twenty days

ut flūmen trānsirent^{IV}

=(namely,) that they crossed the ~namely, the crossing of the
river river

illum ūnō diē^V fēcisse^{VI}

=that he (Cæsar) had made in ~that he had effected in one day
one day

intellegerent^{VII}

=they were understanding ~they found

lēgātōs ad eum mittunt^{VIII}

=they send ambassadors to him ~sent ambassadors to him

I **diebus vīginti**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **æger, -gra, -grum**, ADJ., unwell, ill, sick, diseased, suffering, feeble; With difficulty or effort

III **confacio, -ere, -fēci, -fectus** (CON + FACIO), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil

IV **ut...trānsirent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

V **ūnō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

VI **illum...fēcisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegerent**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VII **cum...intellegerent, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

VIII HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

cuius lēgatiōnis Dīvicō^I prīnceps fuit

=the head of which embassy was Divico ~at the head of which embassy was Divico

quī bellō Cassiānō^{II} dūx^{III} Helvētiōrum fuerat

=who had been commander of the Helvetii, in the war with (against) Cassius ~who had been commander of the Helvetii, in the war against Cassius

I.XIII.III.

IS ITA CUM CÆSARE ĒGIT: SĪ PĀCEM POPULUS RŌMĀNUS CUM HELVĒTIĪS FACERET, ĪN EAM PARTEM ITŪRŌS ATQUE IBI FUTŪRŌS HELVĒTIŌS UBI EŌS CÆSAR CŌSTITUISSET ATQUE ESSE VOLUISSET; SĪN BELLŌ PERSEQUĪ PERSEVĒRĀRET, REMĪNISCERĒTUR ET VETERIS ĪNCOMMODĪ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ET PRĪSTĪNÆ VIRTŪTIS HELVĒTIŌRUM.

Is ita cum Cæsare ēgit^{IV}

=he conducts with Cæsar thus ~he thus treats with Cæsar

I **Dīvicō, -ōnis**, M., leader of the Helvetians in their war with Cassius, 107 B.C., and head of an embassy to Caesar, 58 B.C.

II **bellō Cassiānō**, ABL. OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: MANY EXPRESSIONS HAVE IN LATIN THE CONSTRUCTION OF TIME WHEN WHERE IN ENGLISH THE MAIN IDEA IS RATHER OF PLACE. §424^{IV}

III **dux, dūcis**, a leader, conductor, guide; In partic., in milit. lang., a leader, commander, general-in-chief.

IV **agō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** (AG-), to put in motion, move, lead, drive, tend, conduct; To pursue, carry on, think, reflect, deliberate, treat, represent, exhibit, exercise, practise, act, perform, deliver, pronounce; Of public transactions, to manage, transact, do, discuss, speak, deliberate; Either in the most general sense, like the Engl. do, for every kind of mental or physical employment; or, in a more restricted sense, to exhibit in external action, to act or perform, to deliver or pronounce, etc., so that after the act is completed nothing remains permanent, e.g. a speech, dance, play, etc

sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret^I

=*that if the Roman people should make peace with the Helveti* ~*that if the Roman people would make peace with the Helveti*

in eam partem itūrōs [esse]^{II}

=*then (those men) (the Helveti) would go into that part* ~*they would go to that region*

atque ibi futūrōs [esse] Helvētiōs

=*and the Helveti would be there* ~*and there remain*

ubi eōs Cæsar cōstituisset

=*where Cæsar had set them* ~*where Cæsar might appoint*

atque esse voluisset^{III}

=*and (where) he desired (them) to be* ~*and desire them to be*

I *sī...faceret*, PROTASIS OF FUT. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *ēgit*. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III *ubi...cōstituisset...voluisset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

sīn^I *bellō* [eos] *persequi*^{II} *perseverāret*^{III IV}

=but if he should persist in ~but if he should persist in
persecuting [those men] with persecuting them with war
war

reminīsceretur^{V VI} *et* *veteris*^{VII} *incommodi*^{VIII} *populi Rōmānī et*
prīstināe^{IX} *virtūtis*^X *Helvētiōrum*

=he should remember both the ~that he ought to remember
ancient inconvenience of the both the ancient misfortune of
Roman people and the former the Roman people and the
valor of the Helvetii pristine valor of the Helvetii

-
- I **sīn**, CONJ., AN ADVERSATIVE CONDITIONAL PARTICLE, *if however, if on the contrary, but if*—WITH A PRECEDING *si, nisi, quando, dum*. AFTER *si*, OR WITHOUT A PRECEDING *si, nisi*, etc. (where the foregoing particle is usu. clearly implied by the context)
- II **persequor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (PER + SEQUOR), *to follow perseveringly, follow after, follow up, pursue*
- III **perseverō, -are, -āvī, -ātus** (PERSEVERUS), *to abide, adhere strictly, continue steadfastly, persist, persevere*
- IV **sīn...perseverāret**, PROTASIS OF FUT, LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589
- V APODOSIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589 & A CLAUSE DEPENDING UPON A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OR AN EQUIVALENT INFINITIVE WILL ITSELF TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IF REGARDED AS AN INTEGRAL PART OF THAT CLAUSE. §593
- VI **reminīscor, rementus sum, reminīscī**, DEP., WITH GEN., *recollect or remember*
- VII **vetus, -a, -um**, ADV., *old, aged, ancient; long-standing; former, previous*
- VIII **incommodum, -ī**, N. (INCOMMODUS), *inconvenience, trouble, disadvantage, detriment, injury, misfortune, loss*
- IX **prīstinus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRIUS + TINUS; PRO-), *former, early, original, primitive, pristine*
- X **incomodi...virtūtis**, GEN. WITH THE V. **reminīsceretur**. VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING TAKE EITHER THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. III. REMINISCOR IS RARE. IT TAKES THE ACCUSATIVE IN THE LITERAL SENSE OF CALL TO MIND, RECOLLECT; THE GENITIVE IN THE MORE FIGURATIVE SENSE OF BE MINDFUL OF. §350III

I.XIII.IV.

QUOD IMPRŌVĪSŌ ŪNUM PĀGUM ADORTUS ESSET, CUM
EĪ QUĪ FLŪMEN TRĀNSĪSSENT SUĪS AUXILIUM FERRE
NŌN POSSENT, NĒ OB EAM REM AUT SUÆ MAGNOPERE
VIRTŪTĪ TRIBUERET AUT IPSŌS DĒSPICERET.

Quod imprŏvisō^I ūnum pāgum adortus esset^{II III}

=because he (Cæsar) had ~the fact that he had attacked
attacked one canton by surprise one canton by surprise

cum eī

=(at a time) when those (men) ~(at a time) when those

quī flūmen trānsīscent^{IV}

=who had crossed the river ~who had crossed the river

suīs auxilium ferre nŏn possent^V

=were not able to bear ~could not bring assistance to
assistance to their own (friends) their friends

I **imprŏvisus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (IN + PROVĪSUS), *not foreseen, unforeseen, unexpected*; Hence, ADV., **imprŏviso**, *on a sudden, unexpectedly*

II **adorior, -ortus, -īri**, DEP. (AD + ORIOR), *to approach as an enemy, fall upon, assail, assault, attack*

III **quod...adortus esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

IV **quī...trānsīscent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V **cum...possent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

nē ob eam rem aut suæ magnopere^I virtūtī tribueret^{II} aut ipsōs dēspiceret^{III IV}

=on account of that thing, he ~he ought not on that account should not ascribe with great value highly his own valor, or labor (greatly) to his own despise them (valor), nor should he look down on (those men) themselves (the Helvetians)

I.XIII.V.

SĒ ITA Ā PATRIBUS MAIŌRIBUSQUE SUIS DIDICISSE, UT MAGIS VIRTŪTE QUAM DOLO CONTENDERENT AUT INSIDIIS NITERENTUR.

-
- I **māgnoperē** (OR **māgnō opere**), ADV. (ABL. OF MAGNUM OPUS), *very much, greatly, exceedingly, particularly*
- II **tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** (TRIBUS), *to assign, impart, allot, bestow, confer, yield, give; WITH multum, plurimum, or magnopere, to value highly, set great store by, make much of*
- III **dēspiciō, -ere, -ēxī, -ectus** (DE + SPECIO), *to look down upon; WITH ACC, to look down upon, despise, disdain*
- IV **nē...tribueret...dēspiceret**, NEG. COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

Sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque^{I II} suīs didicisse^{III IV}

=(and) that they had so learned ~that they had so learned from
from their sires and (their) their sires and ancestors
ancestors

ut magis^V virtūte quam dolō^{VI VII} contenderent

=that they fought more by valor ~as to fight more on valor
than /depend upon/ artifice than /rely on/ artifice

I **ā patribus maiōribusque**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

II SEE MAGNUS, -A, -UM, LIT., OF PHYSICAL SIZE OR QUANTITY, GREAT, LARGE; OF THINGS, VAST, EXTENSIVE, SPACIOUS, ETC.; TROP. IN GEN., GREAT, GRAND, MIGHTY, NOBLE, LOFTY, IMPORTANT, OF GREAT WEIGHT OR IMPORTANCE; ESP. OF MEASURE, WEIGHT, QUANTITY, GREAT, MUCH, ABUNDANT, CONSIDERABLE, ETC.;

III **discō, -ere, didicī**, — (DIC-), to learn, learn to know, acquire, become acquainted with

IV **sē...didicisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **magis**, ADV. COMP. (MAC-), more, in a higher degree, more completely— WITH ADJ. OR ADV.

VI **magis virtūte...quam dolō**, COMPARISON. SOME PREPOSITIONS AND ADVERBS WHICH IMPLY COMPARISON ARE FOLLOWED, LIKE COMPARATIVES, BY QUAM, WHICH MAY BE SEPARATED BY SEVERAL WORDS, OR EVEN CLAUSES. SUCH WORDS ARE ANTE, PRIUS, POST, POSTEA, PRIDI, POSTRIDIE; ALSO MAGIS AND PRÆ IN COMPOUNDS. §434; ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

VII **dolus, -ī**, M., a device, artifice, contrivance

aut insidiis^{I II} nīterentur^{III IV}

=depend upon // or traps

~rely on // or artifice

I.XIII.VI.

QUĀRĒ NĒ COMMITTERET UT IS LOCUS UBI
CŌSTITISSĒNT EX CALAMITĀTE POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ET
ĪNTERNECIŌNE EXERCITŪS NŌMEN CAPERET AUT
MEMORIAM PRŌDERET.

Quārē^V nē committeret^{VI VII}

=wherefore, he should not give
cause

~for which reason, let him not
give occasion

ut is locus

=that this place

~that the place

I ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **nīterentur**. SEVERAL VERBS ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. THESE ARE ACQUIESCŌ, DELECTOR, LETOR, GAUDEŌ, GLŌRIOR, NITOR, STŌ, MANEŌ, FIDŌ, CŌNFIDŌ, CŌNSISTŌ, CONTINEOR. §431

II **insidiæ, -ārum**, F. (SED-), a snare, trap; Fig., artifice, crafty device, plot, snare

III **nītor, nīxus, -ī**, DEP. (CNI-), to bear upon, press upon, lean, support oneself; To rest, rely, depend upon

IV **ut...contenderent...nīterentur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE INTRODUCED BY UT, SO THAT (NEGATIVE, UT NŌN), OR BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN OR RELATIVE ADVERB. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

V **quārē** (or **quā rē**) ADV. (QUĀ + RĒ), INTERROG., by what means? how?; TRANSF., FOR JOINING ON A CONSECUTIVE CLAUSE, for which reason, wherefore, therefore, Lit. by which matter (thing)

VI **committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (COM. + MITTŌ), To bring together, join, combine, put together, connect, unite; WITH ut, to be guilty or be in fault, so that, to give occasion or cause, that, to act so as that; TRANSF., of a battle, war: praelium, certamen, bellum, etc., To arrange a battle or contest, to enter upon, engage in, begin, join, commence

VII **nē committerent**, HORTATORY SUBJ. THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN THE PRESENT TENSE TO EXPRESS AN EXHORTATION OR A COMMAND. THE NEGATIVE IS NE. §439

ubi cōstitissent^I

=where they had stood

~where they were standing

ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne^{II III} exercitūs nōmen^{IV}
caperet^V

=should take (it's) name, from
the calamity of the Roman
people and from the
annihilation of the an army
(Cæsar's army)

~should inherit a name, from
the disaster of the Roman people
and the destruction of their
army

aut memoriam prōderet^{VI VII}

=or put forth the memory (of
such an event to posterity)

~or hand down the
remembrance [of such an event
to posterity]

-
- I **ubi cōstitissent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573
- II **calamitāte...interneciōne**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403
- III **interneciō, ōnis**, F. (INTER + NEC-), a massacre, slaughter, carnage, extermination, destruction
- IV **nōmen, -inis**, N. (GNA-), a means of knowing, name, appellation
- V SUBJ. OF RES. AFTER **ut**
- VI **prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus** (PRO + DO); to put forth, exhibit, reveal; To put forth, relate, report, record, hand down, transmit
- VII **ut...caperet...prōderet**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

I.XIV

CAESAR LAYS DOWN CONDITIONS.

I.XIV.I



IS CAESAR ITA RESPONDIT: EŌ SIBI MĪNUS DUBITĀTĪŌNIS DARĪ, QUOD EĀS RĒS QUĀS LĒGĀTĪ HELVĒTĪ COMMÉMORĀSSENT MEMORIĀ TENĒRET, ATQUE EŌ GRAVIUS FERRE QUŌ MĪNUS MERITŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ACCIDISSENT: QUĪ SĪ ALICUIUS ĪNIŪRIĀE SIBI CŌNSCIUS FUISSET, NŌN FUISSE DIFFICILE CAVĒRE; SED EŌ DĒCEPTUM, QUOD NEQUE COMMISSUM Ā SĒ ĪNTELLEGERET QUĀRĒ TIMĒRET NEQUE SĪNE CAUSĀ TIMĒNDUM PUTĀRET.

"EO MIHI MĪNUS DUBITATIONIS DATUR, QUOD EAS RES QUAS LEGATI HELVETII COMMÉMORAUERUNT (OR VOS COMMÉMORASTIS) MEMORIA TENEO ATQUE EO GRAVIUS FERRO, QUO MĪNUS MERITO, POPULI ROMANI ACCIDERUNT, QUI SI...SIBI CŌNSCIUS FUISSET, NŌN FUIT DIFFICILE CAVERE, SED EO DECEPTUS EST, QUOD NEQUE COMMISSUM A SE ĪNTELLEGEBAT QUĀ RE TIMERET, NEQUE SĪNE CAUSE TIMĒNDUM PUTABAT."

Hīs Cæsar ita respondit

=Cæsar replied to these (men)
(the Helvetian embassy) thus

~to these words Cæsar thus
replied

eō^{I II} sibi minus dubitātiōnis^{III IV} darī^V

=that, in this, the less of doubt
was given to him

~that on that very account the
less of hesitation was brought
about to him

quod eās rēs

=(namely,) because /he held in
memory/ those things

~because /he remembered/ those
circumstances

quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorā[vi]ssent^{VI VII}

=which the Helvetian
ambassadors had recalled to
memory

~which the Helvetian
embassadors had brought to
mind

memoriā^{VIII} tenēret^{IX}

=he held in memory

~he remembered

I ABL. OF CAUSE. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §404

II **eō**, ADV. ABL. OF PRON. (I-), LOCAT. AND ABL. USES, *there, in that place*; IN DAT. USES, With the idea of motion, *to that place, thither* (=in eum locum); Fig., *Therefore, on that account, for that reason*

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

IV **dubitātiō**, **-ōnis**, F. (DUBITO), *uncertainty, doubt, perplexity*; A *wavering, hesitating, hesitancy, irresolution, delay*

V **minus...darī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

VI **quās...commemorāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII **commemorō**, **-āvi**, **-ātus**, **-āre** (COM + MEMORŌ), *to recall to memory, call to mind, be mindful of, keep in mind, remember*; *To bring to mind, remind of, recall*

VIII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

atque eō [se] gravius^I ferre quō minus^{II} meritō^{III IV} populi Rōmānī^V
accidissent^{VI VII}

=and that by the more harshly ~and that he felt the more
[he] (Cæsar) was bearing, by indignant at them, in proportion
which the less deservedly (those as they had happened
circumstances which he was undeservedly to the Roman
holding in memory) had fallen of people
the Roman people

quī sī alicuius iniūriæ sibi^{VIII} cōnsciū^{IX} fuisset^X

=which if (the Roman people) ~for if they had been conscious
had been conscious, to itself, of of any wrong-doing
any wrong-doing

IX quod...tenēret, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. **NOTE 1.** QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. **II. CAUSAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, AND QUANDO** TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, LIKE ANY OTHER DEPENDENT CLAUSE (SEE §580). §540^{II} & §583

I gravis, -e, ADJ. WITH COMP. **gravior**, AND SUP. **gravissimus** (GAR-), heavy, weighty, ponderous, burdensome, loaded, laden, burdened; Trop. In a bad sense, heavy, burdensome, oppressive, troublesome, grievous, painful, hard, harsh, severe, disagreeable, unpleasant

II eō gravius...quō minus, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. **I.** THE ABLATIVES QUŌ...EŌ (HŌC), AND QUANTŌ...TANTŌ, ARE USED CORRELATIVELY WITH COMPARATIVES, LIKE THE ENGLISH THE...THE. **NOTE.** TO THIS CONSTRUCTION ARE DOUBTLESS TO BE REFERRED ALL CASES OF QUŌ AND EŌ (HŌC) WITH A COMPARATIVE, EVEN WHEN THEY HAVE CEASED TO BE DISTINCTLY FELT AS DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE AND APPROACH THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. §414^I

III ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §481

IV mēřēo, -ūi, -ītum, -ēre, AND **mēřēor, ītus, -ēri**, DEP., to deserve, merit, to be entitled to, be worthy of a thing; constr. WITH ACC., WITH ut, WITH ne, WITH inf., AND ABSOL; **mēřitō**, ADV., according to desert, deservedly, justly

nōn fuisse difficile^I cavēre^{II}

=it would not have been difficult
to be on (their) guard

~it would not have been difficult
to be on their guard

sed eō^{III} dēceptum [est]^{IV V}

=but, in this (thing), they (the
Roman people) were deceived

~but for that very reason had
they been deceived

V **populī Rōmānī**, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

VI CLAUSE OF PURPOSE CONTAINING A COMP. CONDITIONS ARE EITHER (I) PARTICULAR OR (II) GENERAL: A PARTICULAR CONDITION REFERS TO A DEFINITE ACT OR SERIES OF ACTS OCCURRING AT SOME DEFINITE TIME. §513i

VII **accidō, -cidī, —, -ere** (AD + CADO), to fall upon or down upon a thing, to reach it by falling; In gen., to fall out, come to pass, happen, occur; AND WITH DAT. PERS., to happen to, to befall one. (The distinction between the syn. *evenio*, *accido*, and *contingo* is this: *evenio*, i.e. *ex-venio*, is used of either fortunate or unfortunate events: *accido*, of occurrences which take us by surprise; hence it is used either of an indifferent, or, which is its general use, of an unfortunate occurrence: *contingo*, i.e. *contango*, indicates that an event accords with one's wishes; and hence is generally used of fortunate events.)

VIII DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

IX **cōnsciūs**, ADJ. (COM- + SCIO), knowing in common, conscious with, privy, participant, accessory, witnessing

X **sī...fuisset**, PROTASIS OF PAST CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

I **difficilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (DIS- + FACILIS), hard, difficult, troublesome, impracticable, laborious, perilous

quod neque

=(namely,) because neither

~because neither

commissum [esse]^I ā sē^{II}

=that (any crime) had been
committed by themselves

~that any offense had been given
by them

intellegeret

=he was aware

~were they aware

II **caveō, cāvī, cautus, -ēre** (CAV-), to be on one's guard, take care, take heed, beware, guard against, avoid

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV APODOSIS OF PAST CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. II. IN CHANGING A CONDITION CONTRARY TO FACT (§517) INTO THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE, THE FOLLOWING POINTS REQUIRE NOTICE: THE PROTASIS ALWAYS REMAINS UNCHANGED IN TENSE. THE APODOSIS, IF ACTIVE, TAKES A PECULIAR INFINITIVE FORM, MADE BY COMBINING THE PARTICIPLE IN -ŪRUS WITH FUISSE. IF THE VERB OF THE APODOSIS IS PASSIVE OR HAS NO SUPINE STEM, THE PERIPHRASIS FUTURUM FUISSE UT (WITH THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE) MUST BE USED. AN INDICATIVE IN THE APODOSIS BECOMES A PERFECT INFINITIVE. §589^{II}

V **dēcipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (DE + CAPIO), to catch, ensnare, entrap, beguile, elude, deceive, cheat; FIG., to deceive, elude

I INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegeret**. §580

II ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES Ā OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

[quicquam]^I quārē timēret^{II}

=for which reason [anyone] ~on account of which they
should fear should be afraid

neque

=nor ~nor

sine causā timendum [esse]^{III}

=that it is <having> to be feared ~that they ought to be afraid
(by them) without cause without cause

putāret^{IV}

=did he think ~did they think

I.XIV.II.

QUOD SĪ VETERIS CONTUMĒLIÆ OBLIVISCĪ VELLET, NUM
ETIAM RECĒNTIUM ĪNIŪRIĀRUM, QUOD EŌ ĪNVĪTŌ ITER
PER PRŌVĪNCIAM PER VIM TEMPTĀSSENT, QUOD ĀDUŌS,
QUOD AMBARRŌS, QUOD ALLOBROGAS VEXĀSSENT,
MEMORIAM DĒPŌNERE POSSE?

"QUOD SI...OBLIVISCI VELIT (VELIM), NUM ETIAM
RECĒNTIUM ĪNIŪRIARUM, QUOD ME ĪNVITO ITER ...
TEMPTASTIS, QUOD HĒDUOS, ...VEXASTIS, MEMORIAM
DEPŌNERE POTEST (POSSUM)."

I **quisquam** M., **quicquam**, N. PRON. INDEF. (QUIS, QUID + QUAM), AS ADJ ., *any, any one*; AS SUBST., *any man, anybody, any person, any one whatever, anything*

II **quārē timēret**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III **timeō, uī, —, ēre** (TEM-), *to fear, be afraid, be fearful, be apprehensive, be afraid of, dread, apprehend*

IV **quod...intellegeret...putāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §540 & §583

Quod si veteris contumēliae^I ^{II} oblivisci^{III} vellet^{IV}

=which (thing) if he (Cæsar) was willing to forget the old insult ~but if he were willing to forget their former outrage

num^V etiam recentium^{VI} iniuriarum^{VII}

=then // also, of the recent wrongs ~now, also, of the late wrongs

quod

=which

~in that

eō invītō^{VIII}

=with him (Cæsar) <being> ~they had against his will unwilling

I GEN. WITH V. **oblivisci**. VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING TAKE EITHER THE ACCUSATIVE OR THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT: II. MEMINI TAKES THE GENITIVE WHEN IT MEANS TO BE MINDFUL OR REGARDFUL OF A PERSON OR THING, TO THINK OF SOMEBODY OR SOMETHING (OFTEN WITH SPECIAL INTEREST OR WARMTH OF FEELING). SO OBLIVISCOR IN THE OPPOSITE SENSE, —TO DISREGARD, OR DISMISS FROM THE MIND, —AND THE ADJECTIVE OBLITUS, CARELESS OR REGARDLESS. §350

II **contumēlia**, -æ, F. (COM- + TEM-), insult, abuse, affront, reproach, invective, contumely

III **obliviscor**, -litus, -i, DEP. (OB + LIV-), WITH GEN. of person or thing, to forget; To forget, disregard, omit, neglect, be indifferent to, cease from

IV **quod si...vellet**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **num**, ADV. (NV-), Of time, now; As INTERROG PARTICLE. INTRODUCING A DIRECT QUESTION, USU. EXPECTING A NEGATIVE ANSWER, then, now (often only rendered by the interrogative form of the sentence): num videntur convenire hæc nuptiis? does this look like a wedding?

VI **recēns**, -entis, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., lately arisen, not long in existence, fresh, young, recent

VII OBJ. GEN. §348

VIII **eō invītō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent^{I II}

=(namely,) that they had ~in that they attempted a route
attempted a route through the through the Province perforce
Province by <the agency of>
force

quod Æduōs [vexāssent]^{III}

=that [they had harassed] the ~the Ædui
Ædui

quod Ambarrōs [vexāssent]

=that [they had harassed] the ~the Ambarri
Ambarri

quod Allobrogas [vexāssent]

=that [they had harassed] the ~and the Allobroges
Allobroges

vexāssent^{IV}

=they had harassed ~they had plagued

- I **quod...temptāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §572 & §583
- II **tempto, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (tendo), to handle, touch, feel a thing; to try; to prove, put to the test; to attempt, essay a course of action, etc —IN GEN., CONSTR. WITH ACC., WITH INF., WITH REL.-CLAUSE, WITH *ut*, OR ABSOL.
- III **vexō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (veho), to shake, jolt, toss violently; TRANSF., IN GEN., to injure, damage, molest, annoy, distress, plague, trouble, maltreat, abuse, vex, harass, disquiet, disturb, torment, etc.
- IV **quod...vexāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A PECULIAR FORM OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSE CONSISTS OF QUOD (IN THE SENSE OF THAT, THE FACT THAT) WITH THE INDICATIVE. THE CLAUSE IN THE INDICATIVE WITH QUOD IS USED WHEN THE STATEMENT IS REGARDED AS A FACT. NOTE. LIKE OTHER SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES, THE CLAUSE WITH QUOD MAY BE USED AS SUBJECT, AS OBJECT, AS APPOSITIVE, ETC., BUT IT IS COMMONLY EITHER THE SUBJECT OR IN APPPOSITION WITH THE SUBJECT...§572 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

memoriam dēpōnere^V posse^{VI}

=/then/ could (he) lay aside the
memory?

~could he also lay aside the
memory?

I.XIV.III.

QUOD SUĀ VICTORIĀ TAM ĪNSOLEŒTER GLŌRIĀREŒTŪR,
QUODQUE TAM DIŪ SĒ IMPŪNE ĪNIŪRIĀS TŪLISSE
ADMĪRĀREŒTŪR, EŌDEM PERTĪNĒRE.

"QUOD VESTRA VICTORIA...GLORIAMĪNI, QUODQUE TAM
DIU VOS IMPŪNE ĪNIURIAS TULISSE ADMIRAMĪNI,
EODEM PERTĪNET."

Quod suā victoriā^{III IV} tam^V insolenter^{VI} glōriārentur^{VII VIII}

=<as to> what they gloried so
insolently in their own victory

~that as to their so insolently
boasting of their victory

V **dēpōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (DE + PŌNŌ), *to lay away, put aside, set down, lay, place, set, deposit*; Trop. With a predominant notion of putting away, removing, etc., *to lay down, lay aside, give up, resign, get rid of*

VI **num...posse**, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. A REAL QUESTION, ASKING FOR AN ANSWER, IS GENERALLY PUT IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE; A RHETORICAL QUESTION, ASKED FOR EFFECT AND IMPLYING ITS OWN ANSWER, IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE. § 586

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV **vīctōria, -æ**, F. (VICTOR), *In war, victory*

V **tam**, ADV. (TA-), CORREL. WITH *quam* IN COMPARISONS, IMPLYING EQUALITY OF DEGREE, *in such a degree, as much, so, so much*; WITH A GENERAL COMP. CLAUSE UNDERSTOOD (= SIC, ITA), *so (so much) as I do, as you do, as he did, as I said before, as he is, as you are*, etc. WITH ADJ.—“*tam necessario tempore*,” *tam propinquis hostibus*,” *at so urgent a time as this* (I.XVI.IV)

VI **īnsolenter**, ADV. WITH COMP. (INSOLENS), *unusually, contrary to custom; Immoderately, haughtily, insolently*

VII **glōrior, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (GLORIA), *to boast, vaunt, glory, brag, pride oneself*

VIII **quod...glōriārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §572 & §583

quodque

=and <as to> what

~and that

tam diū^I sē impūne^{II} iniūriās tulisse^{III IV}

=that for so long to have borne
injuries with impunity

~that they had so long
conducted their outrages with
impunity

admīrarentur^{V VI}

=they wondered

~they were being astonished

eōdem pertinēre^{VII}

=(both of these things) tend to
the same (thing)

~[both these things] tended to
the same point

I.XIV.IV.

CŌNSUEŒSSE ENIM DEŌS IMMORTĀLĒS, QUŌ GRAVIUS
HOMĪNĒS EX COMMŪTĀTIŌNE RĒRUM DOLEĀNT, QUŌS
PRŌ SCELERE EŌRUM ULĀSCĪ VELĪNT, EĪS SECŪNDIŌRĒS
ĪTERDŪM RĒS ET DIŪTURNIŌREM IMPŪNITĀTEM
CŌNCĒDERE.

I **diū**, ADV. WITH COMP. **diūtius**, AND SUP. **diūtissimē** (DIV-), by day, all day; Lit., a space of time, *a while*; HENCE, WITH INTENS. SIGNIF., *A long time, long while, long*; COMP., **diūtius**, *longer*; In the historians freq. = *a long while, very long*, no comparison being intended

II **impūne**, ADV. WITH COMP. (IMPUNIS), *without punishment, unpunished, with impunity*

III **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, **ferre** (FER-, TAL-), *to bear, carry, support, lift, hold, take up*; *To carry, take, fetch, move, bear, lead, conduct, drive, direct*

IV **se...tulisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **admīrarentur**. §580

V **admīror**, **-ātus**, **-ārī**, DEP. (AD + MĪROR), *to regard with wonder, admire*; *To regard with wonder, wonder at, be astonished*

VI **quod...admīrarentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §572 & §583

VII INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

"CONSÜERUNT ENIM DI IMMORTALES QUO GRAVIUS HOMINES...DOLEANT, QUOS PRO SCELERE EORUM ULCISCI VOLUNT...HIS IMPUNITATEM CONCEDERE."

Cōnsuē[vi]sse^{I II} enim^{III} deōs immortālēs^{IV}

=*for the immortal gods had been* ~*for the immortal gods are wont wont*

quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne^{V VI} rērum doleant^{VII VIII}

=*<in order> that the men may* ~*in order that they may suffer suffer the more severely from a the more severely from a change of circumstances reverse of circumstances*

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II **consuēscō, -suēvī, -suētus, -ere**, INCH., *to become used, accustom oneself*—Hence, PERF., *to be wont, be accustomed*

III **enim**, CONJ. (USU. AFTER THE FIRST WORD IN ITS CLAUSE). In explaining or specifying, *for, for instance, namely, that is to say, I mean, in fact*

IV **immortālis, -e**, ADJ., *undying, immortal*

V **ex commūtātiōne**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

VI **commūtātiō, -ōnis**, F. (COMMUTO), *a changing, change, alteration*

VII **quō...doleant**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE ABLATIVE QUO (= UT EO) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531 & §583

VIII **doleō, -uī, -itūrus, -ēre** (DAL-), Corporeally, *to feel pain, suffer, be in pain, ache*; Mentally. Of personal subjects, *to grieve for, deplore, lament, be sorry for, be afflicted at or on account of any thing*—WITH *de* OR *ex*

quōs prō scelere^I eōrum ulciscī velint^{II III}

=(those men) whom, on account of the wickedness of those (men), they wish to punish ~to those persons whom they wish to punish for their wickedness

eīs^{IV} secundiōrēs^V interdum^{VI} rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem^{VII} concēdere

=to sometimes concede to those (men) // more favorable things and a longer impunity ~to sometimes allow those men // a greater prosperity and longer impunity

I.XIV.V.

CUM EA ITA SINT, TAMEN, SI OBSIDēs AB EIS SIBI DENTUR, UTI EA QUAE POLLICEANTUR FACTURōS INTELLEGAT, ET SI AEDUIS DE INIURIIS QUAS IPSIS SOCIISQUE EORUM INTULERINT, ITEM SI ALLOBROGIBUS SATISFACIANT, SESē CUM EIS PACEM ESSE FACTURUM.

I **scelus, -eris**, N. (SCEL-), a wicked deed, heinous act, crime, sin, enormity, wickedness

II *Cupio, malo, nolo, studeo, and volo* frequently have the Infinitive without a Subject Accusative (Complementary Infinitive); as, *ulcisci velint*, may wish to punish (I.XIV)

III **quōs...velint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV DAT. WITH COMP. V. **concēdere**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

V **secundus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (SEQUOR), In time or order, following, next, second; PL. N. AS SUBST., favorable circumstances, good fortune

VI **interdum**, ADV. (INTER + DUM), sometimes, occasionally, now and then

VII **impūnitās, -ātis**, F. (IMPUNIS), freedom from punishment, safety, impunity

"CUM EA ITA SINT, TAMEN SI OBSIDES A VOBIS MIHI DABUNTUR, UTI EA QUÆ POLLICEMINI (VOS) FACTUROS INTELLEGAM, ET SI HÆDUIS DE INIURIIS QUAS... INTULISTIS...SATISFACIETIS, (EGO) VOBIS CUM PACEM FACIAM."

Cum ea ita sint^I, tamen

=*though these (things) are so, yet* ~*although these things are so, yet*

sī obsidēs ab eīs^{II} sibi dentur^{III}

=*if hostages should be given to him by those (men)* ~*if hostages were to be given him by them*

utī

=*<in order> that* ~*in order that*

ea

=*the things* ~*the things*

quæ polliceantur^{IV V}

=*which they promised* ~*which they promise*

I **cum...sint, cum** CONCESSIVE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549 & §583

II AB EIS, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

III **sī...dentur**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. I. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE APODOSIS OF LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS (§516ii) BECOMES THE FUTURE INFINITIVE LIKE THE FUTURE INDICATIVE IN THE APODOSIS OF MORE VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS. THUS THERE IS NO DISTINCTION BETWEEN MORE AND LESS VIVID FUTURE CONDITIONS IN THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §589i

IV **quæ polliceantur**, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V **polliceor, -itus, -ēri**, DEP. (PRO + LICEOR), *to hold forth, offer, promise*

[eos] factūrōs [esse]^I

=*[those (men)] would do*

~*these will do*

intellegat^{II}

=*he (Cæsar) may know*

~*he may be assured*

et si Æduīs dē iniūriīs

=*and if, for the injuries, to the*

~*for the outrages*

Ædui

I *factūrōs [esse]*, INDIC. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *intellegat*. §580

II *utī...intellegat*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIC. DISC. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536 & THE RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS A DEVELOPMENT PECULIAR TO LATIN. A RELATIVE CLAUSE IN THE INDICATIVE MERELY STATES SOMETHING AS A FACT WHICH IS TRUE OF THE ANTECEDENT; A CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSE (IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE) DEFINES THE ANTECEDENT AS A PERSON OR THING OF SUCH A CHARACTER THAT THE STATEMENT MADE IS TRUE OF HIM OR IT AND OF ALL OTHERS BELONGING TO THE SAME CLASS. THUS,— NŌN POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINĒRE IMPERĀTOR QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINET (INDICATIVE) MEANS SIMPLY, THAT COMMANDER WHO DOES NOT (AS A FACT) RESTRAIN HIMSELF CANNOT RESTRAIN HIS ARMY; WHEREAS NŌN POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINĒRE IMPERĀTOR QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINEAT (SUBJUNCTIVE) WOULD MEAN, THAT COMMANDER WHO IS NOT SUCH A MAN AS TO RESTRAIN HIMSELF, ETC., THAT IS, WHO IS NOT CHARACTERIZED BY SELF-RESTRAINT. THIS CONSTRUCTION HAS ITS ORIGIN IN THE POTENTIAL USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE (§445). THUS, IN THE EXAMPLE JUST GIVEN, QUI SĒ IPSE NŌN CONTINEAT WOULD MEAN LITERALLY, WHO WOULD NOT RESTRAIN HIMSELF (IN ANY SUPPOSABLE CASE), AND THIS POTENTIAL IDEA PASSES OVER EASILY INTO THAT OF GENERAL QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC. THE CHARACTERIZING FORCE IS MOST EASILY FELT WHEN THE ANTECEDENT IS INDEFINITE OR GENERAL. BUT THIS USAGE IS EXTENDED IN LATIN TO CASES WHICH DIFFER BUT SLIGHTLY FROM STATEMENTS OF FACT, AS IN SOME OF THE EXAMPLES BELOW. THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE TO EXPRESS RESULT COMES FROM ITS USE IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC. THUS, NŌN SUM ITA HEBES UT HÆC DICAM MEANS LITERALLY, I AM NOT DULL IN THE MANNER (DEGREE) IN WHICH I SHOULD SAY THIS, HENCE, I AM NOT SO DULL AS TO SAY THIS. SINCE, THEN, THE CHARACTERISTIC OFTEN APPEARS IN THE FORM OF A SUPPOSED RESULT, THE CONSTRUCTION READILY PASSES OVER INTO PURE RESULT, WITH NO IDEA OF CHARACTERISTIC, AS,— “TANTUS IN CŪRIĀ CLĀMOR FACTUS EST UT POPULUS CONCURRERET” (VERR. 2.47), SUCH AN OUTCRY WAS MADE IN THE SENATE-HOUSE THAT THE PEOPLE HURRIED TOGETHER. §534 & §583

quās ipsīs sociisque^I eōrum intulerint^{II}

=(those things) which they had borne upon themselves (Hædui) and their allies (the Ambarri) ~*which they had committed against them and their allies*

item sī Allobrogibus^{III} satisfaciant^{IV V}

=(and) likewise, if they should give satisfaction to the Allobroges ~*and provided they will give satisfaction to the Ædui, and likewise to the Allobroges*

sēsē cum eis pācem esse factūrum^{VI}

=he (Cæsar) would make peace with them (the Helvetians) ~*he [Cæsar] will make peace with them*

I.XIV.VI.

DIVICŌ RESPONDIT: ITA HELVĒTIŌS Ā MAIŌRIBUS SUIS
INSTITŪTŌS ESSE UTĪ OBSIDĒS ACCIPERE, NŌN DARE,
CŌNSUĒRINT: EIUS REĪ POPULUM RŌMĀNUM ESSE
TESTEM.

Divicō respondit

=Divicus responded

~Divico replied

I *ipsīs sociisque*, DAT. WITH COMP. V. *intulerint*. §370

II *quās...intulerint*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. *satisfaciant*. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH SATIS, BENE, AND MALE. §368^{II}

IV *satisfaciō* (OR *satis faciō*), -ere, -fēcī, -factus (SATIS + FACIŌ; FAC-), to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize

V *sī...satisfaciant*, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589^I

VI *sēsē...esse factūrum*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON RESPONDIT. §580

ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suīs^I institūtōs esse^{II III}

=that the Helvetii had been fixed by their own ancestors thus ~that the Helvetii had been so taught by their ancestors

utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint^{IV}

=that they have been wont to receive hostages, not to give (hostages) ~that they were accustomed to receive, not to give hostages

eius rei populum Rōmānum esse^V testem^{VI}

=of that thing the Roman people were witness ~of that fact the Roman people were witness

I.XIV.VII.

Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Hōc respōnsō datō^{VII}

=with this reply <having been> given ~having given this reply

discessit^{VIII}

=he departed ~he withdrew

I ā maiōribus suīs, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

II Helvētiōs...institūtōs esse, INDIR. DISC. §580

III instituō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere (IN + STATUO), to put in place, plant, fix, set; To teach, instruct, train up, educate

IV utī...cōsuērint, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §536 & §583

V populum Rōmānum...esse, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI testis, -is, COMM., one who attests any thing (orally or in writing), a witness

VII hōc respōnsō datō, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE, HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

LXV



THE HELVETIANS RESUME THEIR MARCH.



LXV.I.

POSTERŌ DIĒ CASTRA EX EŌ LOCŌ MOVENT.

Posterō^I diē castra^{II} ex eō locō^{III} movent^{IV}

=on the day after they (the ~on the following day they move
Helveti) moved (their) camp out their camp from that place
from that place

LXV.II.

IDEM FACIT CÆSAR EQUITATUMQUE OMNEM, AD
NUMERUM QUATTUOR MĪLIUM, QUEM EX OMNĪ
PRŌVĪNCIĀ ET ÆDUIS ATQUE EŌRUM SOCIIS COACTUM
HABĒBAT, PRÆMITTIT, QUI VIDEANT QUĀS IN PARTĒS
HOSTĒS ITER FACIANT.

VIII **discēdō, -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (DIS + CĒDŌ), *to go apart, part asunder, divide, separate, disperse, scatter*; (With the notion of *cedere* predominating), *to depart from any place or person, to go away from, to leave*—Lit. IN GEN. CONSTR. WITH *ab, ex*, OR ABSOL.; Trop. In gen., *to depart, deviate, swerve from; to leave, forsake, give up*

I **posterus**, ADJ. WITH COMP. **posterior, -us**, AND SUP. **postremus** (POST), POSIT., *coming after, following, next, ensuing, subsequent, future*

II **posterō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

III **ex eō locō**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ab, de*, OR *ex*. §426

IV **moveō, mōvi, mōtus, -ēre** (MV-), *to move, stir, set in motion, shake, disturb, remove*

Idem facit Cæsar

=*Cæsar did the same thing*

~*Cæsar does the same*

equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium^I

=*and // all the cavalry, near the number of four of thousands*

~*and // forward all his cavalry, to the number of four thousand*

quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Æduīs atque eōrum sociīs^{II} coāctum^{III} habēbat

=*which (he) drove together from every province and from the Ædui and from the allies of those men, he was having*

~*which he had drawn together from all parts of the Province and from the Ædui and their allies*

præmittit^{IV V}

=*he sends forward*

~*sent*

quī videant^{VI}

=*who would watch*

~*to observe*

I ***mīlium***, PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346^{III}

II ***ex omnī prōvinciā...Hæduīs...sociīs***, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

III ***habeo*** with a PPP. in agreement with its Object may have almost the force of a Perfect or Pluperfect tense; as, *quem...coactum habebat*, *which he had collected*, Lit. *which, having been collected, he was having* (I.XV)

IV HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

V ***præmittō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere*** (PRÆ + MITTŌ), *to send forward, despatch in advance*

VI ***quī videant***, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THE CLAUSE OF PURPOSE IS HORTATORY IN ORIGIN, COMING THROUGH A KIND OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE CONSTRUCTION. §529

quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant^I

=*in what direction the enemy made the journey*

~*toward what parts the enemy are directing their march*

I.XV.III.

QUĪ, CUPIDIUS NOVISSIMUM AGMEN ĪNSECŪTĪ, ALIĒNŌ LOCŌ CUM EQUITĀTŪ HELVĒTIŌRUM PRĒLIUM COMMITTUNT; ET PAUCĪ DĒ NOSTRĪS CADUNT.

Quī, cupidius^{II} novissimum agmen īnsecūtī^{III}, aliēnō^{IV} locō^V

=*(these men) who, too eagerly followed the (enemy's) most recent battle line // in a disadvantageous place*

~*these, having too passionately pursued the enemy's rear // in a disadvantageous place*

cum equitātū^{VI} Helvētiōrum praelium committunt

=*they join together battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii*

~*commence battle with the cavalry of the Helvetii*

I *quās...faciant*, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

II *cupidus, -a, -um*, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CVP-), *longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond; Excessively desirous, passionate, eager, greedy, lustful, covetous; Hence, cūpidē*, ADV., *eagerly, in a good and bad sense, zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partial*

III *īnsequor, -cūtus, -i*, DEP. (IN + SEQUOR), *to follow, follow after, come next; To pursue, follow up, press upon*

IV *ālīenus, -a, -um*, ADJ. (ALIUS). In gen., *that belongs to another person, place, object, etc., not one's own, another's, of another, foreign, alien; Averse, hostile, unfriendly, unfavorable to; TRANSF. TO THINGS, as in the histt., alienus locus, a place or ground unfavorable for an engagement, disadvantageous*

V *locō*, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. §429

VI *equitātus, -ūs*, M. (EQUITO), *cavalry*

et pauci^I dē nostris^{II III} cadunt^{IV V}

=and concerning a few (of) our ~and a few of our men fell off
men (a few of our men) fell

I.XV.IV.

QUŌ PRĒLIŌ SUBLĀTĪ HELVĒTĪ, QUOD QUĪNGENTĪS
EQUITIBUS TANTAM MULTITUDĪNEM EQUITUM
PRŌPULERANT, AUDĀCIUS SUBSISTERE NŌN NUMQUAM
ET NOVISSIMŌ AGMĪNE PRĒLIŌ NOSTRŌS LACESSERE
CĒPĒRUNT.

Quō prœliō^{VI} sublātī Helvētīi

=the Helvetii, lifted by which ~the Helvetii, elated with this
(this) battle battle

I **paucus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PAV-), *few, little*

II **dē nostris**, ABL. WITH CARDINAL NUMERALS. §346^{II}

III *de* or *ex* are often used with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with *quidam* and words referring to Number. Thus, *quidam ex his, some of these* (II.XVII); *pauci de nostris, a few of our men* (I.XV)

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V **cadō, cecidī, casūrus, -ere** (CAD-), *to fall, fall down, descend; To fall off, fall away, fall out, drop off, be shed*

VI **quō prœliō**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

quod quīngentīs equitibus^I tantam^{II} multitudinem equitum
prōpulerant^{III}

=because they had with five
hundred horse drove forward so
large a body of horse

~because they had with five
hundred horse driven away so
large a body of horse

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **tantus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TA-), FOL. BY A CLAUSE OF COMP., *of such size, of such a measure, so great, such; to be valued, prized, or esteemed so highly; to be of such consequence or importance*; FOLLOWED BY A CLAUSE OF RES., *so great, such*; Esp. in phrase **tantō ōpēre**; freq. as one word, **tantōpēre**, *so greatly, in so high a degree, so very*, etc

III **prōpellō, -pulī, -pulsus, -ere** (PRŌ + PELLŌ), *to drive forward, drive forth, drive away, drive out; To drive away, keep off*

audācius^I subsistere^{II} nōn numquam^{III} et novissimō^{IV} agmine^V
praeliō^{VI} nostrōs laceessere^{VII} cōepērunt^{VIII}

=*began to take a stand more boldly, not never with (their) newest battle line to provoke our men with battle* ~*began to take a stand more boldly, sometimes too from their rear to provoke our men by an attack*

I.XV.V.

CÆSAR SUŌS Ā PRÆLIŌ CONTĪNĒBAT, AC SATIS HABĒBAT
IN PRÆSENTIĀ HOSTEM RAPĪNĪS PĀBULĀTIŌNIBUS
POPULĀTIŌNIBUSQUE PROHIBĒRE.

Cæsar suōs ā praeliō^{IX} continēbat

=*Cæsar (however) was restraining his own men from battle* ~*Cæsar [however] restrained his men from battle*

-
- I **audax, -ācis**, ADJ. (FROM AUDEO), *daring*, in a good, but oftener in a bad sense, *bold, courageous, spirited; audacious, rash, presumptuous, foolhardy*; Meton., *violent, fierce, proud*—**audacter**, COMP
- II **subsistō, -stiti, —, -ere** (SUB + SISTŌ), *to take a stand, take position, stand still, remain standing, stop, halt*
- III **numquam**, ADV. (NE + UMQUAM), *at no time, never*
- IV Certain Adjectives often designate a part of that to which they refer; as, in *colle medio*, *halfway up the hill* (I.XXIV); *prima nocte*, *in the first part of the night* (I.XXVII); *summus mons*, *the top of the height* (I.XXII). The Adjectives thus used by Cæsar are *extremus* (as II.V); *infimus* (II.XVIII); *medius*; *multus* (I.XXII); *novissimus*, *in novissimum agmen* (I.XV and often), *the rear of a marching column* as the latest part of a column to pass a given point; *primus* and *summus*
- V **novissimō agmine**, ABL. OF MEANS, §409
- VI DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **laceessere**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- VII **laceessō, -īvi, -itus, -ere** (LAC-), *to excite, provoke, challenge, exasperate, irritate*
- VIII **cœpiō, cœpi, cœptus, -ere** (COM- + AP-), *to begin, commence*
- IX **ā praeliō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

ac satis [esse] habēbat^I in præsentiā^{II} hostem rapīnīs^{III}
pābulātiōnibus^{IV} populātiōnibusque^V prohibēre

=and he was held (the defense) ~thought it sufficient for the
[to be] sufficient in the present present to prevent the enemy
to prohibit the enemy from from rapine, forage, and
rapine, from forage, and from depredation
depredation

I.XV.VI.

ITA DIĒS CIRCI-TER QUĪNDECIM ITER FĒCĒRUNT UTĪ
ĪNTER NOVISSIMUM HOSTIUM AGMĒN ET NOSTRUM
PRĪMUM NŌN AMPLIUS QUĪNĪS AUT SĒNĪS MĪLIBUS
PASSUUM ĪNTERESSET.

Ita diēs circiter^{VI} quīndecim iter fēcērunt

=for around fifteen days they did ~they marched for about fifteen
the journey in such a manner days in such a manner

I **habeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (HAB-), to have, hold, support, carry, wear; To hold, account, esteem, consider, regard a person or thing in any manner or as any thing; to think or believe a person or thing to be so or so

II **præsentiā, -æ**, F. (PRÆSENS), a being at hand, presence

III **rapīna, -æ**, F. (RAP-), an act of robbery, robbery, plunder; Esp. in pl., robbery, plundering, pillage, rapine

IV **pābulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (PABULOR), pasture; TRANSF., in milit. language, a collecting of fodder, a foraging

V **rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VI **circiter**, ADV. AND PRÆP. (CIRCUS), ADV. OF DURATION OR DISTANCE, WITH NUMERALS, about, not far from; PRÆP. WITH ACC., of time, about, near

utⁱ inter novissimum hostium agmen

=so that between the newest battle line of the enemy ~that between the enemy's rear and our van

et nostrum [agmen] primum nōn ampliusⁱⁱ ⁱⁱⁱ quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus^{iv} passuum^v interesset^{vi} ^{vii}

=and our first [battle line], there had been not more than five or six miles between ~and our first [battle line], there had been not more than five or six miles between

I Clauses of Result are often preceded by a word of Measure or Quality, *tam, tantus, ita, sic*, etc.; as, *tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri...praelium redintegrarent*, so great a change was brought about that our (men) renewed the fight (II.XXVII); *sic muniebatur, ut magnam...daret facultatem*, was so fortified that it afforded a great resource (I.XXXVIII)

II Adjectives and Participles are used as Substantives, frequently in the Plural, less often in the Singular; as, *veri* (Neuter) *simile, probable, lit, like truth* (II.XIII); *nostri*, our men (I.LII); *novissimis* (Masculine), for the rear, Lit. for those last (I.XXV); *sua*, their possessions (I.XI); *pro viso*, as seen, Lit. for (that which was) seen (I.XXII)

III **amplus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (AM- (FOR AMBI-) + PLE-), of large extent, great, ample, spacious, roomy; Of external splendor, great, handsome, magnificent, splendid, glorious; COMP., **amplius**, more, longer, further, besides—OF TIME, NUMBER, AND ACTION (WHILE *plus* DENOTES MORE IN QUANTITY, MEASURE, ETC.; *magis*, more, IN THE COMPARISON OF QUALITY, AND SOMETIMES OF ACTION; AND *potius*, RATHER, THE CHOICE BETWEEN DIFFERENT OBJECTS OR ACTS), CONSTR. ABSOL., WITH COMP. ABL., AND, IN THE CASE OF NUMERALS, LIKE *minus, plus, propius*, Q. V., WITHOUT *quam* WITH THE NOM., ACC., OR GEN., OR RARELY WITH THE ABL. COMP., OR WITH *quam*

IV **quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus**, ABL. OF COMP. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE IS OFTEN FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE (THIS IS A BRANCH OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE OBJECT WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS COMPARED IS THE STARTING-POINT FROM WHICH WE RECKON. THUS, "CICERO IS ELOQUENT"; BUT, STARTING FROM HIM WE COME TO CATO, WHO IS "MORE SO THAN HE.") SIGNIFYING THAN. §406

V PARTITIVE. GEN. §346II

VI **intersum, -fui, -futurus, -esse** (INTER + SUM), to be between, lie between

VII **utī...interesset**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

I.XVI



THE ÆDUANS DO NOT BRING THE PROMISED
GRAIN.



I.XVII.

INTERIM COTĪDIĒ CÆSAR ÆDUŌS FRŪMENTUM
QUOD ESSENT PŪBLICĒ POLLICITĪ FLĀGITĀRE.

Interim^I cotīdiē^{II} Cæsar Æduōs frūmentum^{III}

=meanwhile, Cæsar, daily ~meanwhile, Cæsar, daily // the
/keptdemanding/ (from) the Ædui for the corn
Ædui, the grain

quod essent pūblicē^{IV} polliciti^V

=which they had promised at the ~which they had promised in the
expense of the State (the name of their state
Æduans)

flāgitāre^{VI VII}

=kept demanding

~kept pressing

I **interim**, ADV. (INTER + I-), *meanwhile, in the meantime*

II **cotīdiē**, ADV. (QUOT- + DIES), *daily, every day*

III **Æduōs frūmentum**, TWO ACC.—DIRECT OBJ. AND SECONDARY OBJ. SOME VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING MAY TAKE TWO ACCUSATIVES, ONE OF THE PERSON (DIRECT OBJECT), AND THE OTHER OF THE THING (SECONDARY OBJECT). §396

IV ABL. OF PRICE. THE PRICE OF A THING IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE. NOTE. TO THIS HEAD IS TO BE REFERRED THE ABLATIVE OF THE PENALTY. §416

V **quod essent...polliciti**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

I.XVI.II.

NAM PROPTER FRĪGORA, QUOD GALLIA SUB SEPTENTRIŌNIBUS, UT ANTE DICTUM EST, POSITA EST, NŌN MODO FRŪMENTA IN AGRĪS MĀTŪRA NŌN ERANT, SED NĒ PĀBULĪ QUIDEM SATIS MAGNA CŌPIA SUPPETĒBAT: EŌ AUTEM FRŪMENTŌ QUOD FLŪMĪNE ARARE NĀVIBUS SUBVEXERAT PROPTEREĀ UTĪ MĪNUS POTERAT QUOD ITER AB ARARĪ HELVĒTIĪ ĀVERTERANT, Ā QUIBUS DISCĒDERE NŌLĒBAT.

Nam propterⁱ frīgoraⁱⁱ

=for, on account of the cold (weather)

~for, in consequence of the coldness

quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus

=because Gaul // under the 'constellation of stars in the north'

~as Gaul // toward the north

ut ante dictum est

=as was said before

~as previously said

posita estⁱⁱⁱ

=was placed

~was situated

VI HIST. INF. THE INFINITIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE IN NARRATION, AND TAKES A SUBJECT IN THE NOMINATIVE. NOTE. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS NOT STRICTLY HISTORICAL, BUT RATHER DESCRIPTIVE, AND IS NEVER USED TO STATE A MERE HISTORICAL FACT. IT IS RARELY FOUND IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. THOUGH OCCURRING IN MOST OF THE WRITERS OF ALL PERIODS, IT IS MOST FREQUENT IN THE HISTORIANS SALLUST, LIVY, TACITUS. IT DOES NOT OCCUR IN SUETONIUS. §463

VII **flāgitō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre** (FLAG-), to demand urgently, require, entreat, solicit, press, importune, dun

I **propter**, ADV. AND PREP. CONTR. FOR *propiter*, (FROM PROPE), ADV., near, hard by, at hand; Trop., in stating a cause, On account of, by reason of, from, for, because of

II **frīgus, -oris**, N. (FRIG-), cold, coldness, coolness, chilliness—IN PL.

nōn modo^I frūmenta in agrīs mātūra^{II} nōn erant

=not only was the grain in the fields not mature ~not only was the corn in the fields not ripe

sed nē pābuli^{III} quidem^{IV} satis magna cōpia suppetēbat

=but there was not even a sufficiently great supply of fodder in store ~but there was not in store a sufficiently large quantity even of fodder

eō autem frūmentō^V

=but // that corn ~however // the corn

III **pōnō, posuī, positus, -ere** (PORT- (PRO) + SINO), to put down, set down, put, place, set, fix, lay, deposit; To place, set, appoint a person as a watch or guard, accuser, etc.; Of troops and guards, to place, post, set, station, fix

I **mōdō**, ADV. (ORIG. ABL. OF MODUS), Qs., by measure, expressing, like *tantum*, a restriction of the idea, *only, merely, but*; Negatively, *non modo...sed (verum) etiam (et, or simply sed), not only...but also*

II **mātūrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. *mātūrior*, AND SUP. *mātūriissimus*, OR *mātūrrimus*, *ripe, mature*; *ripe, mature, of age, proper, fit, seasonable, timely*

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

IV **quidem**, ADV. Expressing emphasis or assurance, *assuredly, certainly, in fact, indeed*; In the phrase, *Ne...quidem, not even*—"ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem redimere potuisse"

V ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

quod flūmine^I Ararī nāvibus^{II III} subvexerat^{IV} propterea
 =which he had drawn by ships ~which he had conveyed in ships
 up the river Arar (Saone), for up the river Saone
 this reason

ūtī^V minus poterat
 =he was less able to use ~he was unable to use

quod iter ab Arare^{VI} Helvētī āverterant^{VII}
 =because the Helvetii // had ~because the Helvetii // had
 turned away (their) march from averted their march from the
 the Arar (Saone) Saone

ā quibus^{VIII} discēdere nōlēbat^{IX}
 =(the Helvetii) from whom he ~from whom he was unwilling
 was unwilling to depart to retire

I ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: I. THE WAY BY WHICH IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. NOTE. IN THIS USE THE WAY BY WHICH IS CONCEIVED AS THE MEANS OF PASSAGE. §429^I

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III nāvis, -is, f. (NA-), a ship

IV subvehō, -vexī, -vectus, -ere (SUB + VEHO), to bear, carry, convey, draw), to support and convey, bring up, transport, conduct, carry up

V ūtor, ūsus, uti, DEP., Prop., to use; WITH ABL. To make use of, employ; Of a form or style of speech, sentiment, etc., to make, adopt, employ

VI ab Arare, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VII āvertō, -tī, -sus, -ere (Ā + VERTŌ), to turn away, avert, turn off, remove; To avert, ward off, turn away

VIII ā quibus, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

IX nōlō, nōluī, —, nōlle (NE + VOLO), to wish...not, will...not, not to wish, to be unwilling

I.XVI.III.

DIEM EX DIĒ DŪCERE ÆDUĪ: CŌNFERRĪ, COMPORTĀRĪ,
ADESSE DĪCERE.

Diem ex diē [eum] dūcere^I Æduī

=day from day the Ædui kept ~the Ædui kept delaying from
leading [him (Cæsar)] (on) day to day

[frūmentum] cōnferri^{II} III

=that [the grain] was being ~that it was being collected
brought together

[id] comportāri^{IV} V

=that [it (the grain)] was being ~brought in
carried together

[id] adesse^{VI} VII

=that [it (the grain)] was present ~on the road
(at hand)

[Æduī] dicere^{VIII}

=[the Ædui] kept saying ~and saying

I HIST. INF. §463

II HIST. INF. §463; INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III cōnferō, contulī, conlātus, cōnferre (CŌN + FERRO), To bring together, collect, gather, unite, join; WITH se, to betake oneself, turn, have recourse

IV HIST. INF. §463; INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. §580

V comportō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (COM + PORTŌ), to bring in, carry together, collect, accumulate, gather

VI HIST. INF. §463; INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicere**. §580

VII adsum, adfui, adesse (AD + SUM), to be at, be present, be at hand

VIII HIST. INF. §463

I.XVI.IV.

VBI SĒ DIŪTIUS DŪCĪ ĪNTELLĒXIT ET DIEM ĪNSTĀRE, QUŌ DIĒ FRŪMENTUM MĪLITIBUS MĒTĪRĪ OPORTĒRET, CONVOCĀTĪS EŌRUM PRĪNCIPIBUS QUŌRUM MAGNAM CŌPIAM ĪN CASTRĪS HABĒBAT, ĪN HĪS DĪVICIĀCŌ ET LISCŌ, QUĪ SŪMMŌ MAGISTRĀTUĪ PRÆERAT, QUEM VERGOBRETUM APPELLANT ÆDUĪ, QUĪ CREĀTUR ANNUUS ET VĪTÆ NECISQUE ĪN SUŌS HABET POTESTĀTEM, GRAVITER EŌS ACCŪSAT QUOD, CŪM NEQUE EMĪ NEQUE EX AGRĪS SŪMĪ POSSIT, TAM NECESSĀRĪŌ TEMPORE, TAM PROPĪNQUĪS HOSTIBUS, AB EĪS NŌN SUBLEVĒTUR; PRÆERTIM CŪM MAGNĀ EX PARTE EŌRUM PRECIBUS ADDŪCTUS BELLUM SUSCĒPERIT, MULTŌ ETIAM GRAVIUS QUOD SIT DĒSTITŪTUS QUERITUR.

Vbi

=*when*~*when*sē diŭtius dūcī¹=*that he was being lead (on) too long* ~*that he was put off too long*

intellēxit

=*he understood*~*he saw*

I *se...dūcī*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *intellēxit*. §580

et diem instāre^{I II}

=and that the day was drawing nigh ~and that the day was approaching

quō diē^{III} frūmentum militibus mētīrī^{IV} oportēret^V

=the day on which he ought to measure out the grain for (his) soldiers ~on which he ought to distribute the corn to his soldiers

convocātīs^{VI} eōrum prīncipibus^{VII}

=with their principal leaders ~having called together their <having been> called together chiefs

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II instō, -stitī, -statūrus, -āre (IN + STŌ), to stand upon, take a position; ABSOL., to draw nigh, approach; to impend, threaten

III quō diē, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV mētior, mēnsus, -īrī, DEP. (MA-), to measure, mete; To measure out, deal out, distribute

V quō diē...oportēret, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §583

VI convocō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (CON + VOCŌ), to call together, convoke, assemble, summon

VII convocātīs...prīncipibus, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs^I habēbat

=(the principle leaders) of whom ~of whom he had a great
he was having a great number in his camp
abundance in (his) camp

in hīs

=among those (men)

~among them

Dīviciācō et Liscō^{II} ^{III}

=Divitiacus and Liscus

~Divitiacus and Liscus

quī summō^{IV} magistrātūī^V præerat^{VI}

=who presided over the ~who was invested with the
uppermost magistracy sumpreme magistracy

quem Vergobretum^{VII} ^{VIII} appellant Æduī

=whom the Ædui call the ~whom the Ædui style the
Vergobretus Vergobretus

I **castrum, -i**, N. (KINDRED WITH CASA), IN SG., any fortified place, a castle, fort, fortress; IN PL., **castra, -ōrum**, N. Lit., several soldiers' tents situated together; hence, a military camp, an encampment; among the Romans a square (quadrata)

II **Dīviācō et Liscō**, IN APPPOSITION WITH **principibus** AND THEREFORE PART OF THE ABL. ABS.

III **Liscus, -i**, M., a prominent Æduan

IV **summus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP., uppermost, highest, topmost; Of rank or degree, highest, greatest, loftiest, first, supreme, best, utmost, extreme

V **summō magistrātūī**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præerat**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VI **præsum, -fuī, esse** (PRÆ + SUM), to be before, be set over, preside over, rule, have charge of, command, superintend

VII **quem Vergobretum**, PRED. ACC. VERBS OF NAMING, CHOOSING, APPOINTING, MAKING, ESTEEMING, SHOWING, AND THE LIKE, MAY TAKE A PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE ALONG WITH THE DIRECT OBJECT. §393

VIII **Vergobretus, -i**, M., vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Æduans

quī creātur^I annuus^{II}

=(and) who is brought forth ~and who is elected annually
annually

et vītæ^{III} necisque^{IV} in suōs habet potestātem^V

=and (whom) has the power of ~and has power of life or death
both life and of death over his over his countrymen
own (men)

graviter^{VI} eōs accūsāt^{VII}

=he severely calls them to ~he severely reprimands them
account

quod

=because

~because

I **creō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (CER-), to bring forth, produce, make, create, beget, give origin to; In partic., to make or create for any jurisdiction or office, i.e. to choose, elect

II **annuus, -a, -us**, ADJ. (ANNUS), of a year, lasting a year; That returns, recurs, or happens every year, yearly, annual

III **vīta, -æ**, F. (VIV-), life

IV **vītæ necisque**, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

V **potestās, -ātis**, F. (POTIS), Lit., in gen., ability, power of doing any thing; Power, ability, possibility, opportunity—"potestatem sui facere," to give an opportunity of fighting with one

VI **graviter**, ADV. WITH COMP. *gravius*, AND SUP. *gravissimē* (GRAVIS), weightily, heavily, ponderously; Vehemently, strongly, violently; Fig., vehemently, violently, deeply, severely, harshly, unpleasantly, disagreeably, sadly

VII **accūsō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (AD + CAUSA), to call to account, make complaint against, reproach, blame, accuse

cum [frumentum] neque emī^I neque ex agrīs sūmī possit^{II}

=when [the grain] could neither be able to be bought nor to be taken up from the fields ~and when [corn] could neither be bought nor taken from the fields

tam necessāriō^{III} ^{IV} tempore^V

=at such a pressing time ~in such a time of need

tam propinquīs^{VI} hostibus^{VII}

=with the enemy <being> so near ~when the enemy were so close at hand

I **emō, emī, emptus, -ere (EM-), to buy, purchase**

II **cum...possit, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

III **necessario tempore**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

IV **necessarius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NECESSE), *unavoidable, inevitable, indispensable, pressing, needful, requisite, necessary, compulsory* —“tam necessario tempore,” *time of need*; TRANSF., connected with another by natural or moral ties (of blood, friendship, clientship), *belonging, related, connected, bound*—SUBST., **necessāriō, -i**, M., *a relation, relative, kinsman, connection, friend, client, patro*

V ABL. OF TIME WHEN. §423

VI **propinquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (PROPE), *near, nigh, neighboring*; SUBST., M. AND F., *a relation, relative, kinsman, kinswoman*

VII **propinquīs hostibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

ab eīs^I nōn sublevētur^{II}

=he is not supported by those ~he is not assisted by them
(men)

**præsertim^{III} cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus^{IV V} adductus
bellum suscēperit^{VI}**

=especially since he, <having been> led, from a great part by the entreaties of those (men), he had undertaken the war

multō etiam gravius^{VII}

=(and) even more grave by much ~yet much more bitterly

quod sit dēstitūtus^{VIII}

=because he had been betrayed ~as he had been forsaken

I **ab eīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES **ā** OR **ab**) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS **occīsus gladiō**, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, **occīsus ab hoste**, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

II **sublevō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SUB + LEVŌ), to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve

III **præsertim**, ADV. (SER-), especially, chiefly, principally, particularly

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **prex, precis**, F. (PREC-), a prayer, request, entreat

VI **cum...suscēperit**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

VII **multō...gravius**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

VIII **dēstituō, -ui, -ūtus, -ere** (DE + STATUO), to set down, set forth, put away, bring forward, leave alone; Fig., to forsake, abandon, desert, betray

queritur^{I II}

=*he complains*

~he complained

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRÆSENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

II **queror, questus, -ī**, DEP. (QVES-), *to express grief, complain, lament, bewail*

I.XVII

LISCUS DISCLOSES THE TREACHERY.

I.XVII.I.



UM DĒMUM LISCUS ŌRĀTIŌNE CÆSARIS
ADDUCTUS, QUOD ANTEĀ TACUERAT
PRŌPŌNIT: ESSE NŌN NŪLLŌS, QUŌRUM
AUCTŌRITĀS APUD PLĒBEM PLŪRIMUM
VALEAT, QUĪ PRĪVĀTIM PLŪS POSSINT QUAM IPSĪ
MAGISTRĀTŪS.

Tum dēmum^I Liscus ōrātiōne^{II} Cæsaris adductus

=then at last, Liscus, led by a ~then at length Liscus, moved by
speech of Cæsar Cæsar's speech

quod antea^{III} tacuerat^{IV}

=(the thing) which he had before ~what he had previously kept
concealed secret

I **dēmum**, ADV. (DE) WITH SUP. ending, at length, at last, not till then, just, precisely, only; WITH tum, then at length, then indeed, not till then

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **anteā**, ADV., before, earlier, formerly, aforesaid, previously

IV **taceō, -cui, -citus, -ēre** (TAC-), to be silent, not speak, say nothing, hold one's peace

prōpōnit^I

=(he) puts forth

~says

esse nōn nūllōs^{II}

=that there are not none

~that there are some

quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimū^{III} valeat^{IV V}

=of whose authority among the common folk has much strength

~whose influences with the people is very great

quī prīvātīm^{VI} plūs possint^{VII} quam ipsī magistrātūs

=who, in a private capacity, are more able than the magistrates themselves

~who, though private men, have more power than the magistrates themselves

I prōpōnō, posuī, positus, -ere (PRŌ + PŌNŌ), to put forth, set forth, lay out, place before, expose to view, display; To point out, declare, represent, report, say, relate, set forth, publish

II esse nōn nūllōs, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prōpōnit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III multus, -a, -um, ADJ., PL. WITH SUBST. OR WITH ADJ. USED AS SUBST, MANY, A GREAT NUMBER; ADV., **plurīmum**, very much indeed

IV valeō, -uī, -itūrus, -ēre (VAL-), to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able; To have power, be valid, be effective, have influence, avail, prevail, be strong, succeed

V quōrum...valeat, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VI prīvātīm ADV. (PRIVATUS), apart from State affairs, as an individual, in private, privately, in a private capacity

VII quī...possint, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

I.XVII.II.

HŌS SĒDITIONSĀ ATQUE IMPROBĀ ŌRĀTIŌNE
MŪLTITŪDĪNEM DĒTERRĒRE NĒ FRŪMENTŪM
CŌNFERANT QUOD DĒBEANT: PRĒSTĀRE, SĪ IAM
PRĪNCIPĀTŪM GALLIÆ OBTĪNĒRE NŌN POSSĒT,
GALLŌRŪM QUAM RŌMĀNŌRŪM IMPERIA PERFERRE;
NEQUE DUBITĀRE QUĪN, SĪ HELVĒTIŌS SUPERĀVERĪNT
RŌMĀNĪ, ŪNĀ CŪM RELIQUĀ GALLIĀ ÆDUĪS LĪBERTĀTEM
SĪNT ĒREPTŪRĪ.

Hōs sēditiosā^I atque improbā^{II} ōrātiōne^{III} multitudinem dēterrēre^{IV}

^V

=that these (men) by seditions and violent speech are deterring the populace
~that these by seditions and violent speech are deterring the populace

nē frūmentum cōnferant^{VI}

=that they not bring the corn together
~from contributing the corn

I **sēditiosus**, ADJ. WITH SUP. (SEDITIO), *full of discord, factious, turbulent, mutinous, seditious*

II **improbus**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP (IN + PROBUS), *not good, bad, wicked, reprobate, abandoned, vile, base, impious, bold, shameless, wanton*

III **ōrātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **hōs...dēterrēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prōpōnit**. §580

V **dēterreō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (DĒ + TERREO), *to frighten off, deter, discourage, prevent, hinder*

VI **nē...cōnferant**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

quod dēbeant^I

=*which they ought (to supply)*

~*which they ought to supply*

præstāre^{II}

=(*it*) *is preferable*

~*it were better*

sī iam prīncipātum Galliæ obtinēre nōn possent^{III}

=(*by telling them*) *that, if they were no longer able to hold fast the supremacy of Gaul*

~[*by telling them*] *that, if they can not any longer retain the supremacy of Gaul*

Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre^{IV}

=*to bear through the government of the Gauls than (the government) of Romans*

~*to submit to the government of Gauls than of Romans*

neque [se] dubitāre^V [*dēbeant*]

=*nor [ought] [they] to doubt*

~*nor ought they to doubt that*

quīn

=*not, that*

~*not, that*

I *quod dēbeant*, REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *ōrātiōne*. §580

III *sī...possent*, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

IV *perferō, -tulī, -lātus, -ferre* (PER + FERŌ), *to bear through, bring home; To bear, support, endure to the end; In gen., to bear, suffer, put up with, brook, submit to, endure*

V *dubitō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre* (DUBIUS), *to waver in opinion, be uncertain, be in doubt, be perplexed, doubt, question; de quā (legione) non dubitaret, had full confidence*

sī Helvētiōs superāverint^I Rōmānī

*=if the Romans should overcome ~if the Romans should
the Helvetii overpower the Helvetii*

ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Æduīs^{III} libertātem^{IV} sint ēreptūrī^V

*=they (the Romans) would tear ~they would wrest their freedom
out [their] freedom from the from the Ædui together with the
Ædui together with remaining remainder of Gaul
Gaul*

I.XVII.III.

AB EISDEM NOSTRA CŌNSILIA QUÆQUE IN CASTRIS
GERANTUR HOSTIBUS ĒNŪNTIĀRĪ: HŌS Ā SĒ CERCĒRĪ
NŌN POSSE.

I sī...superāverint, PROTASIS OF FUT, MORE VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II superō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (SUPERUS), *to go over, rise above, overtop, surmount, transcend*; In partic., in milit. lang., *to overcome, subdue, conquer, vanquish*

III ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

IV libertās, -ātis, F. (LIBER), *freedom, liberty, absence of restraint, permission*

V quīn...sint ēreptūrī, quīn CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUĪN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NŌN DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NŌN EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558f

Ab eisdem^I nostra cōsilia

=by these (very) (men), (said he),
our plans

~by these very men, [said he],
are our plans

quæque in castris gerantur^{II}

=and whatever (things) were
carried (out) in the camp

~and whatever is done in the
camp

hostibus enūtiārī^{III}

=disclosed to the enemy

~disclosed to the enemy

hōs ā sē^{IV} cōercērī^V nōn posse^{VI}

=that they were not able to be
restrained by him (Liscus)

~that they could not be
restrained by him

I.XVII.IV.

QUIN ETIAM, QUOD NECESSARIAM REM COACTUS
CÆSARĪ ENŪTIĀRIT, INTELLEGERE SĒSĒ QUANTŌ ID
CUM PERICULŌ FĒCERIT, ET OB EAM CAUSAM QUAM DIŪ
POTUERIT TACUISSE.

I ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES Ā OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

II REL. CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *prōpōnit*. §580

IV ā sē, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V cōercēō- -cuī-, -citus-, -ēre (COM- + ARCEO), to enclose on all sides, hold together, surround, encompass; Morally, to hold (some fault, some passion, etc., or the erring or passionate person) in check, to curb, restrain, tame, correct, etc.

VI hōs...posse, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *enūtiārī*. §580

Quīn etiam

=yet

~nay more

quod necessāriam rem coāctus Cæsari ēnūntiā[ve]rit^I

=that he, compelled, announced the unavoidable situation to Caesar ~that though compelled by necessity, he had disclosed the matter to Caesar

intelligere sēsē^{II}

=that he (Liscus) was understanding ~he was well aware

quantō^{III} id cum periculō^{IV} fēcerit^V

=with how much danger he did it ~at how great a risk he had done it

et

=and

~and

I **quod** CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. II. CAUSAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, AND QUANDŌ TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, LIKE ANY OTHER DEPENDENT CLAUSE (SEE §580). §540 & §583

II **intelligere sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prōpōnit**. §580

III **quantus, -a, -um**, PRONOM. ADJ. (CA-), RELAT., CORREL. WITH *tantus*, of what size, how much, AS INTERROG OR ADJ., *how great? how much? of what amount*

IV **quantō...cum periculō**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

V **quantō...fēcerit**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

ob eam causam

=for that reason

~for that reason

quam^I diū potuerit^{II}

=how long he was able

~as long as he could

[se] tacuisse^{III}

=*[he (Liscus)] had said been*
silent

~he had been passed over in
silence

I **quam**, ADV. (QUI), RELAT., *in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much*; WITH ELLIPS. OF *tam*, *as much as, to the extent that, as...as*; In partic. In comparisons, *as, than*

II **quam...potuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. DUM, DŌNEC, AND QUOAD, AS LONG AS, TAKE THE INDICATIVE. §555 & §583

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegere**. §580

I.XVIII



CÆSAR LEARNS THAT DUMNORIX IS A TRAITOR.



I.XVIII.I.



CÆSAR HĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE LISCĪ DUMNORĪGEM
DĪVICIĀCĪ FRĀTREM DĒSIGNĀRĪ SENTIĒBAT;
SED, QUOD PLŪRIBUS PRÆSENTIBUS EĀS RĒS
IACTĀRĪ NŌLĒBAT, CELERITER CONCILIUM
DĪMITTIT, LISCŪM RETĪNET.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

hāc ōrātiōne^I Liscī Dumnorīgem Dīviciācī frātrem dēsignārī^{II}

=that by this speech of Liscus,
Dumnorix, the brother of
Divitiacus, was marked out

~that by this speech of Liscus,
Dumnorix, the brother of
Divitiacus, was pointed out

sentiēbat^{III}

=was discerning by sense

~perceived

I **hāc ōrātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **dēsignō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DE + SIGNŌ), to mark out, point out, trace, designate, define; Fig., to point out, mark, denote, designate, describe, represent

III **sentiō, sēnsī, sēnsus, -ire** (SENT-), to discern by sense, feel, hear, see, perceive, be sensible of

sed

=but

~but

quod

=that

~as

plūribus praesentibus^I=with several men <being> ~while so many were present
presenteās rēs iactārī^{II} nōlēbat=he was not willing that those ~he was unwilling that these
things be thrown about (in matters should be discussed
conversation)celeriter^{III} concilium^{IV} dīmīttit^V=he quickly departs the ~he speedily dismisses the
conference councilLiscum retinet^{VI VII}

=(but) he holds back Liscus ~but detains Liscus

I **plūribus praesentibus**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II **iacto**, -āvi, -ātum, -āre, to throw, cast, hurl; Lit.—“semen,” to scatter; To discuss, mention, intimate, pronounce, throw out, utter, speak, say, name, propose a thing

III **celeriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CELER), quickly, swiftly, speedily, in haste, immediately, promptly

IV **concilium**, -i, N. (COM- + CAL-), a meeting, rendezvous; A collection of people, meeting, assembly

V **dīmīttō**, -mīsī, -missus, -ere (DĪ + MITTŌ), to send different ways, send out, send forth, send about, scatter, distribute; To separate a multitude, to break up, dissolve; and subjectively, to dismiss (from one's self), to discharge, disban

I.XVIII.II.

QUÆRIT EX SŌLŌ EA QUÆ IN CONVĒNTŪ DĪXERAT.

Quærit^I ex [ea] sŏlŏ^{II} ea

=he (Cæsar) sought from [him]
<being> alone those (things)

~he inquires from him when
alone, about those things

quæ in conventū^{III} dīxerat

=which he had said in the
meeting

~which he had said in the
meeting

I.XVIII.III.

DĪCIT LĪBERIUS ATQUE AUDĀCIUS.

Dīcit liberius^{IV} atque audācius

=he (Liscus) speaks more freely
and boldly

~he [Liscus] speaks more
unreservedly and boldly

VI **dimittit, Liscum retinet**, ASYNDETON. IN THE STRUCTURE OF THE PERIOD, THE FOLLOWING RULES ARE TO BE OBSERVED: III. IN COÖRDINATE CLAUSES, THE COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS ARE FREQUENTLY OMITTED (ASYNDETON). IN SUCH CASES THE CONNECTION IS MADE CLEAR BY SOME ANTITHESIS INDICATED BY THE POSITION OF WORDS. §601^{III}

VII **retineō, -tinuī, -tentus, -ēre** (RE- + TENEŌ), *to hold back, keep back, keep, detain, retain, restrain*

I **quærō, -sivī, -situs, -ere** (QVÆS-), *to seek, look for; To seek to learn, make inquiry, ask, inquire, interrogate*

II **ex sŏlŏ, quærit** TAKING THE ABL. WITH PRÆP. SOME VERBS OF ASKING AND TEACHING MAY TAKE TWO ACCUSATIVES, ONE OF THE PERSON (DIRECT OBJECT), AND THE OTHER OF THE THING (SECONDARY OBJECT). I. SOME VERBS OF ASKING TAKE THE ABLATIVE OF THE PERSON WITH A PREPOSITION INSTEAD OF THE ACCUSATIVE. SO, ALWAYS, PETŌ (AB), QUÆRŌ (EX, AB, DĒ); USUALLY POSCŌ (AB), FLĀGITŌ (AB), POSTULŌ (AB), AND OCCASIONALLY OTHERS. §396^I

III **conventus, -ūs**, M. (COM- + BA-, VEN-), *a meeting, assembly, throng*

IV **liber, -era, -erum**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (LIB-), *free, unrestricted, unrestrained, unimpeded, unembarrassed, unshackled; Hence, ADV., libĕrē, freely, unrestrictedly, without let or hinderance; frankly, openly, bold*

LXVIII.IV.

EADEM SĒCRĒTŌ AB ALIIS QUÆRIT; REPERIT ESSE VĒRA:
 IPSUM ESSE DUMNORĪGEM, SUMMĀ AUDĀCIĀ, MAGNĀ
 APUD PLĒBEM PROPTER LĪBERĀLITĀTEM GRĀTIĀ,
 CUPIDUM RĒRUM NOVĀRUM.

Eadem sēcrētō^I ab aliis^{II} quærit

=he seeks in secret the same
 (things) from the other (men)

~he [Cæsar] makes inquiries on
 the same points privately of
 others

reperit^{III}

=(and) he discovers

~and discovered

[ea] esse vĕra^{IV V}

=that [those things] (Lucis'
 statements) are true

~that it is all true

I **sēcrētum, -ī**, N. (PPP. N. OF SECERNO), a hidden thing, mystery, secret; A hidden place, hiding-place, retirement, solitude, retreat

II **ab aliis, quærit** TAKING THE ABL. WITH PRÆP. §396i

III **reperiō, repperi, repertus, -ire** (PAR-), to = again, find, meet with, find out, discover; Fig., to find, find out, discern, get, procure, obtain

IV **vĕrus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (VEL-), true, real, actual, genuine; **vĕrō**, in truth, in fact, certainly, truly, to be sure, surely, assuredly; TRANSF., AS A STRONGLY CORROBORATIVE ADVERSATIVE PARTICLE, but in fact, but indeed, however (always placed after a word)

V **esse vĕra**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

ipsum esse^I Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā^{II}

=that Dumnorix was the very (man), (a man) with the highest daring ~that Dumnorix is the person, a man of the highest daring

magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitatem^{III} grātiā^{IV}, cupidum^V
rērum novārum^{VI VII}

=(he is) in great favor among the common people on account of (his) liberality; (he is a man) eager of new situations ~in great favor with the people on account of his liberality, a man eager for a revolution

I **ipsum esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **summā audāciā**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. IN EXPRESSIONS OF QUALITY THE GENITIVE OR THE ABLATIVE MAY OFTEN BE USED INDIFFERENTLY; BUT PHYSICAL QUALITIES ARE OFTENER DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE. §415

III **liberālitās, -ātis**, F. (LIBERALIS), a characteristic of a freeman, ingenuousness, frankness, affability; In partic., generosity, liberality

IV **magnā...grātiā**, ABL. OF QUALITY. §415

V **cupidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CVP-), longing, desiring, desirous, eager, zealous, wishing, loving, fond; Hence, **cūpidē**, ADV., eagerly, in a good and bad sense, zealously, passionately, vehemently, ardently, warmly, partially, etc.

VI **rērum novārum**, GEN. WITH ADJ. **cupidum**. ADJECTIVES REQUIRING AN OBJECT OF REFERENCE GOVERN THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE INCLUDE: ADJECTIVES DENOTING DESIRE, KNOWLEDGE, MEMORY, FULNESS, POWER, SHARING, GUILT, AND THEIR OPPOSITES GOVERN THE GENITIVE. §349¹

VII **novus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NV-), new, not old, young, fresh, recent—*novae res* signifies political innovations, a revolution; TRANSF., IN THE SUP., **nōvissimus, -a, -um**, the latest, last, hindermost, extreme—So AS SUBST., **nōvissimi, -orum**, the rear of an army, the soldiers in the last line

I.XVIII.V.

COMPLŪRĒS ANŅŌS PORTŌRIA RELIQUAQVE OMŅIA
ÆDUŌRŪM VECTĪGĀLIA PARVŌ PRETIŌ REDĒMPTA
HABĒRE, PROPTEREĀ QUOD ILLŌ LICENTE CONTRĀ
LICĒRĪ AUDEAT NĒMŌ.

Complūrēs annōs portōria^I

=that for several years // the
tariffs

~that for a great many years //
tariffs

reliquaque omnia Æduōrum vectīgālia^{II} parvō pretiō^{III} ^{IV}
redēmta^V habēre^{VI}

=(he) had redeemed /the tariffs/
and all the remaining taxes of
the Ædui at a small cost

~he has been in the habit of
redeeming // and all the other
taxes of the Ædui at a small cost

proptereā quod

=on account of that because

~because

I **portōrium, -ī**, N. (PAR-), a tax, toll, duty, impost, custom, tariff

II **vectīgālis, -e**, ADJ. (VECTIGAL), of imposts, of taxes

III **parvō pretiō**, ABL. OF PRICE. THE PRICE OF A THING IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE. NOTE. TO THIS HEAD IS TO BE REFERRED THE ABLATIVE OF THE PENALTY. §416

IV **pretium, -ī**, N. (PRA-), a price, money value, value in exchange —“vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere,” for little money, cheaply (I.XVIII.V)

V **redēmtō —, —, -āre** (REDIMO), to ransom, redeem

VI INDIR. DISC. §580

illō licente^{I II III}

=with that (man) (Dumnorix) ~when he bids
bidding

contrā^{IV} [eum] **licērī audeat**^{V VI} **nēmō**^{VII}

=no one would dare to bid ~no one dares to bid against him
against [him]

I liceor, licitus, -ērī, DEP. (LIC-), *to bid, make a bid*

II During the collection of taxes, an individual or group bids to collect taxes, and the state collects from the highest bidder in advance; the winner pays the bid and afterward collects taxes in the hope of collecting extra as profit; without a rival Dumnorix allegedly bids low and therefore a low level of taxes from the people

III illō licente, ABL. ABS. §419

IV contrā, ADV. AND PRÆP., ADV. of position, *in opposition, opposite, face to face, in front, on the other side*; PRÆP., WITH ACC. (IN PROSE BEFORE ITS CASE, EXCEPT SOMETIMES A REL. PRON.), of position, *before, against, facing, towards, opposite to, contrary to, over against; Against, in opposition to, as the opponent of*

V SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIC. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §540 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VI audeō, ausus sum, -ēre (AV-), *to venture, dare, be bold, dare to do, risk*

VII nēmō, M. AND F. (NE + HOMO), *no man, no one, nobody*

I.XVIII.VI.

HIS RĒBUS ET SUAM REM FAMILIAREM AUXISSE ET FACULTATES AD LARGIENDUM MAGNAS COMPARASSE; MAGNUM NUMERUM EQUITATUS SUO SUMPTU SEMPER ALERE ET CIRCUM SE HABERE; NEQUE SOLUM DOMI SED ETIAM APUD FINITIMAS CIVITATES LARGITER POSSE ATQUE HUIUS POTENTIAE CAUSA MATREM IN BITURIGIBUS HOMINI ILLIC NOBILISSIMO AC POTENTISSIMO COLLOCASSE, IPSUM EX HELVETIIS UXOREM HABERE, SOROREM EX MATRE ET PROPINQUAS SUAS NUPTUM IN ALIAS CIVITATES COLLOCASSE.

His rebus^I [eum] et suam rem familiarem^{II} auxisse^{III} ^{IV} et [eum] facultates^V ad largiendum^{VI} ^{VII} magnas comparasse^{VIII}

=by these circumstances [he] ~by these means he has both both has both increased his own augmented his own private personal situation and [he] property, and obtained great procured great capabilities for means for giving largesses <the purpose of> bribing

I **his rebus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **familiaris, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (FAMILIA), of a house, of a household, belonging to a family, household, domestic, private

III INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **augeō, auxī, auctus, -ēre** (AVG-), to increase, augment, enlarge, spread, extend

V **facultās, -ātis**, F. (FACILIS), capability, possibility, power, means, opportunity, skill, ability

VI **largior, -itus, -irī**, DEP. (LARGUS), to give bountifully, lavish, bestow, dispense, distribute, impart; To give largesses, bribe

VII **ad largiendum**, ACC. OF THE GERUND EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū^{I II III} semper alere^{IV V}

=a great number of cavalry // ~that he maintains constantly at
that (he) (Dumnorix) always his own expense // a great
feeds at his own expense number of cavalry

et circum sē habēre^{VI}

=and (he) (Dumnorix) has ~and keeps about his own
around (himself) person

neque solum domī^{VII} sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitātēs largiter^{VIII}
posse^{IX}

=(and) that not only at home, ~and that not only at home, but
but even among the neighboring even among the neighboring
states, (he) is greatly able states, he had great influence

I **sūmptus, -ūs, m.** (SUMO), *outlay, expense, cost, charge*

II **suō sūmptū**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN
RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III ABL. OF PRICE. §416

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

V **alō, alui, altus, -ere** (AL-), *to feed, nourish, support, sustain, maintain*

VI INDIR. DISC. §580

VII LOC. CASE. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE
RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE WHERE, BY THE LOCATIVE.
§427

VIII WIKT. **largiter**, ADV., *in abundance*

IX INDIR. DISC. §580

[sē] hominī illic^I nōbilissimō ac potentissimō^{II III} collocāsse^{IV V}

=*[he (Dumnorix)] had placed ~has given in marriage // to a together in marriage // to the man the most noble and most most noble and tue most able influential there man there*

atque huius potentiae^{VI VII} causā^{VIII} mātrem^{IX} in Biturīgibus^X

=*and with the motive of this ~and for the sake of power // (his) mother into the strengthening this influence // his mother among the Bituriges*

-
- I **illic**, ADV. (ILLI + CE), *in that place, yonder, there*
- II **potēns, -entis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PART. OF *possum*), *able, mighty, strong, powerful, potent; Strong, mighty, powerful, efficacious, potent, influential*
- III **hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **conlocāsse**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRÆ., PRŌ., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM., ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370
- IV INDIR. DISC. §580
- V **locō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (LOCUS), *to place, put, lay, set, dispose, arrange; To place in marriage, give away, give in marriage, marry*
- VI **huius potentiae**, GEN. CONSTRUCTION DEPENDENT ON **causā**. PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ, GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF; ERGŌ, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE INSTAR, LIKE; ALSO WITH PRIDIĒ, THE DAY BEFORE; POSTRIDIĒ, THE DAY AFTER; TENUS, AS FAR AS. §359
- VII **potentia, -æ**, F. (POTEN), *might, force, power; Fig., political power, authority, sway, influence, eminence*
- VIII **huius potentiae causā, causā**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404
- IX **māter, -tris**, F. (MA-), *a mother*
- X **Biturīgēs, -um**, M. PL., *a people in Central Gaul*

ipsum ex Helvētiīs^I uxōrem^{II} habēre^{III}

=that (he) himself is having a wife from the Helvetii ~that he has himself taken a wife from among the Helvetii

sorōrem^{IV} ex mātrem^V et propinquās suās nūptum^{VI} VII in aliās cīvitatēs collocāsse^{VIII}

=and (he) (Orgatorix) had placed together (his) sister from (her) mother (the mother's side of the family) and (he placed together) his own (female) relations to marry into other states ~and has given his sister by the mother's side and his female relations in marriage into other states

I. XVIII. VII.

FAVĒRE ET CŪPERE HELVĒTIIS PROPTER EAM
ADFĪNITĀTEM, ŌDISSE ETIAM SUŌ NŌMINE CÆSAREM ET
RŌMĀNŌS, QUOD EŌRŪM ADVENTŪ POTĒNTIA EIUS
DĒMĪNŪTA ET DĪVICIĀCŪS FRĀTER ĪN ANTĪQŪM
LOCŪM GRĀTIÆ ATQŪE HONŌRIS SIT RESTITŪTUS.

I **ex Helvētiīs**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

II **uxor, -ōris**, F. a wife, spouse, consort

III **ipsum...habēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **soror, -ōris**, F. a sister

V **ex mātrem**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §403

VI ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

VII **nūbō, nūpsī, nūptum, -ere** (NEB-), to veil oneself, be married, marry, wed

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

Favēre^I et cupere^{II III} Helvētiis^{IV} propter eam adfinitatem^V

=that (he) favors and that (he) desires (success) to the Helvetii on account of that alliance by marriage ~that he favors and wishes well to the Helvetii on account of this connection

ōdisse^{VI VII} etiam suō nōmine^{VIII} Cæsarem et Rōmānōs

=(and) that (he,) in his own name, hated even Cæsar and the Romans ~and that he hates Cæsar and the Romans, by his own account

quod eōrum adventū^{IX} potentia eius dēminūta [sit]^X

=that by their arrival his power was diminished ~because by their arrival his power was diminished

-
- I **faveō, fāvī, fautūrus, -ēre** (FAV-), to be favorable, be well disposed, be inclined towards, favor, promote, befriend, countenance, protect
- II **favēre et cupere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperit**. §580
- III **cupiō, -īvī, -itus, -ere** (CVP-), to long for, desire, wish; Pregn., to be well disposed, be favorable or inclined to one, to favor, to wish well, to be interested for, etc.
- IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **favēre**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367
- V **affinitas, -ātis**, F. (AFFINIS), Relationship or alliance by marriage, esp. between a father and son-in-law
- VI INDIR. DISC. §580
- VII **ōdī, -ōsūrus, -ōdisse**, DEFECT. (OD-), to hate
- VIII **suō nōmine**, ABL. OF SPEC. §418
- IX CAN BE ABL. OF CAUSE. §404, OR ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- X **dēminuō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere** (DE + MINUO), to make smaller, lessen, diminish

et Dīviciācus frāter in antīquum^I locum grātiæ atque honōris^{II} sit
restitūtus^{III} ^{IV}

=and (his) brother, Divitiacus, ~and his brother, Divitiacus,
restored into the old place of influence and dignity restored to his former position
of influence and dignity

I.XVIII.VIII.

SĪ QUID ACCIDAT RŌMĀNĪS, SUMMAM IN SPEM PER
HELVĒTIŌS RĒGNĪ OBTĪNENDĪ VENĪRE: IMPERIŌ POPULĪ
RŌMĀNĪ NŌN MODO DĒ RĒGNŌ SED ETIAM DĒ EĀ
QUAM HABEAT GRĀTIĀ DĒSPĒRĀRE.

SĪ quid^V accidat^{VI} Rŏmānīs^{VII}

=that, if anything should happen to the Romans ~that, if any thing should
happen to the Romans

-
- I **antīquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (ANTE), *ancient, former, of old times*
- II **honor, -is**, M., *call, honor, repute, esteem* in which a person or thing is held
- III **quod...sit restitūtus**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §540 & §583
- IV **restituō, -ūī, -ūtus, -ere** (RE- + STATUO), *to set up again, replace, restore, reconstruct, rebuild, revive, renew, reform, rearrange; In partic., to give back, deliver up, return, restore a thing belonging to a person or place; Trop., to restore to a former condition, to re-establish, etc.*
- V **sī quid** = *sī aliquid*
- VI **sī...accidat**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589
- VII DAT. WITH COMP. V. **accidat**. §370

summam in spem per Helvētīōs rēgnī obtinendī^I venīre^{II}

=that (he) comes into the highest hope of obtaining kingship through <the means of> the Helvetii ~he entertains the highest hope of gaining the sovereignty by means of the Helvetii

imperio^{III} populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō sed etiam dē eā

=(but that) in (under) the power of the Roman people // not only concerning the throne but also from that /influence/ ~but that under the government of the Roman people // not only of royalty, but even of that

quam habeat^{IV}

=which he has

~which he already has

grātiā dēspērāre^V VI

=influence // he despairs

~influence // he despairs

I.XVIII.IX.

REPERIĒBAT ETIAM ÎN QUÆRENDŌ CÆSAR, QUOD PRÆLIUM EQUESTRE ADVERSUM PAUCĪS ANTE DIĒBUS ESSET FACTUM, ÎNITIUM EIUS FUGÆ FACTUM Ā DUMNORĪGE ATQUE EIUS EQUITIBUS (NAM EQUITĀTUĪ QUEM AUXILIŌ CÆSARĪ ÆDUĪ MĪSERANT DUMNORĪX PRÆERAT): EŌRUM FUGĀ RELIQUUM ESSE EQUITĀTUM PERTERRITUM.

I **rēgnī obtinendī**, OBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

II INDIR. DISC. §580

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV **quam habeat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **dēspērō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DE + SPĒRŌ), *to be hopeless, have no hope, despair of, give up*

Reperiēbat etiam in quærendō^I II Cæsar

=Cæsar was finding too, on ~Cæsar discovered too, on
inquiring inquiring

quod prœlium equestre^{III} adversum paucīs ante diēbus^{IV} esset
factum^V

=<as to the fact> that an ~into the unsuccessful cavalry
unsuccessful battle of the engagement which had taken
cavalry had been made before place a few days before
by a few days

initium eius fugæ factum [esse] ā Dumnorīge atque eius
equitibus^{VI}

=that the beginning of the flight ~that the commencement of that
had been made by Dumnorix flight had been made by
and his cavalry Dumnorix and his cavalry

I V. SG. GERUNDIVE, NEUT. ABL.

II **in quærendō**, ABL. OF THE GERUND. THE ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED: TO EXPRESS MANNER, MEANS, CAUSE, ETC. AFTER COMPARATIVES. AFTER THE PROPOSITIONS AB, DE, EX, IN, AND (RARELY) PRO. §507

III **equester, -tris, -tre**, ADJ. (EQUES), *of a horseman, equestrian*; In partic. *Of or belonging to cavalry*—"prœlium" (I.XVIII.IX)

IV **paucīs...diēbus**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH ADV. **ante**. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

V **quod...esset factum**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

VI **ā Dumnorīge...equitibus**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION, NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES Ā OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCISUS GLADIO, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCISUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

nam equitātū^I

=for // the cavalry

~for // the cavalry

quem auxiliō Cæsari^{II} Æduī miserant

=(the cavalry) which the Ædui had sent for <a source of> aid to Cæsar
~which the Ædui had sent as a source of aid to Cæsar

Dumnorīx præerat

=Dumnorix was set over

~Dumnorix was commanding

eōrum fugā^{III} reliquum esse equitātum perterritum^{IV V}

=that by their flight, the remaining cavalry were frightened thoroughly
~that by their flight the rest of the cavalry were dismayed

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præerat.** §370

II **auxiliō Cæsari**, DOUBLE DAT. CONSTRUCTION. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

III ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

IV **esse...perterritum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperiēbat.** §580

V **perterreō** —, -itus, ēre (PER + TERREŌ), to frighten thoroughly, terrify

I.XIX

CÆSAR CONSULTS DUMNORIX' BROTHER.

I.XIX.I.



QUIBUS RĒBUS COGNITĪS, CUM AD HĀS
SUSPICIŌNĒS CERTISSIMÆ RĒS ACCĒDERĒT,
QUOD PER FĪNĒS SĒQUANŌRUM HELVĒTIŌS
TRĀDŪXISSET, QUOD OBSIDĒS ÎNTER EŌS
DĀNDŌS CŪRĀSSET, QUOD EA OMNIA NŌN MODO
ÎNIUSSŪ SUŌ ET CĪVITĀTIS SED ETIAM ÎNSCIENTIBUS
IPSĪS FĒCISSET, QUOD Ā MAGISTRĀTŪ ÆDUŌRUM
ACCŪSĀRĒTŪR, SATIS ESSE CAUSÆ ARBITRĀBĀTŪR
QUĀRĒ ÎN EUM AUT IPSE ĀNIMADVERTERET AUT
CĪVITĀTEM ĀNIMADVERTERE IUBĒRET.

Quibus rēbus cognitīs^I II

=with these things <having ~after learning these
been> learned circumstances

I **quibus rēbus cognitīs**, ABL. ABS. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. NOTE, THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE IS AN ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF THE PREDICATE. IT IS, HOWEVER, NOT GRAMMATICALLY DEPENDENT ON ANY WORD IN THE SENTENCE; HENCE ITS NAME ABSOLUTE (ABSOLŪTUS, I.E. FREE OR UNCONNECTED). A SUBSTANTIVE IN THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE VERY SELDOM DENOTES A PERSON OR THING ELSEWHERE MENTIONED IN THE SAME CLAUSE. §419

II **cōgnōscō, -gnōvī, -gnitus, -ere** (COM- + (G)NOSCO), *to become acquainted with, acquire knowledge of, ascertain, learn, perceive, understand; PERF., to know*

cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimæ rēs accēderent^{I II}

=*when most certain things were added to those suspicions* ~*since to these suspicions the most certain facts were added*

quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset^{III}

=(*namely*), *that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani* ~*viz., that he had led the Helvetii through the territories of the Sequani*

quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs [esse]^{IV} *cūrāssent*^V

=*that he had took care that (he) the hostages were <having> to be given between them* ~*that he had provided that hostages should be mutually given*

quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū^{VI} *suō et cīvitātis*

=*that // all these things, not only without his own command (Cæsar's) and of (his own) state's* ~*that // all these things, not only without any orders of his [Cæsar's] and of his own state's*

sed etiam

=*but even*

~*but even*

I *cum...accēderent*, *cum* CLAUSE. *CUM* CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. *CUM* CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY *SINCE*; *CUM* CONCESSIVE BY *ALTHOUGH* OR *WHILE*; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY *WHEN*. §549

II *accēdō*, -*cessī*, *cessūrus*, -*ere* (AD + *cedō*), *to go to, come to, come near, draw near, approach, enter*; With the accessory idea of increase, *to be added*, CONSTR. WITH *ad* OR DAT.

III *quod...trādūxisset*, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

IV *obsides inter eōs dandōs*, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

V *quod...cūrāssent*, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

VI *iniussus*, -*ūs*, M., ONLY IN THE ABL. (IN + JUSSUS), *without command*

inscientibus^I ipsīs^{II}

=with (the Æduans) themselves
<being> unaware

~without their [the Ædui]
knowing any thing of it
themselves

fēcisset^{III}

=he had done

~he had done

quod ā magistrātū^{IV} Eduōrum accūsārētur^V

=that he (Dumnorix) was called
into account by the (chief)
magistrate of the Ædui

~that he [Dumnorix] was
reproached by the [chief]
magistrate of the Ædui

satis esse^{VI} causæ

=that it was enough of (a)
reason

~that there was sufficient reason

arbitrābātur

=he was of the opinion

~he [Cæsar] considered

I **insciēns, -entis**, ADJ. (IN + SCIĒNS), *unknowing, without knowledge, unaware*

II **inscientibus ipsīs**, ABL. ABS. §419

III **quod...fēcisset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

IV **ā magistrātū**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **Ā** OR **AB**. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES **Ā** OR **AB**) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS **occīsus gladiō**, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, **occīsus ab hoste**, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

V **quod...accūsārētur**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

VI INDI. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrābātur**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quārē in eum

=from what cause // into him ~why // to him
(Dumnorix)

aut ipse animadverteret^I aut cīvitatē animadvertere iubēret^{II}

=either he himself should turn ~he should either punish him
(his) mind /into him/ or he himself, or order the state to do
should order the state (of the so
Æduans) to turn (its) mind (to
him)

I.XIX.II.

HIS OMNIBUS RĒBUS ŪNUM REPUGNĀBAT, QUOD
DĪVICIĀCĪ FRĀTRIS SUMMUM IN POPULUM RŌMĀNUM
STUDIUM, SUMMUM IN SĒ VOLUNTĀTEM, ĒGREGIAM
FIDEM, IŪSTITIAM, TEMPERANTIAM COGNŌVERAT; NAM
NĒ EIUS SUPPLICIŌ DĪVICIĀCĪ ANIMUM OFFENDERET
VERĒBĀTUR.

His omnibus rēbus^{III} ūnum repugnābat^{IV}

=one (thing) (however) was ~one thing [however] was
opposed itself in/to all these opposing in all these situations
things

I **animadvertō, -tī, -sus, -ere** (ANIMUM + ADVERTO), to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe

II **quārē...animadverteret...iubēret**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUI OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

III **his omnibus rēbus**, INDIR. OBJ. WITH SPECIAL V. **repugnābat**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

IV **repugnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (RE + PŪGNŌ), to fight back, oppose, make resistance, resist, struggle, defend oneself; TRANSF., In gen., to resist, make resistance; to oppose, contend against

quod Diviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium^I,
 summum in sē^{II} voluntātem, ēgregiam^{III} fidem, iūstitiam^{IV},
 temperantiam^V cognōverat

=that he (Cæsar) had learned of
 the goodwill toward himself
 (Cæsar), the very high zeal of
 (his) brother Divitiacus for the
 Roman people, (of his)
 extraordinary faith, justice,
 (and) moderation

~that he had learned by
 experience his brother
 Divitiacus's very high affection
 for the Roman people, his great
 affection toward him, his
 distinguished faithfulness,
 justice, and moderation

nam

=for

~for

nē eius supplicio^{VI VII} Diviciācī animum offenderet^{VIII IX}

=lest by his (Dumnorix')
 punishment, he might offend the
 mind of Diviacus

~lest by the punishment of this
 man, he should hurt the feelings
 of Divitiacus

I **studium, -ī, N.** (STUDEO), application, assiduity, zeal, eagerness, fondness, inclination, desire, exertion, endeavor, study; In partic. Zeal for any one; good-will, affection, attachment, devotion, favor, kindness, etc

II ACC. SG.

III **ēgregius, -a, -um, ADJ.** (EX + GREX), extraordinary, distinguished, surpassing, excellent, eminent

IV **iūstitia, -æ, F.** (IUSTUS), justice, equity, righteousness, uprightness

V **temperantia, -æ, F.** (TEMPERANS), moderation, sobriety, discretion, self-control, temperance

VI ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VII **supplicium, -ī, N.** (SUPPLEX), a kneeling, bowing down, humble entreaty, petition, supplication; Punishment, penalty, torture, torment, pain, distress, suffering

VIII **nē...offenderet, CLAUSE OF FEARING. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NĒ AFFIRMATIVE AND NĒ NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. IN THIS USE NĒ IS COMMONLY TO BE TRANSLATED BY THAT, UT AND NĒ NŌN BY THAT NOT. §564**

IX **offendō, -fendī, -fēnsus, -ere (OB + FENDO), to hit, thrust, strike, dash against; To shock, offend, mortify, vex, displease one**

verēbātur^I

=he was fearing

~he was afraid

I.XIX.III.

ITAQUE PRIUS QUAM QUICQUAM CŌNĀRĒTUR, DĪVICIĀCUM AD SĒ VOCĀRĪ IUBET ET, COTĪDIĀNĪS ĪNTERPRETIBUS REMŌTĪS, PER C. VALERIUM PROCILLUM, PRĪNCIPEM GALLIÆ PRŌVĪNCIÆ, FAMILIĀREM SUUM, CUI SUMMAM OMNIUM RĒRUM FIDEM HABĒBAT, CUM EŌ COLLOQUITUR: SIMUL COMMONEFACIT QUÆ IPSŌ PRÆSENTE ĪN CONCILIŌ GALLORUM DĒ DUMNORĪGE SĪNT DICTA, ET OSTENDIT QUÆ SĒPARĀTIM QUISQUE DĒ EŌ APUD SĒ DĪXERIT.

Itaque prius^{II} quam quicquam^{III} cōnārētur^{IV}

=therefore, before than he ~therefore, before he attempted
attempted any thing any thing

Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī^{V VI}

=that Divitiacus is to be ~Divitiacus to be summoned to
summoned to him him

I **vereor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP. (VEL-), to feel awe of, to reverence, revere, respect; to fear, be afraid of any thing (good or bad); to fear or be afraid to do a thing, etc.; CONSTR. WITH ACC., WITH AN INF., the GEN., A FOLL. *ne*, *ut*, A REL.-CLAUSE, OR ABSOL.—WITH A REL.-CLAUSE, to await with fear, to fear, dread

II **prius, -ōris**, ADJ. COMP. (PRO-), former, previous, prior, first; ADV., before, sooner, first, previously; WITH *quam*, AND OFTEN JOINED IN ONE WORD —*priusquam*, before, before that

III **quicquam**, N. (QUIC + QUAM), PRON INDEF. AS ADJ., any, any one; SUBST., any man, anybody, any person, any one whatever, anything

IV CLAUSE OF TIME, AKA ANTICIPATORY SUBJ. ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM TAKE SOMETIMES THE INDICATIVE SOMETIMES THE SUBJUNCTIVE: WITH ANTEQUAM OR PRIUSQUAM THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IS COMMON WHEN THE SUBORDINATE VERB IMPLIES PURPOSE OR EXPECTANCY IN PAST TIME, OR WHEN THE ACTION THAT IT DENOTES DID NOT TAKE PLACE. §551

iubet^I

=he orders

~he ordered

et

=and

~and

cotidianis interpretibus^{II} remōtis^{III IV}

=with the ordinary interpreters

~when the ordinary interpreters

<having been> removed

had been withdrawn

per C[aium] Valerium Procillum^V, principem Galliæ prōvinciæ,
familiārem suum

=through C[aius] Valerius
Procillus, chief of the province of
Gaul, his intimate acquaintance

~converses with him through
Caius Valerius Procillus, chief of
the province of Gaul, an
intimate friend of his

V **Diviciācum...vocārī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iubet**. §580 & SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

VI **vocō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (VOC-), to call, summon, invoke, call together, convoke

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES. (REPRÆSENTATIŌ, §585, B. N.) §469

II **interpres, -etis**, M. AND F. (PRAT-), a middleman, mediator, broker, factor, negotiator; An explainer, expounder, translator, interpreter—Esp., an interpreter, dragoman

III **cotidianis interpretibus remōtis**, ABL. ABS. §419

IV **removeō, -mōvī, -mōtus, -ēre** (RE- + MOVEO), to move back, take away, set aside, put off, drive away, withdraw, remove—Hence, **rēmōtus, -a, -um**, P. A., removed, i.e. afar off, distant, remote

V **Procillus, -i**, M., a Roman name

cui^I summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat

=*for whom he had the highest faith of all things* ~*in whom he reposed the highest confidence in every thing*

cum eō colloquitur^{II}

=*he converses with that (man)* ~*converses with him*

simul^{III} commonefacit^{IV}

=*at the same time he brings to mind* ~*at the same time he reminds*

quæ

=*(the things) which* ~*what*

ipsō præsente^V

=*with himself <being> present (Diviciacus)* ~*when he himself was present*

in conciliō Gallorum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta^{VI}

=*had been said about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls* ~*about Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls*

I DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. FIDEM **habēbat**. §367

II **collōquor, -cūtus, collocūtus sum**, DEP. (COL- + LŌQUOR), *to talk together, converse, to hold a conversation, a parley, or a conference*; CONSTR. COMMONLY *cum aliquo, inter se*, OR ABSOL.

III **simul**, ADV. (SA -), *at the same time, together, at once, simultaneously*; INTRODUCING AN INDEPENDENT SENTENCE, *at the same time, also, likewise*—More freq. *simul et* (= *etiam*)

IV **commonefaciō, -fēcī, -factus** (COMMONEO + FACIO), *to recall, bring to mind; To remind, put in mind, admonish, impress upon*

V **ipsō præsente**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **quæ...sint dicta**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

et ostendit

=and spreads before

~and shows

quæ sēparātim^I

=(the things) which // pivately

~what // privately

quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit^{II}

=each man had said about him //
near him (Cæsar)

~each had said of him // in his
[Cæsar's] own presence

I.XIX.IV.

PETIT ATQUE HORTĀTUR UT SĪNE EIUS OFFĒNSIŌNE
ANIMĪ VEL IPSE DĒ EŌ CAUSĀ COGNITĀ STATUAT VEL
CĪVITĀTEM STATUERE IUBEAT.

Petit^{III}

=he begs

~he begs

atque hortātur^{IV}

=and he exhorts (him)

~and exhorts him

ut sine eius offēnsiōne^V animī

=that without offense of the
mind of him

~that, without offense to his
feelings

I **sēparātim**, ADV. (SEPARATUS), *asunder, apart, separately, severally*

II **quæ...dixerit**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III **petō, -īvi, petitus, -ere** (PET-), *to strive for, seek, aim at, repair to, make for, travel to*

IV **hortor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP., *to urge, press, incite, instigate, encourage, cheer, exhort*

V **offēnsiō, -ōnis**, F. (OFFENDO), *a striking against, tripping, stumbling; Trop., An offence given to any one, disfavor, aversion, disgust, dislike, hatred, discredit, bad reputation; An offence which one receives; displeasure, vexation*

vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā^{VI} statuat

=with the cause <having been> ~he may either himself pass
examined, he should either judgment on him [Dumnorix]
himself decide about that (man) after trying the case
(Dumnorix)

vel

=or

~or else

cīvitātem statuere

=the (Æduan) state to decide

~the [Æduan] state to do so

iubeat^{II}

=he should order

~order

VI **causā cognitā**, ABL. ABS. §420

II **ut...statuat...iubeat**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

I.XX



CÆSAR PARDONS DUMNORIX, BUT WARNS HIM.



I.XX.I.



DIVICIĀCUS MULTĪS CUM LACRIMĪS CÆSAREM
COMPLEXUS OBSECRĀRE CŒPIT NĒ QUID
GRAVIUS IN FRĀTREM STATUERET: SCĪRE SĒ
ILLA ESSE VĒRA, NEC QUEMQUAM EX EŌ PLŪS
QUAM SĒ DOLŌRIS CAPERE, PROPTEREĀ QUOD, CUM IPSE
GRĀTIĀ PLŪRIMUM DOMĪ ATQUE IN RELIQUĀ GALLIĀ,
ILLE MĪNIMUM PROPTER ADULĒSCENTIAM POSSET, PER
SĒ CRĒVISSET; QUĪBŪS OPIBŪS AC NERVĪS NŌN SŌLUM
AD MĪNUENDAM GRĀTIAM SED PĀNE AD PERNICIEM
SUAM ŪTERĒTUR.

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs^I II Cæsarem complexus^{III} [eum]
obsecrāre^{IV} cœpit

=Divitiacus, <having> embraced ~Divitiacus, embracing Cæsar,
Cæsar, begins to beseech [him], begins to implore him, with
with many tears many tears

I **multis cum lacrimis**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE: USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

II **lacrima, -æ, f.**, a tear

III **complector, -plexus, -i**, DEP. (PARC-, PLEC-), to clasp, embrace, grasp

IV **obsecrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OB + SACRO), to beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate, conjure

nē quid gravius in frātre*m* statueret^I

=*that he might not decide* ~*not to pass any very severe anything too severe upon (his) sentence upon his brother brother*

scīre sē^{II}

=(*saying*) *that he knows* ~*saying, that he knows*

illa esse^{III} vēr*a*

=*that those (things) are true* ~*that those charges were true*

nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris^{IV} capere^V

=(*and*) *that not anyone on account of that (man) (Dumnorix) was taking in hand more of pain than (he) himself* ~*and that nobody suffered more pain than he himself did*

proptereā quod

=*on account of that because* ~*on that account*

I *nē...statueret*, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

II *scīre sē*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *obsecrāre*. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III *illa esse*, INDIRECT DISCOURSE DEPENDENT ON *scīre*. §580

IV PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

V *capiō, cēpī, captus, -ere* (CAP-), *to take in hand, take hold of, lay hold of, take, seize, grasp*; Of impressions, feelings, etc., *to take, entertain, conceive, receive, be subjected to, suffer, experience, etc.*

cum ipse grātiā^I plūrimum domī^{II} atque in reliquā Galliā^{III} [posset]
 =when he himself (Divitiacus) ~for when he himself could effect
 [was] most [able] by (his) a very great deal by his
 kindness at home (in Ædui) and influence at home and in the rest
 in remaining Gaul of Gaul

ille minimum propter adulēscēntiam^{IV} posset^V
 =that (man) (Dumnorix) was ~and he [Dumnorix] very little
 least able on account of (his) on account of his youth
 youth

per sē crēvisset^{VI VII}
 =he (Dumnorix) had grown (in ~the latter had become powerful
 resources and strength) by with their help
 <means of> himself
 (Divitiacus)

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II LOC. CASE. SPECIAL USES OF PLACE FROM WHICH, TO WHICH, AND WHERE ARE THE FOLLOWING: VI. THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IS USED TO DENOTE THE PLACE FROM WHICH IN CERTAIN IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS. §428^{VI}

III *reliquā Galliā*, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429

IV *adulēscēntia*, -æ, F. (ADULESCENS), *youth*

V *cum...posset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VI *crēscō*, *crēvī*, *crētus*, -ere (CER-), *to come into being, spring up, Fig., to grow, increase, be enlarged, be strengthened*

VII *propterea quod...crēvisset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

quibus^I opibus^{II} ac nervīs^{III} ^{IV} nōn solum ad minuendam^V ^{VI}
grātiam^{VII}

=with which power and strength ~and which power and strength
(he used) not only for <the he used not only to the lessening
purpose of> minimising (his) of his [Divitiacus] popularity
(Divitiacus') influence

sed pæne ad perniciem^{VIII} suam ūteretur^{IX}

=but it was nearly used toward ~but it was almost used for his
his own destruction own ruin

I.XX.II.

SĒSĒ TAMEN ET AMŌRE FRĀTERNŌ ET EXĪSTMĀTIŌNE
VULGĪ COMMOVERĪ.

-
- I A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); *qui...prælium committuit* (Historical Present), *they (or and they)...joined battle* (I.XV)
- II (**ops,**) **opis** (NO NOM. OR DAT. SG.), F. (AP-), *Power, might, strength, ability, in abstr.; In concr., means of any kind that one possesses; property, substance, wealth, riches, treasure; military or political resources, might, power, influence, etc. (IN THIS SIGNIF. MOSTLY IN PL.)*
- III **nervus, -i**, M., *a sinew, tendon, muscle; Fig., a sinew, nerve, vigor, force, power, strength*
- IV **opibus ac nervīs**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. *ūteretur*. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410
- V V. SG. GERUNDIVE. F. ACC.
- VI **minuō, -uī, -ūtus, -ere** (MAN-), *to make small, lessen, diminish, divide into small pieces; Fig., to lessen, diminish, lower, reduce, weaken, abate, restrict*
- VII **ad minuendam grātiam**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506
- VIII **perniciēs, -ēi**, F. (PER + NEC-), *destruction, death, ruin, overthrow, disaster, calamity, mischief*
- IX **quibus...ūteretur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Sēsē tamen et amōre^I frāternō^{II} et exīstimātiōne^{III} ^{IV} vulg^V
commovērī^{VI}

=but he (Diviciacus) nonetheless ~that he, however, was
was moved both by brotherly influenced both by fraternal
love and by the judgement of the affection and by public opinion
masses

I.XX.III.

QUOD SĪ QUID EĪ Ā CÆSARE GRAVIUS ACCIDISSET, CUM
IPSE EUM LOCUM AMĪCITIÆ APUD EUM TENĒRET,
NĒMĪNEM EXĪSTIMĀTŪRUM NŌN SUĀ VOLUNTĀTE
FACTUM; QUĀ EX RĒ FUTŪRUM UTĪ TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ
ĀNIMĪ Ā SĒ ĀVERTERENTUR.

Quod

=that

~but

sī quid eī^{VII} ā Cæsare^{VIII} gravius accidisset^{IX}

=if anything too grave should ~if any thing very severe by
happen to him (Dumnotix) by Cæsar should befall him
(at the hands of) Cæsar

-
- I **amor, -ōris**, M. (AM-), love (to friends, parents, etc.; and also in a low sense; hence in gen., like *amo*, while *caritas*, like *diligere*, is esteem, regard, etc.; hence *amor* is used also of brutes, but *caritas* only of men; V. AMO INIT.)
- II **frāternus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FRATER), of a brother, brotherly, fraternal
- III **exīstimātiō, -ōnis**, F. (EXISTIMO), a judging, judgment, opinion, supposition, decision, estimate, verdict
- IV **amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- V WIKI. **vulgus, -i**. M. N., the great mass, the multitude, the people, public
- VI **sēsē...commovērī**, INDIR. DISC. §580
- VII DAT. WITH COMP. V. **accidisset**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēretⁱ

=since he himself held that place of friendship among him
~since he himself held such a place in Cæsar's friendship (Cæsar)

nēminem exīstimātūrum [esse]ⁱⁱ

=no one would think ~no one would think

nōn suā voluntateⁱⁱⁱ factum [esse]^{iv}

=that (it) was not done by his volition
~that it had been done without his consent

quā ex rē futūrum [esse]

=that from which thing it would be
~from which circumstance it would arise

VIII **ā Cæsare**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB, NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES Ā OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

IX **sī quid...accidisset**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON scīre. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

I **cum...tenēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **quod...nēminem exīstimātūrum**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III **suā voluntate**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE, I. TO THIS HEAD ARE TO BE REFERRED MANY EXPRESSIONS WHERE THE ABLATIVE EXPRESSES THAT IN ACCORDANCE WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. NOTE AS THE ROMANS HAD NO SUCH CATEGORIES AS WE MAKE, IT IS IMPOSSIBLE TO CLASSIFY ALL USES OF THE ABLATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION (ORIGINALLY INSTRUMENTAL) IS CLOSELY AKIN TO THAT OF MANNER, AND SHOWS SOME RESEMBLANCE TO MEANS AND CAUSE. §418i

IV INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimātūrum**. §580

utī tōtīus Gallīæ animī ā sē^I āverterentur^{II}

=that the feelings of all Gaul ~that the affections of the whole
would be turned away (i.e. of Gaul would be estranged from
disinclined) from him him

I.XX.IV.

HÆC CUM PLŪRIBUS VERBIS FLĒNS Ā CÆSARE PETERET,
CÆSAR EIUS DEXTRAM PRĒNDIT; CŌNSŌLĀTUS ROGAT
FĪNEM ŌRĀNDI FACIAT; TĀNTĪ EIUS APŪD SĒ GRATIAM
ESSE OSTĒNDIT UTĪ ET REĪ PŪBLICÆ INIŪRIAM ET SUŪM
DOLŌREM EIUS VOLŪNTĀTĪ AC PRECIBUS CŌNDŌNET.

Hæc cum plūribus verbis^{III} flēns^V vi ā Cæsare^{VII} peteret^{VIII}

=as he, crying, was begging ~as he was with tears begging
these (things) from Cæsar with these things of Cæsar in many
several words words

-
- I **ā sē**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- II **quā ex rē futūrum utī...āverterentur**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589
- III **plūribus verbis**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409
- IV **verbum, -ī**, N., a word
- V PART. SG. PRES. MASC. NOM.
- VI **fleō, flēvī, flētus, -ēre** (FLA-), to weep, cry, shed tears, lament, wail
- VII **ā Cæsare**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403
- VIII **cum...peteret**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

Cæsar eius dextram^I prændit^{II}

=*Cæsar takes his (Diviciacus')* ~*Cæsar takes his right hand right (hand)*

cōnsōlātus^{III} rogat

=(*and*) (*Cæsar*) <*having*> ~*and, comforting him, begs him comforted (him; Diviciacus), asks*

finem ōrandi^{IV} ^V faciat^{VI}

=*that he make an end of* ~*to make an end of entreating speaking*

-
- I **dextra, -æ**, f. (DEXTER), sc. *manus, the right hand* (freq. a sign of greeting, of fidelity; a symbol of strength, courage, etc.)
- II **prêndo, -di, -sus, -ere** (HED-), *to lay hold of, grasp, snatch, seize, catch, take*
- III **cōnsōlor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (CŌN + SŌLOR), *to encourage, animate, console, cheer, comfort*
- IV SUBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504
- V **ōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OS), *to speak; To pray, beg, beseech, entreat, implore, supplicate*
- VI HORTATORY SUBJ. EXPRESSING COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. VERBS OF COMMANDING, SUCH AS *rogat*, IN THIS CASE, SOMETIMES TAKE THE SUBJ. WITHOUT *ut*. *VOLO* AND ITS COMPOUNDS, THE IMPERSONALS LICET AND OPORTET, AND THE IMPERATIVES DIC AND FAC OFTEN TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITHOUT UT, I. VERBS OF COMMANDING AND THE LIKE OFTEN TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITHOUT UT. NOTE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE USED TO EXPRESS A COMMAND IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §565I & ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

tantīⁱ eius apud sē gratiam esseⁱⁱ

=that the regard of him ~that his regard for him is of so (Divicius) among him is so great account great

ostendit

=(and) he shows

~and makes known

utī et reī publicæⁱⁱⁱ iniūriam et suum dolōrem eius voluntātī ac precibus condōnet^{iv v}

=that he pardons both the injury ~that he pardons both the of the republic and his own pain, injuries of the republic and his by his volition and entreaties own anguish, at his volition and prayers

LXX.V.

DUMNORĪGEM AD SĒ VOCAT, FRĀTREM ADHIBET; QUÆ
 ÎN EÔ REPREHĒNDAT OSTĒNDIT, QUÆ IPSE ÎNTELLEGAT,
 QUÆ CĪVITĀS QUERĀTUR PRŌPŌNIT; MONET UT ÎN
 RELIQUUM TEMPUS OMNĒS SUSPĪCĪŌNĒS VĪTET;
 PRÆTERITA SĒ DĪVICIĀCŌ FRĀTRĪ CONDŌNĀRE DĪCIT.

I GEN. OF QUALITY EXPRESSING INDEFINITE VALUE. TWO NEGATIVES ARE EQUIVALENT TO AN AFFIRMATIVE. MANY COMPOUNDS OR PHRASES OF WHICH NŌN IS THE FIRST PART EXPRESS AN INDEFINITE AFFIRMATIVE: NŌN NŪLLUS, SOME; NŌN NŪLLI (=ALIQUĪ), SOME FEW, §326i & CERTAIN ADJECTIVES OF QUANTITY ARE USED IN THE GENITIVE TO DENOTE INDEFINITE VALUE. SUCH ARE MAGNĪ, PARVĪ, TANTĪ, QUANTĪ, PLŪRIS, MINŌRIS. NOTE. THESE ARE REALLY GENITIVES OF QUALITY (§345ii). §417.

II *sē grātiam esse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *ostendit*. §580

III *reī publicæ*, OBJ. GEN. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS USED WITH NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS. §347

IV *condōnō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre* (CON + DŌNŌ), to give, present, deliver, surrender, abandon; To pardon, remit, overlook, forbear to punish

V *utī...condōnet*, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat

=he calls Dumnorix to himself ~he summons Dumnorix to him

frātre[m] adhibet^I

=(and) he summons (his) ~he brings in his brother
brother

quæ in eō reprehendat^{II III}

=what (things) he censures in ~what he censures in him
that (man)

ostendit

=he points out ~he points out

quæ ipse intellegat^{IV}

=what (things) he himself knows ~what he of himself perceives

quæ cīvitās querātur^V

=(and) what (things) the state ~and what the state complains
complains of of

prōpōnit

=he lays forth ~he lays before him

I **adhibeō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (AD + HABEŌ), to hold toward, turn to, apply, add to; Esp. Of persons, to bring one to a place, to summon, to employ

II **quæ...reprehendat**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III **reprehendō, -endī, -ēnsus, -ere** (RE- + PREHENDŌ), to hold back, hold fast, take hold of, seize, catch; In partic., to check, restrain an erring person or (more freq.) the error itself; hence, by meton., to blame, censure, find fault with, reprove, rebuke, reprehend

IV **quæ...intellegat**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

V **quæ...querātur**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

monet^{I II}

=he warns (Dumnorix)

~he warned him

ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet^{III IV}=that he should avoid all ~to avoid all grounds of
suspicions for the remaining suspicion in the future
timepræterita^V sē Dīviciācō frātrī^{VI} condōnāre^{VII}=that he pardons the bygones
for (his) brother Divitiacus~that he pardons the past, for
the sake of his brother,
Divitiacusdīcit^{VIII}

=he says

~he said

LXX.VI.

DUMNORĪGĪ CUSTŌDĒS PŌNIT, UT QUÆ AGAT,
QUIBUSCUM LOQUĀTUR SCĪRE POSSIT.Dumnorīgī^{IX} custōdēs^X pōnit^{XI}=he places overseers over
Dumnorix~he posted watchers over
Dumnorix

I HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

II moneō, -uī, -itus, -ēre (MAN-), to remind, put in mind of, admonish, advise, warn, instruct, teach

III vītō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (VIC-), to shun, seek to escape, avoid, evade

IV ut...vītet, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

V prætereō, -iī, -itus, -īre (PRÆTER + EŌ), to go by, go past, pass by, pass; SUBST., præterīta, -ōrum, N., things gone by, the past

VI Dīviciācō frātrī, DAT. WITH COMP. V. condōnāre. §370

VII sē...condōnāre, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON dīcit. §580

VIII HIST. PRES. §469

ut

=<in order> that

~so that

quæ agat^I

=what (things) he may do

~what he did

quibuscum loquātur^{II III}

=(and) with whom he may talk

~and with whom he
communicated

scīre^{IV} possit^V

=he may be able to know

~to know

IX DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

X **custōs, -ōdis**, M. and F. (SCV-), a guard, watch, preserver, keeper, overseer, protector, defender, attendant

XI HIST. PRES. §469

I **quæ...agat**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

II **quibuscum...loquātur**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III **loquor, -cūtus, -ī**, DEP. (LAC-), to speak, talk, say, tell, mention, utter

IV **sciō, -ivī, -ītus, -īre** (SAC-), to know, understand, perceive, have knowledge of, be skilled in

V **ut...possit**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §53

I.XXI

CAESAR PLANS TO CRUSH THE HELVETIANS.

I.XXI.I



EODEM DIĒ AB EXPLŌRĀTŌRIBUS CERTIOR
FACTUS HOSTĒS SUB MONTE CŌNSĒDISSE
MĪLIA PASSUUM AB IPSIUS CASTRIS OCTŌ,
QUĀLIS ESSET NĀTŪRA MONTIS ET QUĀLIS IN
CIRCUITŪ ASCĒNSUS, QUĪ COGNŌSCERĒNT MĪSIT.

Eōdem diē^I ab explōrātōribus^{II} certior factus

=(Caesar) <having been> made ~being on the same day
more certain by (his) scouts on informed by his scouts
the same day

I **eōdem diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **ab explōrātōribus**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS DEVELOPED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF SOURCE. THE AGENT IS CONCEIVED AS THE SOURCE OR AUTHOR OF THE ACTION. NOTE II. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT (WHICH REQUIRES A OR AB) MUST BE CAREFULLY DISTINGUISHED FROM THE ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT, WHICH HAS NO PREPOSITION (§409). THUS OCCĪSUS GLADIŌ, SLAIN BY A SWORD; BUT, OCCĪSUS AB HOSTE, SLAIN BY AN ENEMY. NOTE III. THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT IS COMMONEST WITH NOUNS DENOTING PERSONS, BUT IT OCCURS ALSO WITH NAMES OF THINGS OR QUALITIES WHEN THESE ARE CONCEIVED AS PERFORMING AN ACTION AND SO ARE PARTLY OR WHOLLY PERSONIFIED, AS IN THE LAST EXAMPLE UNDER THE RULE. §405

hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse^I milia^{II} passuum^{III} ab ipsius castrīs octō

=*that the enemy had settled at the foot of a mountain eight thousand of paces from his own camp* ~*that the enemy had encamped at the foot of a mountain eight miles from his own camp*

quālis^{IV} esset^V nātūra montis

=*what sort of nature was of the mountain* ~*what the nature of the mountain was*

et quālis in circuitū^{VI} ascēnsus^{VII}

=*and of what sort of ascent (had been) in a revolution* ~*and what kind of an ascent on every side*

quī cognōscerent^{VIII}

=*(those men) who might learn* ~*to ascertain*

I **cōnsidō, -sēdi, -sessus, -ere** (CON + SIDŌ), to sit down, take seats, be seated, settle; To settle, take up an abode, stay, make a home; To encamp, pitch a camp, take post, station oneself

II ACC. OF EXTENT OF SPACE. EXTENT OF SPACE IS EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. II. DISTANCE WHEN CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE IS PUT IN THE ACCUSATIVE; WHEN CONSIDERED AS DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE, IN THE ABLATIVE (§414). §425^{II}

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

IV **quālis, -e**, PRONOM. ADJ. (CA-), INTERROG. *how constituted, of what sort, of what nature, what kind of a*

V **quālis esset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VI **circuitus, ūs**, M. (CIRCUMEO), *a going round, circling, revolving, revolution; A circuit, compass, way around*

VII **ascēnsus, -ūs**, M. (ASCENDO), *a climbing, ascent*

VIII **quī cognōscerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

[explōrātōrēs] mīsīt

=he sent [scouts]

~he sent persons

I.XXI.II.

RENŪNTIĀTUM EST FACILEM ESSE.

Renūntiātum est

=it was announced

~word was brought back

facilem esse^I

=that (it) was easy

~that it was easy

I.XXI.III.

DĒ TERTIĀ VIGILIĀ T. LABIĒNUM, LĒGĀTUM PRŌ
PRÆTŌRE, CŪM DUĀBUS LEGIŌNIBUS ET EĪS DUCIBUS
QUĪ ITER COGNŌVERANT SUMMUM IUGUM MŌNTIS
ASCĒNDERE IUBET; QUID SUĪ CŌNSILĪ SIT OSTĒNDIT.

Dē tertiā vigiliā^{II}

=concerning the third watch

~during the third watch

T[itum] Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prætōre^{III}, cum duābus legiōnibus
et eīs ducibus

=T[itus] Labienus, (his)
lieutenant in behalf of the leader
// with two legions, and with
those men (as) guides

~Titus Labienus, his lieutenant
with prætorian powers // with
two legions, and with those as
guides

I **facilem esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **renūntiātum est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **dē tertiā vigiliā**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

III **prætor**, -ōris, M. (PRÆ + I-), a leader, head, chief, president, chief magistrate, chief executive, commander

quī iter cognōverant

=(the two legions and those men ~who had examined the road
as guides) who had become
acquainted with the route

summum iugum montis ascendere^I

=to ascend to the highest ridge ~to ascend to the highest ridge
of the mountain of the mountain

iubet^{II}

=he orders ~he ordered

quid suī cōnsilī sit^{III}

=what is of his own plan ~what his plan is

ostendit^{IV}

=he exposes to view ~he explained

I.XXI.IV.

IPSE DĒ QUĀRTĀ VIGILIĀ EŌDEM ITĪNERE QUŌ HOSTĒS
IERANT AD EŌS CŌTENDIT EQUITĀTUMQUE OMNEM
ANTE SĒ MITTIT.

Ipsē dē quārtā vigiliā^V eōdem itinere^{VI}

=he himself, during the fourth ~he himself during the fourth
watch // by the same route watch // by the same route

I ***T. Labiēnum...ascendere***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***iubet***. §580

II HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

III ***quid...sit***, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

IV HIST. PRES. §469

V ***dē tertiā vigiliā***, ABL. OF TIME. §423

VI ***eōdem itinere***, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

quō hostēs ierant

=*by which the enemy had gone* ~*by which the enemy had gone*

ad eōs contendit^I

=*he hastens toward those (men)* ~*hastened to them*

equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit^{II}

=*and he sends all the cavalry before himself* ~*and sent on all the cavalry before him*

LXXI.V.

P. CŌNSIDIUS, QUĪ REĪ MĪLĪTĀRIS PERĪTISSIMUS HABĒBĀTUR ET ĪN EXERCITŪ L. SULLÆ ET POSTEĀ ĪN M. CRASSĪ FUERAT, CŪM EXPLŌRĀTŌRIBUS PRÆMITTITUR.

P[ūblius]^{III} Cōnsidius^{IV}

=*P[ublius] Considius* ~*Publius Considius*

quī reī^V mīlītāris perītissimus^{VI} habēbātur

=*who was held as the most experienced of military affairs* ~*who was reputed to be very experienced in military affairs*

I HIST. PRES. §469

II HIST. PRES. §469

III **Pūblius, -ī**, M., a Roman first name

IV **Cōnsidius, -ī**, M., *Publius Considius*, an officer in Caesar's army

V OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. §348

VI **perītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PAR-), WITH COMP. AND SUP. *experienced, practised, trained, skilled, skilful, expert*

et in exercitū L[ūci] Sullæ^I et postea^{II} in M[arci] Crassi^{III} fuerat
 =and had been in the army of ~and had been in the army of
 L[ucius] Sulla, and afterward in Lucius Sulla, and afterward in
 (that of) M[arcus] Crassus that of Marcus Crassus

cum explorātōribus præmittitur^{IV}
 =is sent forward with the scouts ~was sent forward with the
 scouts

I **Sulla, -ae**, M., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, born 138 B.C.; consul 88, dictator 81-79 B.C.; leader of the aristocratic party in the first Civil War, enemy of Marius; died 78 B.C.; *Faustus Cornelius Sulla*, son of the dictator; *Publius Cornelius Sulla*, nephew of the dictator, who fought under Caesar

II **postea**, ADV. (POST + EA), *after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later*; **posteaquam** (or separately as, **postea quam**), *after that*

III **Crassus, -i**, M., *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, member of the triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey, consul in 55 B.C., perished in disastrous Parthian expedition; *Publius Licinius Crassus*, younger son of the triumvir, lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, 58-56 B.C., returning to Rome in 55 B.C. he followed his father to the East and fell in the same battle, 53 B.C.

IV HIST. PRES. §469

I.XXII



THROUGH FALSE INFORMATION THE PLAN FAILS.



I.XXII.I



RĪMĀ LŪCE, CŪM SŪMMŪS MŌNS Ā LABIĒNŌ
TENĒRĒTUR, IPSE AB HOSTIUM CASTRIS NŌN
LONGIUS MĪLLE ET QUĪNGENTĪS PASSIBUS
ABESSET, NEQUE, UT POSTEĀ EX CAPTĪVĪS
COMPERIT, AUT IPSĪUS ADVENTUS AUT LABIĒNĪ
COGNITUS ESSET, CŌNSIDIUS EQUŌ ADMISSŌ AD EUM
ACCURRIT, DĪCIT MŌNTEM QUĒM Ā LABIĒNŌ OCCUPĀRĪ
VOLŪERIT AB HOSTIBUS TENĒRĪ: ID SĒ Ā GALLICĪS ARMĪS
ATQUE ĪNSIGNIBUS COGNŌVISSE.

Prīmā^I lūce^{II} ^{III}

=at first light

~at day-break

-
- I **primus, -a, um**, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; WITH *ut, ubi, simulac, cum.*, *as soon as ever, as soon as*; **primum**, *at first, first, in the first place, in the beginning*—In enumerations, WITH A FOLL. *deinde, tum*
- II **primā lūce**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE, §423
- III **lūx, lūcis**, F. (LVC-), *light, brightness*; In partic., *the light of day, daylight, day*; “*primā luce ad eum accurrit,*” *at daybreak, dawn of day* (I.XXII.I)

cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō^I tenērētur

=when the top of the mountain was held by (Titus) Labienus ~when the summit of the mountain was in the possession of Titus Labienus

ipse ab hostium castrīs^{II} nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus^{III} abesset^{IV}

=and he himself was not farther than 1000 and 500 of paces from the camp of the enemy ~and he himself was not further off than a mile and half from the enemy's camp

neque

=neither ~nor

ut^V posteā ex captīvīs^{VI VII} comperit^{VIII}

=as he afterward obtained knowledge from the captives ~as he afterward ascertained from the captives

I **ā Labiēnō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **Ā** OR **AB**. §405

II **ab...castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH **AB** OR **EX**). §401

III **mille et quīngentīs passibus**, ABL. OF COMPARISON. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE IS OFTEN FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE (THIS IS A BRANCH OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION, THE OBJECT WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS COMPARED IS THE STARTING-POINT FROM WHICH WE RECKON. THUS, "CICERO IS ELOQUENT"; BUT, STARTING FROM HIM WE COME TO CATO, WHO IS "MORE SO THAN HE.") SIGNIFYING THAN. §406

IV **cum...tenērētur...abesset**, **cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH **CUM** AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V **ut** + indic. frequently means *as* or *when*

VI **ex captīvīs**, ABL. OF SOURCE. THE ABLATIVE (USUALLY WITH A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO DENOTE THE SOURCE FROM WHICH ANYTHING IS DERIVED, OR THE MATERIAL OF WHICH IT CONSISTS. §403

VII **captīva**, -**æ**, F. (CAPTIVUS), *a female captive, woman prisoner*

VIII **comperiō**, -**perī**, -**pertus**, -**īre** (PAR-), *to obtain knowledge of, find out, ascertain, learn*

aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset^I

=had either the arrival of ~had either his arrival or that of himself or (the arrival) of Labienus been discovered
Labienus been known

Cōnsidius

=Considius

~Considius

equō admissō^{II III}

=with (his) horse <having been> ~upon giving his horse reins
let go

ad eum accurrit

=he runs up to that (man)

~comes up to him

dīcit

=(and) says

~says

montem

=that the mountain

~that the mountain

quem ā Labiēnō^{IV} occupārī voluerit^V

=which he (Cæsar) wished to be ~which he [Cæsar] wished to be
seized // by Labienus seized // by Labienus

I **cognitus esset**, THIS IS A CONTINUATION OF THE *cum* CLAUSE ABOVE. §406

II **admittō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (AD + MITTŌ), to send to, let go, let loose, let come, admit, give access; Of a horse, to let go, give reins

III **equō admissō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

IV **ā Labiēnō**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V **quem...voluerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

ab hostibus^{VI} tenēri^{VII}

=is held by the enemy

~is in possession of the enemy

id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus^{III IV} cognōvisse^V

=that he had known it by the Gallic arms and by ensigns

~that he has discovered this by the Gallic arms and regalia

I.XXII.II.

CÆSAR SUĀS COPIĀS IN PROXIMUM COLLEM SUBDŪCIT,
ACIEM INSTRUIT.

Cæsar suās copiās in proximum collem^{VI} subdūcit

=Cæsar leads up his own forces
to the nearest hill

~Cæsar leads off his forces to the
next hill

aciem^{VII} instruit^{VIII IX}

=(and) he inserts a battle line

~[and] drew up in battle-order

VI **ab hostibus**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

VII **montem...tenēri**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicīt**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **insigne, -is**, N. (INSIGNIS), a mark, indication, proof, sign, token, signal; USU. PL., attire, uniform, costume, regalia

IV **ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

V **sē...cognōvisse**, INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §580

VI **collis, -is**, M. (CEL-), an elevation, high ground, hill

VII **aciēs, -ēī**, F. (AC-), a sharp edge, point, cutting part; TRANSF. Of the sense or faculty of sight, Keenness of look or glance, sharpness of vision or sight; In milit. lang., the front of an army (conceived of as the edge of a sword), line of battle, battle-array; The battlearray; in concr., an army drawn up in order of battle

VIII HIST. PRES. THE PRESENT IN LIVELY NARRATIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE HISTORICAL PERFECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE, COMMON IN ALL LANGUAGES, COMES FROM IMAGINING PAST EVENTS AS GOING ON BEFORE OUR EYES (REPRESENTATIO, §585. B. N.) §469

IX **instruō, -ūxi, -ūctus, -ere** (IN + STRUO), to build in, insert; Of troops, to form, set in order, draw up, array

LXXII.III.

LABIĒNUS, UT ERAT EĪ PRÆCEPTUM Ā CÆSARE NĒ
PRÆLIUM COMMITTERET, NISI IPSĪUS CŌPLÆ PROPE
HOSTIUM CASTRA VĪSÆ ESSENT, UT ŪNDIQUE ŪNŌ
TEMPORE ĪN HOSTĒS IMPETŪS FIERET, MONTE
OCCUPĀTŌ NOSTRŌS EXSPECTĀBAT PRÆLIŌQUE
ABSTĪNĒBAT.

Labiēnus

=*Labienus*

~*Labienus*

ut erat eĪ præceptumⁱ ā Cæsareⁱⁱ

=*as it was ordered to him by
Cæsar*

~*as he had been ordered by
Cæsar*

nĒ prœlium committeretⁱⁱⁱ

=*that he should not join battle*

~*not to come to an engagement*

I **præcipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (PRÆ + CAPIO), *to take beforehand, get in advance; To give rules, advise, admonish, warn, inform, instruct, teach, enjoin, direct, bid, order*

II **ā Cæsare**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

III **nĒ...committeret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

nisi ipsius cōpiæ prope^I hostium castra vīsæ essent^{II}

=*unless his (Cæsar's) own forces should be seen near the camp of the enemy* ~*unless [Cæsar's] own forces were seen near the enemy's camp*

ut undique ūnō tempore^{III} in hostēs impetus^{IV} fieret^V

=*<in order> that an attack might be made against the enemy from all parts at one time* ~*that the attack upon the enemy might be made on every side at the same time*

monte occupātō^{VI}

=*with the mountain <having been> seized* ~*after having taken possession of the mountain*

nostrōs [militēs] expectābat

=*he was waiting for our [soldiers]* ~*waiting for our men*

I **prope**, ADV. AND PREP. PRO. AND DEMONSTR. (SUFF. -PE), ADV., *near, nigh*; PREP. WITH ACC., Lit., *in space, near, near by, hard by*

II **nisi...vīsæ essent**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

III **ūnō tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE: TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV **impetus, -ūs**, M. (IN + PET-), *an attack, assault, onset*

V **ut...fieret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §53
1

VI **monte occupātō**, ABL. ABS. §420

prœliōque^I abstinēbat^{II}

=and he was refraining from ~and refraining from battle
battle

LXXII.IV.

MULTŌ DĒNIQUE DIĒ PER EXPLŌRĀTŌRĒS CÆSAR
COGNŌVIT ET MONTEM Ā SUĪS TENĒRĪ, ET HELVĒTIŌS
CASTRĀ MŌVISSE, ET CŌNSIDIUM TIMŌRE PERTERRITUM
QUOD NŌN VĪDISSET PRŌ VĪSŌ SIBI RENŪNTIĀVISSE.

Multō dēnique^{III} diē^{IV} per explōrātōrēs Cæsar cognōvit

=and length, at much day, ~when, at length, the day was
Cæsar learned through scouts far advanced, Cæsar learned
through spies

et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse^V

=and that the Helvetii had ~and that the Helvetii had
moved (their) camp moved their camp

et montem ā suīs^{VI} [militibus] tenērī^{VII}

=both that the mountain was ~that the mountain was in
held by his own [soldiers] possession of his own men

I ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

II **abstineō, -tinuī, -tentum, -ēre** (ABS + TENEŌ), to keep back, keep off, hold back; NEUTR., *abstinere*, to abstain from a thing—CONSTR. WITH ABL., ab, INF., quin or quominus, THE GEN., OR ABSOL.

III **dēnique**, ADV., and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until; In a summary or climax, in a word, in short, in fact, briefly, to sum up, in fine, even, I may say

IV **multō...diē**, ABL. OF TIME, at much day, e.g. late in the day—SIMILIAR USAGE TO THE PHRASE "Prīmā lūce," at fight light (LXXII.I), ALSO, MAY BE TRANS. AS AN ABL. ABS., "the day being much," i.e., late in the day. §423

V **Helvētiōs...mōvisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **ā suīs**, ABL. OF AGENT, §405

VII **montem...tenērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *cognōvit*. §580

et Cōsidium timōre^{I II} perterritum

=and that Considius, <having ~and that Considius, struck with been> thoroughly terrified by fear
fear

quod nōn vīdisset^{III}

=what (thing) he had not seen ~that which he had not seen

prō vīsō^{IV} sibi renūntiā[vi]sse^V

=(he) had reported to him, as ~had reported to him, as seen
seen

I.XXII.V.

EŌ DIĒ QUŌ CŌNSUĒRAT ĪNTERVĀLLŌ HOSTĒS
SEQUITUR, ET MĪLIA PASSUUM TRIA AB EŌRUM CASTRĪS
CASTRA PŌNIT.

Eō diē^{VI}

=on that day ~on that day

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **timor, -ōris**, M. (TEM-), fear, dread, apprehension, timidity, alarm, anxiety

III **quod...vīdisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

IV PPP. N. OF **videō**

V **Cōsidium...renūntiāvisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **eō diē**, ABL OF TIME. §423

quō cōnsuē[ve]rat intervällō^{I II} [eodem]

=by (at) [the same] interval ~at his usual distance
which he was accustomed

hostēs sequitur

=he follows the enemy ~he follows the enemy

et mīlia passuum^{III} tria ab eōrum castrīs^{IV} castra pōnit

=and he sets (his) camp three ~and pitches his camp three
thousand of paces from their miles from theirs
camp

-
- I **intervallum, -i**, N. (INTER + VALLUM), PROP., *the space between palisades, an intermediate space, interval, distance*
- II **quō...intervällō**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412
- III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346
- IV **ab eōrum castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

I.XXIII



CÆSAR TURNS TO GO TO BIBRACTE FOR SUPPLIES.



I.XXIII.I.



POSTRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒI, QUOD OMNĪNŌ BĪDUUM
SUPERERAT, CUM EXERCITUĪ FRŪMENTUM
MĒTĪRĪ OPORTĒRET, ET QUOD Ā BIBRACTE,
OPPIDŌ ĀDUŌRUM LONGĒ MAXIMŌ ET
CŌPIŌSISSIMŌ, NŌN AMPLIUS MĪLIBUS PASSUUM
DUODEVĪGINTĪ ĀBERAT, REĪ FRŪMENTĀRIÆ
PRŌSPICIENDUM EXĪSTIMĀVIT: ITER AB HELVĒTIIS
ĀVERTIT AC BIBRACTE ĪRE CONTENDIT.

Postrīdiē^I eius diēi

=on the day after of this day

~the next day

quod omnīnŏ bīduum^{II} supererat^{III}

=as there remained in all (a
space) of two days

~as there remained in all only
two day's space

I **postrīdiē**, ADV. (POSTERI + DIE), *on the day after, the next day*

II **bidūs, -a, -um**, ADJ. (BIS + DIES), *continuing two days, of two days*

III **supersum, -fui, -esse** (SUPER + SUM), *Of a remainder, to be over and above, be left, remain; Fig. To live after, outlive, be still alive, survive*

cum exercitui frumentum [eum] mētīrī oportēret^I

=(to the time) when it is ~[to the time] when he must
necessary [for him (Caesar)] to distribute the corn to his army
measure out the grain to the
army

et quod ā Bibracte^{II III}, oppidō Æduōrum longē maximō et
cōpiōsissimō

=and because // from Bibracte, ~and as // from Bibracte by far
by far the greatest and most the largest and best-stored town
(well) supplied town of the Ædui of the Ædui

nōn amplius mīlibus^{IV} passuum^V duodēvīgintī aberat

=he was not more than eighteen ~he was not more than eighteen
thousand of paces distant miles

I **cum...oportēret**, cum clause. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. \$546

II **ā Bibracte**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). \$401

III **Bibracte, -is**, m., capital of the Æduans, situated on a mountain now called Mont Beuvray (height 2690')

IV ABL. OF COMPARISON. THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE IS OFTEN FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE (THIS IS A BRANCH OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE OBJECT WITH WHICH ANYTHING IS COMPARED IS THE STARTING-POINT FROM WHICH WE RECKON. THUS, "CICERO IS ELOQUENT"; BUT, STARTING FROM HIM WE COME TO CATO, WHO IS "MORE SO THAN HE.") SIGNIFYING THAN. \$406

V PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. \$346

reī frūmentāriæ^I prōspiciendum [esse]^{II III}

=it is <having> to be looked ~that he ought to provide for a
forward (by him) for a thing of supply of corn
grain

exīstimāvit

=he thought

~he thought

iter ab Helvētiīs^{IV} āvertit

=(and) he turned away (his)
course from the Helvetii

~and diverted his march from
the Helvetii

ac Bibractē^V ire contendit

=and he hastened to go to
Bibracte

~and advanced rapidly to
Bibracte

LXXIII.II.

EA RĒS PER FUGITĪVŌS L. ÆMILĪ, DECURIŌNIS EQUITUM
GALLŌRUM, HOSTIBUS NŪNTIĀTUR.

I *reī frūmentāriæ*, DAT. WITH COMP. V. *prōspiciendum*. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II *prōspiciō*, -ēxī, -ectus, -ere (SPEC-), to look forward, look into the distance, have a view, look out, look, see; Fig., to look to beforehand, see to, exercise foresight, look out for, take care of, provide for

III FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. §196 & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV *ab Helvētiīs*, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

V ACC. OF PLACE TO WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE TO WHICH, BY THE ACCUSATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs^I L[ūciū] Æmilī^{II}, decuriōnis^{III} equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur^{IV}

this thing is announced to the enemy through the deserters from L[ucius] Æmilius, of the chief of the decuria cavalry of the Gallic horse ~*this circumstance is reported to the enemy by some deserters from Lucius Æmilius, a captain, of the Gallic horse*

LXXIII.III.

HELVĒTIĪ, SEU QUOD TIMŌRE PERTERRITŌS RŌMĀNŌS DISCĒDERE Ā SĒ EXĪSTIMĀRENT, EŌ MAGIS QUOD PRĪDIĒ SUPERIŌRIBUS LOCĪS OCCUPĀTIS PRĒLIUM NŌN COMMĪSSENT, SĪVE EŌ QUOD RĒ FRŪMENTĀRIĀ ĪNTERCLŪDĪ POSSE CŌNFĪDERENT, COMMŪTĀTŌ CŌNSILIŌ ATQUE ITĪNERE CŌNVERSŌ NOSTRŌS Ā NOVISSIMŌ AGMINE ĪNSEQUĪ AC LACESSERE CĒPĒRUNT.

Helvētiī

=*the Helvetii*

~*the Helvetii*

seu^V quod

=*whether because*

~*either because*

-
- I **fugitīvus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FVG-), *fleeing away, fugitive*; SUBST. M., *a runaway, fugitive slave, deserter*
- II **Æmilius, -ī**, M., *Lucius Æmilius*, a decurion in charge of a squad of Gallic cavalry
- III **decuriō, -ōnis**, M. (DECURIA), *the chief of a decuria, commander of a decuria of cavalry*
- IV **nūntiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (NUNTIVS), *to announce, declare, report, relate, narrate, make known, inform, give intelligence of*
- V **sive (or sue)**, CONJ. (SI + VE), A DISJUNCTIVE CONDITIONAL PARTICLE, *or if = vel si*; CONNECTING WORDS OR PHRASES IN THE SAME CONSTRUCTION, OR CONDITIONAL CLAUSES WHICH HAVE THE SAME PREDICATE : *sive (seu) ... sive (seu)*, ESP. IN CÆS. often *seu ... seu, if this or if that be the case*, placing the counter propositions on an equality, *be it that...or that; if...or if; whether...or*, i.e. in either case

timōre^I perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere^{II} ā sē^{III}

=that the Romans, <having been> thoroughly terrified with fear, were retreating from them ~that the Romans, struck with terror, were retreating from them

exīstimārent^{IV}

=they thought

~they thought

eō magis quod^V prīdiē^{VI}

=more than this (thing) because, on the day before ~the more so, as the day before

superiōribus locīs occupātis^{VII}

=with the higher places <having been> seized

~though they had seized on the higher grounds

prōelium nōn commīsissent^{VIII}

=they did not join the battle

~they had not engaged in battle

I ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

II **perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimārent**. §580

III **ā sē**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426

IV **quod...exīstimārent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

V **eō magis quod**, all the more because, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

VI **prīdiē**, ADV. (PRO-), on the day before, the previous day

VII **superiōribus locīs occupātis**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

VIII **quod...commīsissent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

sīve eō^I quod rē frūmentāriā^{II} [Rōmānōs] interclūdī^{III} posse^{IV}
cōnfident^{V VI}

=or (namely,) because of this ~or because they flattered
(thing), they trusted that [the themselves that they might be
Romans] were able to be cut off cut off from the provisions
from the grain supply

commūtātō^{VII} cōnsiliō^{VIII} atque itinere conversō^{IX} [milītēs] nostrōs ā
novissimō agmine īnsequī

=with (their) plan <having been> ~altering their plan and
altered and with the route changing their route, they
<having been> turned around, pressed upon our men in the
(those men) pursued our rear guard
[soldiers] in the most recent
battle line

ac lacessere cōepērunt

=and they began to provoke (our ~and began to pursue, and to
men) irritate them

I **sīve eō**, or because, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

II **rē frūmentāriā**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III **interclūdō**, -ūsī, -ūsus, -ere (INTER + CLAUDO), to shut out, shut off, cut off, hinder, stop, block up, intercept

IV INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **cōnfident**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **confido**, -fīsus, -sum (CON + FIDO), to trust confidently in something, confide in, rely firmly upon, to believe, be assured of

VI **quod...cōnfident**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592

VII **commūtō**, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (COM + MŪTO), to alter wholly, change entirely

VIII **commūtātō cōnsiliō**, ABL. ABS. §420

IX **itinere conversō**, ABL. ABS. §420

LXXIV



ROMANS AND HELVETIANS PREPARE FOR BATTLE.



LXXIV.I.



OSTQUAM ID ANIMUM ADVERTIT, CŌPIĀS
SUĀS CÆSAR IN PROXIMUM COLLEM
SUBDŪCIT, EQUITĀTUMQUE, QUĪ SUSTĪNĒRET
HOSTIUM IMPETUM, MĪSIT.

Postquam^I id animum advertit

=after that, he (Cæsar) turns ~when he observed this
(his) mind to it

cōpiās suās Cæsar in proximum collem subdūcit^{II}

=Cæsar leads his own troops up ~Cæsar draws off his forces to
to the nearest hill the next hill

equitātumque

=and the cavalry

~and the cavalry

I **postquam** (or **post quam**), CONJ. (POST + QUAM), *after that, after, as soon as, when*

II **subdūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere** (SUB + DŪCŌ), *to draw away, take away, lead away, carry off, wrest, withdraw, remove*

quī sustinēret^{I II} hostium impetum

=*who might sustain the attack of* ~*to sustain the attack of the*
the enemy ~*enemy*

mīsīt

=*he sent*

~*he sent*

I.XXIV.II.

IPSE ÎNTERIM ÎN COLLE MEDIŌ TRIPlicem ACIEM
 ÎNSTRŪXIT LEGIŌNŪ QUATTUOR VETERĀNORŪ; ÎN
 SŪMMŌ IUGŌ DUĀS LEGIŌNĒS QUĀS ÎN GALLIĀ
 CITERIŌRE PROXIMĒ CŌNSCRĪPSERAT ET OMŪIA AUXILIA
 COLLOCĀRI, AC TŌTŪM MŌNTEM HOMĪNIBUS
 COMPLĒRI; ET ÎNTEREA SARCĪNĀSQUE ÎN ŪNŪM LOCŪM
 CŌNFERRĪ ET EŪM AB EĪS QUĪ ÎN SUPERIŌRE ACIĒ
 CŌNSTITERĀNT MŪNĪRĪ IUSSIT.

I **quī sustinēret**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUŌ, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE, §531

II **sustineō, -tīnūī, -tentus, -ēre** (SUB + TENEŌ), *to hold up, hold upright, uphold, bear up, keep up, support, sustain*; In partic., *To bear, undergo, endure; to hold out against, withstand*; WITH OBJ.-CLAUSE (MOSTLY WITH A NEGATIVE: *non sustinet, he cannot bear, cannot endure; he does not take upon himself, does not venture*)—*To hold in, stop, stay, check, restrain; to keep back, put off, defer, delay*

Ipse interim in colle mediō^I triplicem^{II} aciem instrūxit legiōnum
quattuor veterānorum^{III} [ita utī suprā]

=he himself, meanwhile, drew
up a triple battle line of four
veteran legions on the middle of
the hill [in such a manner as
above]

~he himself, meanwhile, drew
up on the middle of the hill a
triple line of his four veteran
legions [in such a manner, that
he placed above]

in summō iugō duās legiōnēs

=on the highest ridge // the two
legions

~on the very summit // the two
legions

quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē^{IV} cōscripserat

=/he ordered/ /the two legions/
which he very lately enrolled on
this side of Gaul

~which he had lately levied in
Hither Gaul

et omnia auxilia collocārī^{V VI}

=and (he ordered) all the
auxlaries to be arranged

~and all the auxiliaries to be
arranged

-
- I **medius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MED-), in the middle, in the midst, mid, mean, middle
- II **triplex, -icis**, ADJ. (TER+ PARC-), threefold, triple
- III **veterānus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (VETUS), old, veteran, i.e. composed of veterans—PL. M. AS SUBST., veteran soldiers, veterans
- IV **proximē**, ADV. SUP. (PROXIMUS), Of place, nearest, very near, next; Fig., of time, very lately, just before, most recently, last before
- V **legiones...auxilia...collocari**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iussit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VI **collōco, āvi, ātum, -āre** (COL- + LŌCO), to place together, to arrange, to station, lay, put, place, set; set up, erect, etc., a thing (or person) somewhere; Esp. To give in marriage

ac tōtum montem hominibus^I complēri^{II} ^{III}

=and (also) that the whole mountain should be filled with men
~that the whole mountain should be covered with men

et interea sarcinās^{IV} in unum locum cōferri^V

=and that in the meantime the (soldiers) sacks should be brought together into one place
~and that meanwhile the baggage should be brought together into one place

et eum [locum] ab eīs^{VI}

=and /he ordered/ that [place] /to be fortified/ by those men
~and // the position // by those

quī in superiōre aciē cōstiterant^{VII}

=who had stood in the higher battle line
~who were posted in the upper line

mūniri^{VIII}

=/that [place]/ to be fortified
~to be fortified

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **montem...complēri**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **compleō, -ēvi, -ētus, -ēre** (COM- + PLE-), to fill up, fill full, fill out, make full, cram, crowd; Esp. In milit. lang., To make the army, a legion, etc., of a full number, to complete, fill up

IV **sarcina, -æ, f.** (SAR-), a package, bundle, burden, load, pack; Pl., packs, luggage, baggage

V **sarcinas...cōferri**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **ab eīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

VII **cōstō, stiti, statūrus, āre** (CŌN + STO), to agree, accord, be consistent, correspond, fit; To be certain, be ascertained, be known, be settled, be established

VIII **eum...mūniri**, INDIR. DISC. §580

iussit

=he ordered

~he ordered

I.XXIV.III.

HELVĒTIĪ CUM OMNIBUS SUIS CARRIS SECŪTĪ
 IMPEDĪMENTA IN ŪNUM LOCUM CONTULĒRUNT; IPSĪ
 CŌNFERTISSIMĀ ACIĒ, REIECTŌ NOSTRŌ EQUITĀTŪ,
 PHALANGE FACTĀ SUB PRĪMAM NOSTRAM ACIEM
 SUCCESSĒRUNT.

Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī impedimenta¹ in ūnum
 locum contulērunt

=the Helvetii <having> followed
 with all their own wagons,
 brought together (their)
 baggage into one place

~the Helvetii having followed
 with all their wagons, brought
 together their baggage into one
 place

ipsī

=(they) themselves

~they themselves

I **impedimentum, -i**, N. (IMP-), a hinderance, impediment; PL., travelling
 equipage, luggage

cōnfertissimā^{I II} aciē^{III}, reiectō^{IV} nostrō equitātū^V, phalange^{VI} factā^{VII}
 =in the most pressed close battle ~in very close order, after
 line, with our cavalry <having having repulsed our cavalry and
 been> thrown back, (those men) formed a phalanx
 with a phalanx <having been>
 formed

sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt^{VIII}
 =(and) they approached near ~advanced up to our front line
 our first battle line

I PPP. OF *confercio*

II **cōnfertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *pressed close, crowded, thick, dense; Close, compact, in close array*

III **cōnfertissimā aciē**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

IV **rēiecto, āvi, -ātum, -āre** (RE- + IACTŌ), *To throw or cast back*

V **reiectō nostrō equitātū**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **phalanx, -angis**, F., *a compact body of heavy armed men in battle array, battalion, phalanx*

VII **phalange factā**, ABL. ABS. §420

VIII **succēdō, -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (SUB + CEDO), *to go below, come under, enter; To approach, draw near, march on, advance, march up*

I.XXV

THE ROMANS CHARGE.

I.XXV.I.



ÆSAR PRĪMUM SUŌ, DEINDE OMNĪUM EX
CŌNSPECTŪ REMŌTĪS EQUĪS, UT ÆQUĀTŌ
OMNĪUM PERĪCULŌ SPEM FUGÆ TOLLERET,
COHORTĀTUS SUŌS PRĒLIUM COMMĪSIT.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

prĭmum [remōtō equō] suŏ^I, deinde^{II} omnium ex cōspectū^{III}
remōtīs equīs^{IV}

=first with his own [horse ~having removed out of sight
<having been> removed], then first his own horse, then those of
with the horses of all <having all
been> removed from sight

-
- I **[remōtō equō] suŏ**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420
- II **deinde**, ADV., In space, then, next, thereafter, thence
- III **ex cōspectū**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- IV **remōtīs equīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

ut æquātō^I omnium periculō^{II} spem fugæ^{III} tolleret^{IV}

=<in order> that with the danger ~that he might make the danger
of all <having been> equalised, of all equal, and do away with
he might take away the hope of the hope of flight
flight

cohortātus^V suōs prœlium commisit

=he (Cæsar) <having> exhorted ~after encouraging his men,
his own men, joined the battle joined battle

I.XXV.II.

MILITĒS Ē LOCŌ SUPĒRIŌRE PĪLĪS MISSĪS FACILE
HOSTIUM PHALANGEM PERFRĒGĒRŪNT.

Militēs ē locō superiōre^{VI} pīlīs^{VII} missīs^{VIII}

=the soldiers, with heavy ~his soldiers hurling their
javelins <having been> sent javelins from the higher ground
from a higher place

I **æquō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (ÆQUUS), to make equal, equalize

II **æquātō...periculō**, ABL. ABS. §420

III OBJ. GEN. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS USED WITH NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS. §347

IV **ut...tolleret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

V **cohortor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (COM- + HORTOR), to animate, encourage, advise, incite, exhort, admonish; Of a commander, to exhort, encourage, address

VI **ē locō superiōre**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

VII **pīlum, -ī**, N. (PIS-), a heavy javelin, pilum

VIII **pīlīs missīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt^I

=they easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy ~easily broke the enemy's phalanx

LXXV.III.

EĀ DISIECTĀ GLADIIS DĒSTRACTIS ĪN EŌS IMPETUM FĒCĒRUNT.

Eā disiectā^{II III} gladiis dēstrictis^{IV V}

=with that (phananx) <having been> hurled apart, with swords <having been> drawn ~that being dispersed; with drawn swords

in eōs impetum fēcērunt

=they made an attack against them ~they made a charge on them

LXXV.IV.

GALLIS MAGNŌ AD PUḠNAM ERAT IMPEDĪMENTŌ QUOD PLŪRIBUS EŌRUM SCŪTIS ŪNŌ ICTŪ PĪLŌRUM TRĀNSFĪXIS ET COLLIGĀTIS, CŪM FERRUM SĒ ĪNFLEXISSET, NEQUE ĒVELLERE NEQUE SĪNISTRĀ IMPEDĪTĀ SATIS COMMODĒ PUḠNĀRE POTERANT; MULTĪ UT DIŪ IACTĀTŌ BRACCHIŌ PRĒOPTĀRENT SCŪTUM MANŪ ĒMITTERE ET NŪDŌ CORPORE PUḠNĀRE.

I **perfringō, -frēgī, -frāctus, -ere** (PER + FRANGO), *to break through, break in pieces, shiver, shatter*

II **dīsiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (DIS + IACIO), *to throw asunder, drive asunder, scatter, disperse, break up, tear to pieces*

III **eā disiectā**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **dēstringo, -inxī, -ictus, -ere** (DĒ + STRINGO), *to strip off; To unsheathe, draw*

V **gladiis dēstrictis**, ABL. ABS. §420

Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō

=it was a great <source of> ~it was a great impediment to
hiderance <in respect> to the the Gauls in fighting
fight for the Gauls

scūtis^I ūnō ictū^{II} ^{III} ^{IV} pīlōrum trānsfixis^V et colligātis^{VI} ^{VII}

=/that with several of their/ ~bucklers had been by one
shields <having been> transfixed stroke of the (Roman) javelins
and <having been> bound pierced through and pinned fast
together by one blow of the together
javelins

quod plūribus eōrum

=that with several of their ~that, since several of their

I **scūtum, -i, n.,** *An oblong shield, made of boards fastened together, and covered with leather, a buckler* (whereas *clipeus* denotes a round shield, target of metal)

II **Gallis...impedimentō,** DOUBLE DAT. CONSTRUCTION. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED, NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF SERVICE, OR THE DOUBLE DATIVE CONSTRUCTION. THE VERB IS USUALLY SUM. THE NOUN EXPRESSING THE END FOR WHICH IS REGULARLY ABSTRACT AND SINGULAR IN NUMBER AND IS NEVER MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, EXCEPT ONE OF DEGREE (MAGNUS, MINOR, ETC.), OR BY A GENITIVE. §382

III **ictus, -ūs, m. (IC-),** *a blow, stroke, stab, cut, thrust, bite, sting, wound*

IV **ūnō ictū,** ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V **trānsfigō, -fixī, -fixus, -ere** (TRĀNS + FIGO), *to pierce through, transpierce, transfix*

VI **colligo, -āvi, -ātum** (COL + LĪGO), *to bind, tie, or fasten together, to connect, bind, tie up*

VII **scūtis...trānsfixis et conligātis,** ABL. ABS. §420

cum ferrum^I sē inflexisset^{II III}

=since the iron itself had bent

~as the point of the iron had bent itself

neque ēvellere^{IV}

=neither to tear (it) out

~neither pluck it out

neque [manus]^V sinistrā^{VI} impedītā^{VII}

=nor with (their) left [hand]
<being> impeded

~nor with their left hand
entangled

satis commodē^{VIII} pugnāre poterant

=were they able to fight
advantageously enough

~they were able to fight with
sufficient ease

multī ut diū

=that <as a result>, many men,
all day

~so that many, for long time

I **ferrum, ī, n.** iron

II **cum...inflexisset**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

III **inflectō, -ēxī, -exus, -ere** (IN + FLECTŌ), to bend, bow, curve, turn aside

IV **ēvellō, -velli, -volsus, -ere** (Ē + VELLŌ), to tear out, pluck out, extract

V **manus, -ūs, f.** (MA-), a hand; Milit., an armed force, corps of soldiers
—“si nova manus cum veteribus copiis se conjunxisset”

VI **sinister, -tra, -trum**, ADJ., WITH COMP. A DOUBLE COMP., of uncertain origin, left, on the left, on the left hand, at the left side; SUBST. F. (SC. manus), **sinistrā impedītā**, with the left hand impeded

VII **sinistrā impedītā**, ABL. ABS. §420

VIII **commodē**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (COMMODUS), duly, properly, completely, rightly, well, skilfully

iactātō brachiō^{I II III}

=with (their) arm <having been> ~after having tossed their arm
tossed about about

præoptārent^{IV V} scūtum manū^{VI} ēmittere^{VII}

=they chose rather to send out ~they chose rather to cast away
the shield from (their) arm the buckler from their hand

et nūdō^{VIII} corpore^{IX} pugnāre

=and (they chose) to fight with ~and fight with their person
an exposed body unprotected

I.XXV.V.

TANDEM VULNERIBUS DĒFESSĪ ET PEDEM REFERRE ET,
QUOD MŌNS SUBERAT CIRCITER MĪLLE PASSUUM, EŌ SĒ
RECIPERE CĒPĒRUNT.

I ABL. of Attendant Circumstance: *convocatis eorum principibus*, having called together their leading men (I.X); *capto monte et succedentibus nostris*, after they had reached the height and our men were coming up (I.XXV)

II **iactātō brachiō**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **bracchium**, -ī, N., the forearm, lower arm

IV **præoptō**, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (PRÆ + OPTŌ), to choose rather, desire more, prefer

V **ut...præoptārent**, CLAUSE OF RESULT. PURE CLAUSES OF RESULT, WITH UT OR UT NŌN, EXPRESS THE RESULT OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §537

VI ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

VII **ēmittō**, -mīsī, -missus, -ere (Ē + MITTŌ), to send out, send forth —“scutum manu,” to throw away, throw aside (I.XXV.IV)

VIII **nūdus**, -a, -um, ADJ., naked, bare, unclothed, stripped, uncovered, exposed—“nudo corpore pugnare,” without a shield (I.XXV.IV)

IX **nūdō corpore**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

Tandem^x vulneribus^{xi xii} defessī^{xiii} et pedem^{xiv} referre^{xv}

=finally, (those men) <having> ~at length, grown weary with
became tired by injuries, and wounds, they began to retreat
(they began) both to bear back
(their) foot

et

=and

~and

quod mōns suberit^{vii} circiter mille passuum^{viii} spatio^{ix}

=as a mountain was near—at a ~as a mountain was at hand—at
space (of) around one thousand a distance of one mile
of paces

X **tandem**, ADV. (TAM + THE DEMONSTR. ENDING DEM), *at length, at last, in the end, finally*

XI ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

XII **vulnus, -ĕris**, N. (VUL-), *a wound*

XIII **dēfetiscor, -fessus, -ī**, DEP., *to become tired, grow weary, faint*

XIV **pēs, -pedis**, M. (PED-), *a foot*; **referre pedem**, AS A MILIT., *to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat*

XV **referō, rettulī, relātus, referre** (RE- + FERŌ), *to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back*; *Referre pedem* or *gradum*, AS A MILIT. t. t., *to draw back, retire, withdraw, retreat*; In partic. *To pay back, give back, repay*—Esp. in the phrase *referre gratiam*, *to return thanks, show one's gratitude (by deeds), to recompense, requite*; *To bring, convey, deliver any thing as an official report, to report, announce, notify (= renuntiare)*

VII **subsum** —, **-esse** (SUB + SUM), *to be under, be behind*; Of places and persons, *to be near, to be at hand*

VIII PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS, NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

IX Intervals of Space and Duration of Time are sometimes expressed by the Ablative, especially when modified by an Adjective or Genitive; as, *milibus passuum sex*, *six miles (distant)*, Lit. *by six thousands of paces* (I.XLVIII); *tota nocte ierunt*, *all night long they went on* (I.XXVI)

eō sē recipere cōpērunt

=they began to betake ~to betake themselves thither
themselves thither

I.XXV.VI.

CAPTŌ MONTE ET SUCCĒDENTIBUS NOSTRIS, BOĪ ET
TULINGĪ, QUĪ HOMINUM MĪLIBUS CIRCITER QUINDECIM
AGMEN HOSTIUM CLAUDĒBANT ET NOVISSIMIS
PRÆSIDIŌ ERANT, EX ITINERE NOSTRŌS AB LATERE
APERTŌ ADGRESSĪ CIRCUMVENIRE, ET ID CŌNSPICATĪ
HELVETIĪ, QUĪ IN MONTEM SĒSĒ RECĒPERANT, RŪRSUS
INSTARE ET PRÆLIUM REDĪNTEGRARE CŌPĒRUNT.

Captō^I monte^{II} et succēdentibus nostris^{III} [militibus]

=with the mountain <having ~when the mountain had been
been> seized, and with our gained, and our men were
[soldiers] <having been> advancing up
advanced

Boī et Tulingī

=the Boii and Tulingi ~the Boii and Tulingi

**quī hominum mīlibus^{IV} circiter quindecim agmen hostium
claudēbant^V**

=(the Boii and Tulingi) who with ~who by means of about 15,000
around 15 thousands of men, men closed the enemy's line of
closed the battle line of the march
enemy

I PPP. OF *capiō*

II ***captō monte***, ABL. ABS. §420

III ***succēdentibus nostris***, ABL. ABS. §420

IV ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. §414

V ***claudō, -sī, -sus, -ere*** (CLAV-), to shut, close, shut up

et [agminis] novissimis præsidiō^I erant

=and they were <a source of> ~and served as protection for
defence for the newest [battle their rear
line] (i.e., the rearguard)

ex itinere^{II} nostrōs ab latere^{III} apertō^{IV} adgressi circumvenire^V
(circumvērunt)

=(those men) <having> attacked ~having assailed our men on the
our men on the open flank on exposed flank as they advanced
the march, (tried) to surround [prepared] to surround them
(them)

et id cōspiciāt^{VI} Helvetiī

=and (after) <having> seen it, ~upon seeing which, the Helvetii
the Helvetii

quī in montem sēsē recēperant

who took themselves back to the ~who had betaken themselves to
mountain the mountain

I **novissimis præsidiō**, DBL. DAT. CONSTRUCTION. §382

II **ex itinere**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426

III **latus, -eris**, N. (PLAT-), the side, flank—Of an army, the flank—Esp., a (ab) latere, on or at the side or flank; a or ab lateribus, on or at the sides or flanks (opp. a fronte, in front, before, and a tergo, at the back, behind)

IV **apertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PPP. OF *aperiō*); **aperiō, -erui, -ertus, -ire** (AB + PAR-), to uncover, lay bare; To open, uncover, uncloze, make visible, discover, display, show, reveal

V **circumveniō, -vēnī, -ventus, -ire** (CIRCUM- + VENIō), to come around, be around, encircle, encompass, surround; Specif., to surround in a hostile manner, to encompass, beset, invest

VI **cōspicor, -ātus, -āri**, DEP. (COM- + SPEC-), to get sight of, descry, see, perceive

rūrsus^I instāre

=to press upon (those men) ~to press on again
again

et praelium redintegrāre^{II} cōpērunt

=began // and to restore the ~began // and renew the battle
battle

I.XXV.VII.

RŌMĀNĪ CŌNVERSA SIGNA BIPERTĪTŌ INTULĒRUNT:
PRĪMA ET SECUNDA ACIĒS, UT VICTĪS AC SUMMŌTĪS
RESISTERET; TERTIA, UT VENIENTĒS SUSTĪNĒRET.

Rōmānī conversa^{III} signa^{IV} bipertītō^V intulērunt

=the Romans beared (their) ~the Romans having faced
<having been> reversed about, advanced to the attack in
standards (upon the enemy) two divisions
divided in two parts (divisions)

prīma et secunda aciēs

=the first and second battle line ~the first and second line

ut

=<in order> that ~in order

- I **rūrsus**, ADV. (PPP. OF *revertō*), *turned back, back, backwards*; Denoting return to a former action or its repetition, *back again, again, anew*
- II **redintegrō**, -āvi, -ātus, -āre (RED + INTEGRŌ), *to make whole again, restore, renew, recruit, refresh*
- III **convertō**, -tī, -sus, -ere (CON + VERTŌ) ACT., *to turn or whirl round, to wheel about, to cause to turn, to turn back, reverse*; In partic. Milit. t. t., *convertere signa, aciem, etc., to wheel about, change the direction of a march*
- IV **signum**, -ī, N., *a mark, token, sign, indication, proof*; A military standard, ensign, banner; MILIT., *signa (arma) in hostem, or hosti, to bear the standards against the enemy, to attack, make an attack upon*
- V **bipertitus**, -a, -um, ADJ. (BI + PARS), *divided in two parts*

victīs^I ac summōtīs^{II III}

=(those) men <having been> ~those who had been defeated
conquered and (those) men and driven off the field
<having been> removed

resisteret^{IV V}

=that it (the first and second ~to resist
battle line) might resist

tertia

=the third (battle line) ~the third battle line

ut [Bōios et Tulingōs] venientēs^{VI} sustinēret^{VII}

=<in order> that it (the third ~to hold back those who were
battle line) might sustain the just arriving
coming [Boii and Tulingi]

-
- I **vincō, vīcī, victus, -ere** (VIC-), In war, to conquer, overcome, get the better of, defeat, subdue, vanquish, be victorious
- II **summōvēō, -mōvī, -mōtum, -ere** (SUM + MŌVĒO), to send or drive off or away, to remove
- III **victīs ac submōtīs**, ABL. ABS. §420
- IV **resistō, -stitī, —, -ere** (RE + SISTŌ), to stand back, remain standing, stand still, halt, stop, stay, stay behind, remain, continue; In war, to withstand, oppose, resist, make opposition
- V **ut...resisteret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531
- VI PART. PL. PRES. M. ACC. **veniō**
- VII **ut...sustinēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

LXXVI



THE HELVETIANS ARE TOTALLY DEFEATED.



LXXVII.

ITA AN̄CIPITĪ PR̄ELIŌ DIŪ ATQUE ĀCRITER
PUGNĀTUM EST.

Ita

=thus

~thus

ancipitī^I praeliō^{II}

=in a two-headed battle

~in a battle on two fronts

diū atque ācriter^{III} pugnātum est

=it was fought long and fiercely
(by them)

~they fought long and harsh

I **anceps, -cipitis**, ADJ. (AN- + CAP, in caput), two-headed, twofold, double—anceps praelium, battle on two fronts

II **ancipitī praeliō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

III **ācriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. **ācrius**, AND SUP. **ācerrimē** (ĀCER), sharply, fiercely

I.XXVI.II.

DIŪTIUS CUM SUSTĪNĒRE NOSTRŌRUM IMPETŪS NŌN
POSSENT, ALTERĪ SĒ, UT CŒPERANT, ĪN MŌNTEM
RECĒPĒRUNT, ALTERĪ AD IMPEDĪMENTA ET CARRŌS SUŌS
SĒ CONTULĒRUNT.

Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent^I

=when they were not longer able
to sustain their attacks

~when they could no longer
withstand the attacks of our
men

alterī sē

=one (division), themselves

~the one division

ut cœperant

=as they had begun (to do)

~as they had begun to do

in montem recēpērunt^{II}

=they take (themselves) back to
the mountain

~retreated to the mountain

alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt

=the other men brought
themselves together to the
baggage and their own wagons

~the other turned to their
baggage and wagons

I **cum...possent**, **cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **recipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (RE + CAPIO), *To take back, bring back, carry back, retake, get back, regain*; WITH PRON. REFLEX., *to draw back, withdraw, betake oneself, retire, retreat, escape*

I.XXVI.III.

NAM HŌC TŌTŌ PRĒLIŌ, CUM AB HŌRĀ SEPTIMĀ AD
VESPERUM PUGNĀTUM SIT, ĀVERSUM HOSTEM VIDĒRE
NĒMŌ POTUIT.

Nam hōc tōtō praeliō^I

=for in all this battle

~for during the whole of this
battle

cum ab hōrā^{II} septimā ad vesperum^{III IV} pugnātum sit^V

=although it was fought from the seventh hour until the evening ~although the fight lasted from the seventh hour to eventide

āversum^{VI} hostem vidēre nēmō potuit

=no one was able to see an enemy turned away

~no one could see an enemy
with his back turned

I **hōc tōtō praeliō**, ABL. OF TIME WHEN. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424

II **hōra**, -æ, F., an hour (one twelfth of the day between sunrise and sunset)

III “ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum,” i.e. 12 (noon) 1 P.M.

IV **vesper**, -erī, M. (VAS-), the evening-star; The evening, even, eve, eventide

V **cum...pugnātum sit**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

VI PPP. OF **āvertō**

LXXVI.IV.

AD MULTAM NOCTEM ETIAM AD IMPEDIMENTA
PUGNĀTUM EST, PROPTEREĀ QUOD PRŌ VĀLLŌ CARRŌS
OBIĒCERANT, ET Ē LOCŌ SUPERIŌRE IN NOSTRŌS
VENIENTĒS TĒLA CONICIĒBANT, ET NŌN NŪLLĪ INTER
CARRŌS ROTĀSQUE MATARĀS AC TRĀGULĀS
SUBICIĒBANT NOSTRŌSQUE VULNERĀBANT.

Ad multam^I noctem^{II} etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est

=it was fought toward much (of) the night, even to the baggage ~the fight was carried on also at the baggage (up) to late in the night

proptereā quod prŏ vāllŏ^{III} carrŏs obiēcerant^{IV}

=on account of that because they threw before (their) wagons as a rampart (for defense) ~for they had cast in the way wagons in the way as a rampart

et ē locŏ superiŏre^V in nostrŏs venientĒs tĒla coniciēbant^{VI}

=and from a higher place, they threw together projectiles at our coming men ~and from the higher ground kept hurling weapons upon our men

-
- I **multus, -a, -um**, ADJ., PL., WITH SUBST., OR WITH ADJ. USED AS SUBST., *many, a great number*; IN SG., to denote quantity, *much, great, abundant*
- II **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), *night*—*ad multam noctem*: (up) to late in the night
- III **vāllum, -ī**, N. (VALLUS), *a line of palisades, palisaded rampart, intrenchment, circumvallation*; Fig., *a wall, rampart, fortification*
- IV **obiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (OB + IACIO), *to throw before, throw to, cast, offer, present, expose*; In partic., *to throw or place before by way of defence or hinderance; to cast in the way, set against, oppose*
- V **ē locŏ superiŏre**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX, §426
- VI **cōniciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (COM- + IACIO), *To throw together, unite, collect; To throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, put, place, etc., a person or thing with force, quickly, etc., to or towards*

et nōn nūllī inter carrōs rotāsque^I matarās^{II} ac trāgulās^{III}
subiciēbant^{IV}

=and not no one between the wagons and the wheels were throwing lances and javelins (from) below ~as they came on, and some from between the wagons and the wheels kept darting their lances and javelins from beneath

nostrōsque [mīlitēs] vulnerābant^V

=and they wounded our [soldiers] ~and wounding our men

I.XXVI.V.

DIŪ CUM ESSET PUGNĀTUM, IMPEDĪMENTĪS CASTRĪSQUE
NOSTRĪ POTĪTĪ SUNT.

Diū cum esset pugnātum^{VI}

=when (after) it was fought (for) a long time ~after the fight had lasted some time

impedīmentīs castrīsque^{VII} nostrī potīti sunt

=our men gained possession of (their) camp and (their) baggage ~our men gained possession of their baggage and camp

I **rota, -æ, f.** (AR-), a wheel

II **matara, æ, f.**, Celtic, a javelin, pike, Celtic lance

III **trāgūla, -æ, f.** (TRAHO), A kind of javelin or dart attached to a strap by which it was swung when thrown

IV **subiciō, iēcī, iectus, ere** (SUB + IACIO), to throw under, place under, cast below

V **vulnēro, -āvi, -ātum, -are** (VULNUS), to wound, to hurt, or injure by a wound

VI **cum esset pugnātum**, cum CLAUSE. §546

VII **impedīmentīs castrīsque**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **potiti sunt**. THE DEponents ūTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

LXXVI.VI.

IBI ORGETORĪGIS FĪLIA ATQUE ŪNUS Ē FĪLIIS CAPTUS EST.

Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs¹ captus est

=there, the daughter of ~there the daughter and one of
Orgatorix and one from the sons the sons of Orgatorix was taken
(of Orgatorix) was captured

LXXVI.VII.

EX EŌ PRĒLIŌ CIRCITER HOMĪNUM MĪLIA CENTUM
TRĪGĪNTĀ SUPERFUĒRUNT EĀQUE TŌTĀ NOCTE
CONTĪNENTER IĒRUNT: NŪLLAM PARTEM NOCTIS
ITĪNERE ĪTERMISSŌ ĪN FĪNĒS LĪNGŌNUM DIĒ QUĀRTŌ
PERVĒNĒRUNT, CŪM ET PROPTER VŪLNERA MĪLITŪM ET
PROPTER SEPULTŪRAM OCCĪSŌRUM NOSTRĪ TRĪDUUM
MORĀTĪ EŌS SEQUĪ NŌN POTUISSĒNT.

Ex eō prœliō circiter hominum^{II} mīlia centum trīgintā
superfuērunt

=from that battle around 100 ~after the battle about 130,000
(and) 30 thousands of men men [of the enemy] remained
remained alive

I *ē filiīs*, ABL. WITH CARDINAL NUMERAL. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. III. CARDINAL NUMERALS (EXCEPT MĪLIA) REGULARLY TAKE THE ABLATIVE WITH E (EX) OR DE INSTEAD OF THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE. SO ALSO, QUIDAM, A CERTAIN ONE, COMMONLY, AND OTHER WORDS OCCASIONALLY. §346^{III}

II PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

eāque tōtā nocte^I continenter iērunt

=and in that entire night, they ~who marched incessantly
went during the whole of that night

nūllam partem^{II} noctis

=<for> not any part of the night ~for no part of the night

itinere intermissō^{III} IV

=(and) with the march <having ~and after a march discontinued
been> interrupted

in finēs Lingonum^V diē quārtō^{VI} pervēnērunt

=they came through into the ~arrived in the territories of the
territories of the Lingones on Lingones on the fourth day
the fourth day

cum et propter vulnera militum

=since, both on account of the ~while, both on account of the
wounds of the soldiers wounds of the soldiers

I **tōtā nocte**, ABL. OF DURATION OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424^{II}

II ACC. OF TIME DURING. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: TIME DURING WHICH OR WITHIN WHICH MAY BE EXPRESSED BY THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF A NOUN IN THE SINGULAR, WITH AN ORDINAL NUMERAL. §424

III **intermittō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (INTER + MITTO), to leave off, intermit, omit, suspend, interrupt, neglect

IV **itinere intermissō**, ABL. ABS. §420

V **Lingonēs, -um**, M., a Gallic people west of the Sequanians

VI **diē quārtō**, ABL. OF TIME WHEN. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

et propter sepultūram^I occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī^{II} eōs
sequī nōn potuissent^{III}

=and on account of the burial of ~our men, having stopped for
the struck of the slain, our men, three days; and the burial of the
<having> delayed three days, slain, had not been able to
had not been able to follow them follow them

I.XXVI.VIII.

CÆSAR AD LINGONĒS LITTERĀS NŪNTIŌSQUE MĪSIT, NĒ
EŌS FRŪMENTŌ NĒVE ALIĀ RĒ IUVĀRENT: QUI SĪ
IŪVISSENT, SĒ EŌDEM LOCŌ QUŌ HELVĒTIŌS
HABITŪRUM.

Cæsar ad Lingonēs litterās^{IV} nūntiōsque mīsīt

=Cæsar sent letters and ~Cæsar sent letters and
messengers to the Lingones messengers to the Lingones
(with orders)

-
- I **sepultūra**, -æ, F., a burial, interment, funeral obsequies, sepulture
- II **moror**, -ātus, -ārī, DEP. (MORA), to delay, tarry, stay, wait, remain, linger, loiter
- III **cum...potuissent**, cum CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549
- IV **littera**, -æ, F. (LI-), a letter, alphabetical sign, written sign of a sound; TRANS. USU. PL. **Litteræ**, -ārum, F., a letter, epistle

nē eōs frūmentō nēve^I aliā rē^{II} iuvārent^{III IV}

=(saying) that they should not ~not assist them with corn or
aid them with corn or with any with any thing else
other thing

quī^{V VI} sī [eos] iūvissent^{VII}

=(those men) who, if they should ~and if they should assist them
have aided [those men (the
Helvetii)]

sē [eos] eōdem locō^{VIII} quō Helvētiōs habitūrum [esse]^{IX}

=he (Cæsar) would hold [those ~he would regard them in the
men] in the same place in which same light as the Helvetii
(he held)^X the Helvetii

I nēve (or neu), ADV. and not, nor, and that not, and lest

II frūmentō nēve aliā rē, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III iūvo, iūvi, iūtum, -arī (DIV-), to help, aid, assist, support, benefit

IV nē...iuvārent, COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

V A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.D); *qui...prælium committunt* (Historical Present), *they (or and they)...joined battle* (I.XV)

VI quī, who may be used in transitions, but English prefers the demonstrative *these*

VII sī iūvissent, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

VIII eōdem locō, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

IX sē...habitūrum, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.* §580

X V. MISSING THROUGH ELLIPSIS

I.XXVI.IX.

IPSE TRĪDUŌ ĪNTERMISSŌ CUM OMNIBUS CŌPIĪS EŌS
SEQUĪ CĒPIT.

Ipse

=*he himself*

~*himself*

trīduŏ intermissŏ¹

=*with three days <having been>*
left off

~*after the three days' interval*

cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī cēpit

=*he begins to follow them with*
all (his) troops

~*he began to pursue them with*
all his forces

I ***trīduŏ intermissŏ***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

I.XXVII

THE HELVETIANS BEG FOR TERMS.

I.XXVII.I.

HELVETIĪ OMNIUM RĒRUM ĪNOPIĀ ADDUCTĪ
LĒGĀTŌS DĒ DĒDITIŌNE AD EUM MĪSĒRUNT.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā^I ^{II} adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne^{III} ad
eum mīsērunt

=the Helvetiī, <having been> led by a want of all things, sent
embassadors to him concerning a surrender ~the Helvetiī, compelled by the
want of every thing, sent
embassadors to him about a
surrender

I.XXVII.II.

QUĪ CUM EUM ĪN ITĪNERE CONVĒNISSĒNT SĒQUE AD
PEDĒS PRŌIĒCISSĒNT SŪPLICITERQUE LOCŪTĪ FLĒNTĒS
PĀCEM PETĪSSĒNT, ATQUE EŌS ĪN EŌ LOCŌ QUŌ TUM
ESSĒNT SŪUM ADVĒNTUM EXPECTĀRE IUSSISSET,
PĀRUĒRUNT.

Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent

=(those men) who, when they had met him on the journey ~when these had met him on the
way

I **inopia, -æ, f. (INOPS), want, lack, scarcity**

II **ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION.** §409

III **dēditiō, -ōnis, f. (DEDO), a giving up, surrender, capitulation**

sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent

=and they had thrown forth themselves at (Cæsar's) feet ~and had thrown themselves at his feet

suppliciterque^I locūtī flentēs pācem petissent

=and <having> humbly spoken, crying, they had sought peace ~and speaking in suppliant tone had, with tears, sued for peace

atque eōs in eō locō

=and (when) // them // in that place ~and [when] // them // in the place

quō^{II} tum essent^{III}

=in which (where) they then were ~where they then were

suum adventum expectāre

=to await his own coming ~to await his arrival

[eos] iussisset^{IV}

=he had ordered [them] ~he had ordered (them)

pāruērunt^V

=(and) they obeyed (him) ~they obeyed his commands

I **suppliciter**, ADV., like a petitioner, humbly, submissively, suppliantly

II **quō**, ADV. AND CONJ. DAT. AND ABL. (QUI), Trop. For which reason, wherefore, whence; To or in which place, whither, where (REL. AND INTERROG.)

III **quō...essent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

IV **cum...convēnissent...prōiēcissent...petissent...iussisset**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V **pāreō, -uī, —, -ēre (PAR-)**, to appear, be visible, be at hand; To obey, be obedient, submit, comply

I.XXVII.III.

EŌ POSTQUAM CÆSAR PERVĒNIT, OBSIDĒS, ARMA,
SERVŌS QUĪ AD EŌS PERFŪGISSĒNT POPOSCIT.

Eŏ postquam^I Cæsar pervēnit

=after that, Cæsar arrived ~when Cæsar arrived there
thither

obsidēs, arma, servōs^{II}

=hostages, arms, (and) slaves ~hostages, their arms, and the
slaves

quī ad eŏs perfūgissent^{III IV}

=who (as he said) had fled to ~who had deserted to the enemy
them

poposcit^V

=he demanded ~he demanded

-
- I Temporal Conjunctions *ubi, ut, as when, postquam, as after, postes quam* (written as two words) as *after that* or *after and simul atque, simul, as soon as*, are often used with the Indicative, usually in the Perfect Tense. Thus, *Quod ubi Cæsar rescit. When Cæsar found this out* (I.XXVIII); *postquam Cæsar pervenit, after Cæsar arrived* (I.XXVII); *simul atque se receperunt, so soon as they rallied* (IV.XXVII)
- II **servus** (or **servos**), -ī, m. (SERVUS), a slave, servant, serf, serving-man
- III **quī...perfūgissent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592
- IV **perfugiō, -fūgī, —, -ere** (PER + FUGIŌ), to flee for refuge; In partic., to go over or desert to the enemy (class.)
- V **pōscō, popōsci, —, -ere** (PREC-), to ask urgently, beg, demand, request, desire

I.XXVII.IV.

DUM EA CONQUĪRUNTUR ET CŌNFERUNTUR, NOCTE
 ĪNTERMISSĀ, CIRCITER HOMĪNŪM MĪLIA SEX EIUS PĀGĪ
 QUĪ VERBIGENŪS APPELLĀTUR, SĪVE TIMŌRE PERTERRITĪ,
 NĒ ARMĪS TRĀDITĪS SUPPLICIŌ ADFICERĒNTUR, SĪVE SPĒ
 SALŪTIS ĪNDUCTĪ, QUOD ĪN TANTĀ MULTITŪDĪNE
 DĒDITICIŌRŪM SUAM FUGAM AUT OCCULTĀRĪ AUT
 OMNĪNŌ IGNŌRĀRĪ POSSE EXĪSTIMĀRĒNT, PRĪMĀ
 NOCTE Ē CASTRĪS HELVĒTIŌRŪM ĒGRESSĪ AD RHĒNŪM
 FĪNĒSQUE GERMĀNŌRŪM CONTENDĒRUNT.

Dum ea conquīrunturⁱ

=while those (things) are being sought ~while those things were being sought for

et cōnferuntur

=and (while these things) are being collected ~and got together

nocte intermissāⁱⁱ

=with a night <having been> passed ~after a night's interval

circiter hominumⁱⁱⁱ mīlia sex eius pāgī

=around 6 thousands of men of his canton ~about 6000 men of that canton

I conquīrō, -quīsivī, -quīsitus, -ere (COM + QUĀERO), to seek for, hunt up, search out, procure, bring together, collect

II nocte intermissā, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

quī Verbigenus^I appellātur

=which is called the Verbigenus ~which was called the Verbigene

sive timōre^{II} perterriti

=be it (those men) <having ~whether terrified by fear
been> thoroughly terrified by
fear

nē

=lest ~lest

armīs trāditīs^{III}

=with (their) arms <having ~after delivering up their arms
been> handed over

supplicio^{IV V} afficerentur^{VI VII}

=they would be affected with ~they should be put to death
punishment

I **Verbigenus, -ī, m.,** Verbigen, Verbigenus, a canton of the Helvetians

II **ABL. OF MEANS, §409**

III **armīs trāditīs, ABL. ABS. §420**

IV **supplicō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (SUPPLEX),** to kneel down, humble oneself, pray humbly, beseech, beg, implore, supplicate

V **ABL. OF MEANS, §409**

VI **afficio, affēci, affectum, affere (AD + FACIO),** to do something to one, i.e. to exert an influence on body or mind, so that it is brought into such or such a state; WITH ACC. AND ABL., to affect a person or (rarely) thing with something; In a good sense, to bestow upon, grace with; In a bad sense, to visit with, inflict upon; supplicio affici, to be put to death

VII **nē...afficerentur, CLAUSE OF FEARING. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NĒ AFFIRMATIVE AND NĒ NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. IN THIS USE NĒ IS COMMONLY TO BE TRANSLATED BY THAT, UT AND NĒ NŌN BY THAT NOT. §564**

sīve spē^I salūtis^{II III} inductī

=or be it (those men), <having been> led by the hope of safety ~or else induced by the hope of safety

quod in tantā multitūdine dēditiciōrum^{IV} suam fugam

=because in so great a multitude of captives, their own flight ~because that amid so vast a multitude of those who had surrendered themselves, their flight

aut occultārī^V

=/it was possible/ to either be hidden ~might either be concealed

aut omnīnō ignōrārī^{VI} posse^{VII}

=or /they thought/ it was possible to be entirely unrecognized ~or // entirely overlooked

exīstimārent^{VIII}

=they thought ~they supposed

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II OBJ. GEN. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS USED WITH NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS. §347

III **salūs, -ūtis**, F. (SALVUS), a being safe and sound; a sound or whole condition, health, welfare, prosperity, preservation, safety, deliverance, etc.

IV **dēditicius, -ī**, ADJ. (DEDITUS), surrendered; PL. M. AS SUBST., prisoners of war, captives

V **occulō, -cului, -cultus, -ere** (OB + CAL-), to cover, cover over; To cover up, hide, conceal

VI **ignōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (GNA-), not to know, to be unacquainted, be ignorant, mistake, misunderstand; IN PASS., not to be known or recognized

VII INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimārent**. §592

VIII **quod...exīstimārent**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §592 & THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

*prīmā^I nocte^{II} ^{III} ē castrīs^{IV} Helvētiōrum ēgressī^V ad Rhēnum
finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt*

*=in the first part (of) the night, ~having at nightfall departed
(those men) <having> gone forth out of the camp of the Helvetii,
from the camp of the Helvetii, hastened to the Rhine and the
(and) they hastened toward the territories of the Germans
Rhine and the territories of the Germans*

-
- I **nox, noctis**, F. (NEC-), *night*; ***prīmā nocte***, *at nightfall*
- II **prīmus, -a, -um**, ADJ. SUP. (PRO-), *the first, first*; In time or place, *first, fore, foremost, the first part*
- III ***prīmā nocte***, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. \$423
- IV ***ē castrīs***, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. \$426
- V ***ēgredior, -gressus, -i***, DEP. (EX + GRADIOR), INTRANS, *to go out, come forth, march out, go away*; TRANS, *to go beyond, pass out of, leave*

LXXVIII

CÆSAR DEALS WITH THE FUGITIVE VERBIGENS.

LXXVIII.I.



QUOD UBI CÆSAR RESCIIT, QUŌRUM PER FĪNĒS
IERANT HĪS UTĪ CONQUĪRERĒNT ET
REDŪCERĒNT, SĪ SIBI PŪRGĀTI ESSE VELLĒNT,
IMPERĀVIT: REDŪCTŌS ĪN HOSTIUM NŪMERŌ
HABŪIT; RELIQUŌS OMNĒS OBSIDIBŪS, ARMĪS, PERFUGĪS
TRĀDITĪS ĪN DĒDITIŌNEM ACCĒPIT.

Quod^I ubi Cæsar resciiit^{II}

=which (thing), when Cæsar ~but when Cæsar discovered
found out (e.g. when Caesar this
discovered that)

quōrum^{III} per finēs ierant

=through the territories of ~through whose territory they
whom they had gone had gone

hīs^{IV}

=/he commanded/ these men ~these

I this; OBJ. OF **resciiit**

II SEE **scio**

III **quorum** PRECEDES ITS ANTECEDENT **hīs**, WHICH IS DAT. AFTER **imperāvit**

IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperāvit**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

utī conquirerent

=*that they should seek out* ~*to seek them out*
(them)

et redūcerent^{I II}

=*and they should lead (them)* ~*and to bring them back again*
back

sī sibi^{III} *pūrgāti*^{IV} *esse vellent*^V

=*if they wished to be exculpated* ~*if they wanted to clear*
to him themselves in his sight

imperāvit

=*he commanded* ~*he commanded*

[eos] *reductōs*^{VI} *in hostium numerō habuit*

=*[those men] <having been> led* ~*and considered them, when*
back, he held, among the brought back, in the light of
number of the enemy enemy

I *utī conquirerent et redūcerent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

II *redūcō, -dūxī, -ductus, -ere* (RE- + DŪCŌ), *to lead back, bring back, conduct back, escort back, accompany*

III DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

IV *pūrgō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre* (PURUS + AG-), *to free from what is superfluous, make clean, make pure, clean, cleanse, purify*; In partic. *To clear from accusation, to excuse, exculpate, justify* (syn. excuso)

V *sī...vellent*, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. WHEN THE CLAUSE DEPENDS UPON ANOTHER CONTAINING A WISH, A COMMAND, OR A QUESTION, EXPRESSED INDIRECTLY, THOUGH NOT STRICTLY IN THE FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. §592

VI Expressing Characterization or Description: *victis, venientes, those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I,XXV)

reliquōs omnēs

=all the remaining men

~all the rest

obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs^I trāditīs^{II}

=with the hostages, arms, (and)
deserters <having been> handed
over

~upon their delivering up the
hostages, arms, and deserters

in dēditionem accēpit^{III}

=he received in catipulation

~he accepted to a surrender

LXXVIII.II.

HELVĒTIOS, TULĪNGŌS, LATOVICŌS ĪN FĪNĒS SUŌS, UNDE
ERANT PROPECTĪ, REVERTĪ IUSSIT, ET, QUOD OMNIBUS
FRŪGIBUS ĀMISSIS DOMĪ NIHIL ERAT QUŌ FAMEM
TOLERĀRENT, ALLOBROGIBUS IMPERĀVIT UT IIS
FRŪMENTĪ CŌPIAM FACERENT: IPSŌS OPPIDA VĪCŌSQUE,
QUŌS INCENDERANT, RESTITUERE IUSSIT.

Helvētios, Tulingōs, Latovicōs^{IV} in finēs suōs

=the Helvetii, the Tulingi, (and)
the Latobrigi /to return/ to their
own territories

~the Helvetii, the Tulingi, and
the Latobrigi /to return/ to their
territories

unde^V erant propectī

=from which place they had
departed

~whence they came

I **perfuga, -æ**, M. (PER + FVG-), a deserter

II **obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **accipio, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (AD + CAPIO), to take without effort, receive, get, accept; Of voluntary taking, to take, accept, take into possession, receive

IV **Latovicī, -ōrum**, M. PL., the Latobrigi, a Celtic tribe who joined the Helvetii in their migration attempt

V **unde**, ADV. Of place. RELAT., from which place, whence

revertī^{I II}

=to return

~to return

iussit

=he ordered

~he ordered

et

=and

~and

quod

=because

~as

omnibus frūgibus āmissīs^{III IV}=with all the grain <having
been> lost~all the productions of the earth
having been destroyeddomī^V nihil erat=(and since) there was nothing
at home~and as there was nothing at
home

I **revertor, revertī, reversus sum.** DEP. (RE + VERTO), to return

II **Helvētios, Tulingōs, Latovicōs...revertī,** INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iussit.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **omnibus frūgibus āmissīs,** ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THUS IT MAY REPLACE—A TEMPORAL CLAUSE, A CAUSAL CLAUSE, A CONCESSIVE CLAUSE, A CONDITIONAL CLAUSE, AND A CLAUSE OF ACCOMPANYING CIRCUMSTANCE. §420

IV **āmittō, -ī, -issus, -ere** (AB + MITTO), to send away, dismiss, part with

V LOC. CASE. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE WHERE, BY THE LOCATIVE. §427

quō famem^I tolerārent^{II III}

=by which they (the Helvetii)
might bear (their) hunger

~whereby they might sustain
their hunger

Allobrogibus^{IV} imperāvit

=he commanded the Allobroges

~he commanded the Allobroges

ut iis^V frūmentī cōpiam facerent^{VI}

=that they should make an
abundance of grain for them

~to let them have a supply of
corn

ipsōs oppida vīcōsque

=the town and villages
themselves

~the towns and villages

quōs incenderant

=which they had burned

~which they had burned

restituere^{VII}

=to restore

~to rebuild

iussit

=(and) he ordered

~and ordered them

I **famēs, -is**, F. (FA-), *hunger*

II **tolerō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (TAL-), *to bear, endure, support, sustain, suffer; To support, nourish, maintain, sustain, preserve*

III **quō...tolerārent**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperāvit**. §367

V DAT. OF REF. §376

VI **ut...facerent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

VII **ipsōs...restituere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

I.XXVIII.III.

ID EĀ MAXIMĒ RATIŌNE FĒCIT, QUOD NŌLUIT EUM
LOCUM UNDE HELVĒTĪ DISCESSERANT VACĀRE, NĒ
PROPTER BONITĀTEM AGRŌRUM GERMĀNĪ QUĪ TRĀNS
RHĒNUM INCOLUNT E SUĪS FĪNIBUS ĪN HELVĒTIŌRUM
FĪNĒS TRĀNSĪRENT ET FĪNITIMĪ GALLIÆ PRŌVĪNCIÆ
ALLOBROGIBUSQUE ESSĒNT.

Id eā maximē ratiōne^{I II} fēcit

=he did it (this) especially with this reasoning ~this he did, chiefly, on this reasoning

quod nōluit

=because he was unwilling ~because he was unwilling

eum locum

=that that place ~that the country

unde Helvētī discesserant

=from which the Helvetii had departed ~whence the Helvetii had departed

vacāre^{III}

=to be uninhabited ~should be untenanted

I **ratiō, -ōnis**, F. (RA-), a reckoning, numbering, casting up, account, calculation, computation; In rhet., a showing cause, argument, reasoning in support of a proposition

II **eā maximē ratiōne**, ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

III **vacō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre**, to be empty, be void, be vacant, be without, not to contain; Lit. of space. uninhabited, uncultivated

nē propter bonitatem^I agrōrum Germāni

*=lest the Germans // on account
of the goodness of the lands*

*~lest the Germans // on account
of the excellence of the lands*

quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt

*=(the Germans) who dwell
across the Rhine*

*~who dwell on the other side of
the Rhine*

e suis finibus^{II} in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent

*=should cross over from their
own territories into the
territories of the Helvetii*

*~should cross over from their
own territories into those of the
Helvetii*

et finitimī Galliæ prōvinciae Allobrogibusque^{III} essent^{IV}

*=and should be neighbours to
the Gallic province and the
Allobroges*

*~and become borderers upon
the province of Gaul and the
Allobroges*

I.XXVIII.IV.

BOIŌS PETENTIBUS HÆDUIS, QUOD EGREGIĀ VIRTŪTE
ERANT COGNITĪ, UT IN FĪNIBUS SUI COLLOCĀRENT,
CONCESSIT, QUIBUS ILLĪ AGRŌS DEDĒRUNT QUŌSQUE
POSTEĀ IN PAREM IŪRIS LĪBERTĀTISQUE CONDICIŌNEM
ATQUE IPSĪ ERANT RECĒPĒRUNT.

I **bōnitas, ātis**, F. (BONUS), *the good quality of a thing, goodness, excellence*

II **e suis finibus**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §426

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperāvit**, MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

IV **nē...trānsirent...essent**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (ŪT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

Boiōs^I petentibus Hæduīs^{II} ^{III}

=with asking of the Audeans /he ~the petition of the Ædui // the
conceded to/ the Boii Boii

quod ēgregiā virtūte^{IV} erant cognitī

=because they were known <to ~as these were known to be of
have the attribute of> distinguished valor
distinguished valor

ut in finibus suīs collocārent^V

=<in order> that they might be ~to settle in their own (i. e. in
placed together in their own the Æduan) territories
territories

concessit

=he conceded to ~he granted (them)

quibus illi agrōs dedērunt

=to (those men) whom they gave ~to whom they gave lands
(their) lands

I ACC. PL., OBJ. OF *concessit*

II *petentibus Hæduīs*, DAT. WITH COMP. V. *concessit*. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

III *Hæduus, -a, -um*, ADJ., of the Hædui, a powerful Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Saône—As a NOUN, a Hæduan, the Hædui

IV *ēgregiā virtūte*, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

V *ut...conlocārent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

quōsque postea in parem^I iūris libertātisque condiōnem^{II}

=and whom afterwards // into an equal condition of rights and of freedom ~and whom they afterward // to the same state of rights and freedom as themselves

atque ipsī erant

=as they themselves were ~as they themselves were

recēpērunt

=they received ~they admitted

I **pār, paris**, ADJ. (PAR-), *equal*

II **condiciō, -ōnis**, F. (COM- + DIC-), *an agreement, stipulation, condition, compact, proposition, terms, demand; Of things, a situation, condition, nature, mode, manner: agri vitæ, manner of living*

LXXIX



A TALLY OF THE HELVETIANS AND THEIR ALLIES.



LXXIX.I.



IN CASTRIS HELVĒTIŌRŪM TABULÆ REPERTÆ
SUNT LITTERIS GRÆCIS CŌNFACTÆ ET AD
CÆSAREM RELĀTÆ, QUĪBUS ĪN TABULIS
NŌMĪNĀTIM RATIO CŌNFACTA ERAT, QUĪ
NŪMERŪS DOMŌ EXĪSSET EŌRŪM QUĪ ARMA FERRE
POSSENT, ET ITEM SĒPARĀTIM PUERĪ, SENĒS
MULIERĒSQUE.

In castris Helvētiōrum tabulæ^I repertæ sunt

=in the camp of the Helvetii, ~in the camp of the Helvetii, lists
tablets were found were found

litteris Græcis^{II III} cōnfectæ

=(they were) made in greek ~written up in Greek characters
letters

I **tabula, -æ**, F. (TA-), a board, plank; A writing-tablet, writingbook, slate; also, a tablet written upon, a writing, as a letter, contract, account, list, will, etc.

II **litteris Græcis**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **Græcus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Greeks, Greek—As a noun, a Greek, the Greeks

et ad Cæsarem relātæ [sunt]^I

=and they were brought back to Cæsar ~and were brought back to Cæsar

quibus in tabulīs^{II} nōminātim^{III} ratiō cōfecta erat

=in which tablets an account was made, one by one ~in which an estimate had been drawn up, name by name

quī^{IV} numerus domō^V exisset^{VI} eōrum

=(and) what number of them had gone from home ~(and) what number had gone forth from their country

quī arma ferre possent^{VII}

=(those men) who were able to bear arms ~of those who were able to bear arms

I **referō, rettulī, relātus, referre** (RE + FERŌ), to bear back, bring back, drive back, carry back

II An Antecedent is sometimes repeated in a Relative Clause, and should be translated only once; as, *itinera duo, quibus itineribus, two routes by which* (I.VI), not as, *by which routes*

III **nōmīnātim**, ADV., by name, expressly, one by one, in detail

IV **quī** introducing an indirect question; as, *what*

V ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

VI **quī...exisset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VII **quī...possent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

et item sēparātim puerī^I, senēs^{II} mulierēsque^{III}

=and also, seperately, the boys, ~and likewise the boys, the old
the old men, and the women men, and the women, separately

I.XXIX.II.

QUARUM OMNIUM RERUM SUMMA ERAT CAPITUM
HELVĒTIŌRUM MĪLIUM DUCENTŌRUM SEXĀGINTĀ
TRIUM, TULINGORUM MĪLIUM TRĪGINTĀ SEX,
LATOVICŌRUM QUATTUORDECIM, RAURICŌRUM
VĪGINTĪ TRIUM, BOIŌRUM TRĪGINTĀ DUŌRUM: EX HĪS
QUĪ ARMA FERRE POSSENT AD MĪLIA NŌNĀGINTĀ DUO.

Quarum omnium rerum summa^{IV} erat capitum^V Helvētiŏrum
mīlium ducentŏrum sexāgintā trium

=of all ~~which~~ things the sum ~of all which items the total
was: of the Helvetii heads, two was: of the Helvetian people,
hundred and sixty three 263,000
thousands

I **puer, -erī**, M. (PV-), a male child, boy, lad, young man—Hence, PL. *pueri*, children; In partic. A male child, a boy, lad, young man (strictly till the seventeenth year, but freq. applied to those who are much older)

II **senex, senis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (SENIOR, SEN-), old, aged, advanced in years; SUBST. M. **posit.**, an old man, aged person, graybeard

III **mulier, -eris**, F. (MAL-), a woman, female

IV **summa, -æ**, F. (SUMMUS), Fig., the chief place, highest rank, leadership, supremacy; An amount, sum, aggregate, whole, quantity

V **caput, -itis**, N. (CAP-), the head; Lit. head; Trop. a man, person, or animal

Tulingorum mīlium trīgintā sex, Latovicōrum quattuordecim,
Rauricōrum vīgintī trium, Boiōrum trīgintā duōrum

=of the Tulingi, thirty-six ~of the Tulingi, 36,000; Of the
thousands; Of the Latobrigi, Latobrigi, 14,000; Of the
fourteen (thousands); Of the Rauraci, 23,000; Of the Boii,
Rauraci, twenty-three 32,000
(thousands); Of the Boii, thirty-
two (thousands)

ex hīs

=from them

~out of these

quī arma ferre possent^I

who were able to bear arms

~such as could bear arms

ad^{II} mīlia nōnāgintā duo [fuērunt]

=[were] about ninety-two ~(amounted) to about 92,000
thousands

I.XXIX.III.

SUMMA OMNIUM FUERUNT AD MĪLIA TRECENTA
SEXAGINTĀ OCTŌ.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia trecenta sexāgintā octō

=the sum of all (the people) were ~the sum of all amounted to
near three-hundred and sixty- nearly 368,000
eight thousands

I **quī...possent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC. §535

II **ad**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., Of approach. In space, *to, toward*; In number or amount, *near, near to, almost, about, toward*

LXXIX.IV.

EŌRŪM QUĪ DOMŪM REDIĒRŪNT CĒNSŪ HABITŌ, UT
CÆSAR IMPERĀVERAT, REPERTUS EST NŪMERUS MĪLIUM
CENTUM ET DECEM.

Eōrum

=of these men

~among these

quī domum rediērunt^I

=who returned home

~who returned home

cēnsū^{II} habitō^{III}

=with the census <having been>
had

~when the census was taken

ut Cæsar imperāverat

=as Cæsar had ordered

~as Cæsar had commanded

reperitus est numerus mīlium centum et decem

=the number was found to be a
hundred and ten thousands

~the number was found to be
110,000

I **redeō, -iī, -itus, -ire** (RED + EO), Of persons, to go back, turn back, return, turn around

II **cēnsus, -ūs**, M. (CENSEO), a registering of citizens and property by the censors, census, appraisalment; The register of the census, censor's lists

III **cēnsū habitō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.

I.XXX



THE GALLIC LEADERS CONGRATULATE CÆSAR.



I.XXX.I.



ELLŌ HELVĒTIŌRŪM CŌNFECTŌ, TŌTĪUS
FERĒ GALLIÆ LĒGĀTĪ, PRĪNCIPĒS CĪVITĀTUM,
AD CÆSAREM GRĀTULĀTUM CŌNVĒNĒRŪNT:
INTELLEGERE SĒSĒ, TAMETSĪ PRŌ VETERIBŪS
HELVĒTIŌRŪM INIŪRĪS POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ AB HĪS PĒNĀS
BELLŌ REPETĪSSET, TAMĒN EAM REM NŌN MĪNUS EX ŪSŪ
TERRÆ GALLIÆ QUAM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ACCIDISSE;
PROPTEREĀ QUOD EŌ CŌNSILIŌ FLŌRENTISSIMĪS RĒBŪS
DOMŌS SUĀS HELVĒTĪ RELĪQUISSĒNT, UTĪ TŌTĪ GALLIÆ
BELLUM ĪNFERRENT IMPERIŌQUE POTĪRENTUR,
LOCŪMQUE DOMICILIŌ EX MAGNĀ CŌPIĀ DĒLIGERENT
QUEM EX OMNĪ GALLIĀ OPORTŪNISSIMUM AC
FRŪCTUŌSISSIMUM IŪDICĀSSĒNT, RELIQUĀSQUE
CĪVITĀTĒS STĪPĒNDIĀRIĀS HABĒRENT.

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō¹

=with the war of the Helvetii
<having been> completed

~when the war with the Helvetii
was concluded

I ***bellō...cōnfectō***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

tōtius ferē Galliāe lēgātī, princīpēs cīvitatūm

=the ambassadors of nearly all of Gaul, the chiefs of the states ~embassadors from almost all parts of Gaul, the chiefs of states

ad Cæsarem grātulātum^{I II} convēnērunt

=they (the ambassadors) came together for <the purpose of> congratulating Cæsar ~assembled to congratulate Cæsar

intelligere sēsē^{III}

=(saying) that they know ~[saying] that they were well aware

tametsi^{IV} prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriis populī Rōmāni^V

=that, although // on account of the old injustices of the Helvetians to the Roman people ~that, although // for the old injustices of the Helvetians toward the Roman people

I **grātulor**, -ātus, -ārī, DEP. (GRATUS), to manifest joy, be glad, congratulate, rejoice; SUPINE. ACC. To give thanks, render thanks, thank

II **ad Cæsarem grātulātum**, ad + ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE AFTER V. OF MOTION **convēnērunt**. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

III **intelligere sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV **tametsi**, CONJ. (TAMEN + ETSI), In concession, notwithstanding that, although, though

V **populī Rōmāni**, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE ODIIUM CÆSARIS, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS ODIIUM, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE AMOR PATRIS, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

ab his^I pœnās bellō^{II} repeti[vi]sset^{III IV}

=he had sought again a penalty ~he had taken vengeance on the
with war by means of those men Helvetii in war
(the Helvetians)

tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terræ Galliæ quam populi
Rōmānī^V accidisse^{VI}

=nonetheless, that thing had ~yet that circumstance had
happened, no less, from the use happened no less to the benefit
of the Gallic land than of the of the land of Gaul than of the
Roman people Roman people

propterea quod eō cōsiliō^{VII}

=on account of which because // ~because // with that design
because of that plan

I ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ā* OR *ab*. §405

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

III **repetō, -īvi, -itus, -ēre** (RE + PETŌ), *to fall upon again, attack anew, strike again; To seek again, return to, revisit*

IV **tametsi...repetisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CONCESSIVE IDEA IS RATHER VAGUE AND GENERAL, AND TAKES A VARIETY OF FORMS, EACH OF WHICH HAS ITS DISTINCT HISTORY. SOMETIMES CONCESSION IS EXPRESSED BY THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE IN A SENTENCE GRAMMATICALLY INDEPENDENT (§440), BUT IT IS MORE FREQUENTLY AND MORE PRECISELY EXPRESSED BY A DEPENDENT CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY A CONCESSIVE PARTICLE. THE CONCESSIVE FORCE LIES CHIEFLY IN THE CONJUNCTIONS (WHICH ARE INDEFINITE OR CONDITIONAL IN ORIGIN), AND IS OFTEN MADE CLEARER BY AN ADVERSATIVE PARTICLE (TAMEN, CERTĒ) IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. AS THE SUBJUNCTIVE MAY BE USED IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES TO EXPRESS A CONCESSION, IT IS ALSO EMPLOYED IN CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, AND SOMEWHAT MORE FREQUENTLY THAN THE INDICATIVE. §526 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V **Galliæ...populi Rōmānī**, OBJ. GEN. §348

VI **eam rem...accidisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *intellegere*. §580

VII **eō cōsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

flōrentissimīs^{VIII} rēbus^{IX X}

=in (during) the most flourishing circumstances ~while their affairs were most flourishing

domōs suās Helvētīi reliquissent^{IV}

=the Helvetii // had left behind their own homes ~the Helvetii // had quitted their country

utī tōtī Gallīæ^V bellum īferrent

~in order that they might bear war to all Gaul =to wage war upon the whole of Gaul

imperīōque^{VI} potīrentur

=and that they might become master of the supreme power ~and becoming master of the government

locumque domiciliō^{VII VIII} ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent

=and they might choose, from a great abundance, a place for habitation ~and selecting, out of a great abundance, that spot for an abode

VIII flōrentissimus, -a, -um, ADJ. (SUPER. OF *flōrens*), greatly blooming; greatly flourishing

IX flōrentissimīs rēbus, ABL. ABS. §420

X ABS. ABL. DENOTING TIME WHEN

IV quod...reliquissent, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. II. CAUSAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUOD, QUIA, QUONIAM, AND QUANDO TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, LIKE ANY OTHER DEPENDENT CLAUSE (SEE §580). §540 & §583

V tōtī Gallīæ, DAT. WITH COMP. V. īferrent. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VI ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **potīrentur.** THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

quem ex omnī Galliā

=(a place) which // from all Gaul ~which // of all Gaul

oportūnissimum^I ac fructuōsissimum iūdicā[vi]ssent^{II}

=they had judged to be the most ~they should judge to be the
opportune and productive most convenient and most
productive

reliquāsque cīvitatēs stīpendiāriās^{III} ^{IV} habērent^V

=and they might have the ~and hold the rest of the states
remaining states as tributaries as tributaries
(to them)

VII DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: NOTE I. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF SERVICE, OR THE DOUBLE DATIVE CONSTRUCTION. THE VERB IS USUALLY SUM. THE NOUN EXPRESSING THE END FOR WHICH IS REGULARLY ABSTRACT AND SINGULAR IN NUMBER AND IS NEVER MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE, EXCEPT ONE OF DEGREE (MAGNUS, MINOR, ETC.), OR BY A GENITIVE. §382

VIII **domicilium, -ī**, N. (DOMUS + CAL-), a habitation, dwelling, domicile, abode

I **opportūnus, -a, -um (opor-)**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (OB + PAR-), fit, meet, adapted, convenient, suitable, seasonable, opportune

II **quem...iūdicāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III SUBST. PRED. APPOSITIVE OF **cīvitatēs**

IV **stīpendiārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (STIPENDIUM), Of or belonging to tribute, liable to impost or contribution, tributary (of imposts payable in money; whereas *vectigalis* denotes those payable in kind; the former was held to be the most humiliating)

V **utī...inferrent...potirentur...dēligerent...habērent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

I.XXX.II.

PETIĒRUNT UTĪ SIBI CONCILIUM TŌTĪUS GALLIÆ IN
DIEM CERTAM INDĪCERE IDQUE CÆSARIS VOLUNTĀTE
FACERE LICĒRET: SĒSĒ HABĒRE QUĀSDAM RĒS QUĀS EX
COMMŪNĪ CŌNSĒNSŪ AB EŌ PETERE VELLENT.

Petiērunt

=they had sought

~they requested

utī [se] sibi^I concilium tōtīus Galliæ in diem certam indĭcere^{II}

=that [they themselves] // to
point out a council of all of Gaul
for themselves on a certain day

~that // to proclaim an assembly
of the whole of Gaul for a
particular day

idque Cæsaris voluntāte^{III} facere licĕret^{IV}

=and /that [they themselves]/
might be allowed to do it by the
will of Cæsar

~and // to be allowed with
Cæsar's permission to do that

Sĕsĕ habĕre^V quāsdam rĕs

=(saying) that they are having
certain things

~[stating] that they had some
things

I DAT. OF INDIR. OBJ. WITH THE V. **indĭcere**

II **indicō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (INDEX), to point out, indicate, inform, show, declare, disclose, make known, reveal, betray

III ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **utī...licĕret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

V **sĕsĕ habĕre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **indĭcere**. §580

quās ex commūnī^I cōsēnsū^{II} ab eō petere vellent^{III}

=(certain) things which they ~which with the general
were wishing to seek from consent, they wished to ask of
common agreement by that him
(man)

I.XXX.III.

EĀ RĒ PERMISSĀ DIEM CŌNCILIŌ CŌNSTITUĒRUNT ET
IŪRE IŪRANDŌ NĒ QUIS ĒNŪNTIĀRET, NISI QUIBUS
COMMŪNĪ CŌNSILIŌ MĀNDĀTUM ESSET, ĪNTER SĒ
SĀNXĒRUNT.

Eā rē permissā^{IV V}

=with this thing <having been> ~upon granting this request
permitted

diem conciliō^{VI} cōstituērunt

=they set a day for the council ~they appointed a day for the
assembly

et iūre iūrandō^{VII VIII}

=and by swearing an oath ~by sworn oath

I **commūne, -is**, N. (COMMUNIS), *that which is common*

II **consensus, -ūs**, M. (CONSENTIO), *agreement, accordance, unanimity, concord*

III **quās...vellent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **permittō, -mīsī, -missus, -ere** (PER + MITTŌ), *to let pass, let go, let loose; To let go, reach with, cast, hurl; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit*

V **eā rē permissā**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

VII **iūro, -āvi, -ātum**, DEP. (IŪROR), *to swear, to take an oath*

VIII **iūre iūrandō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409; ABL. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED: TO EXPRESS MANNER, MEANS, CAUSE, ETC. §507

nē quis ēnūntiāret^I

=*that not anyone should announce (their deliberations)* ~*that no one should disclose (their deliberations)*

nisi quibus^{II} *commūnī cōnsiliō*^{III} *mandātum esset*

=*unless (those men) to whom had been ordered by common council* ~*except those to whom this [office] should have been assigned by the general assembly*

inter sē^{IV} *sānxērunt*^V

=*(and) was ratified among themselves* ~*and ratified with one another themselves*

I *nē... ēnūntiāret*, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §563

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. *mandātum esset*. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III *commūnī cōnsiliō*, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV The Reciprocal Relation is expressed by *inter se* (Lit. *among themselves*), which must be translated in accordance with the requirements of English idiom; as, *inter se dant, they gave* (Lit. *give*) *to one another* (I.III); *inter se differunt, they differ from one another* (I.I); *inter se collocuti, having conferred with one another* (IV.XXX); *cohortati inter se, urging one another on* (IV.XXV); *inter se contenderent, they strove together* (I.XXXI); *inter se, referring to two persons, with each other* (V.XLIV)

V *sanciō, sānxī, sānctus, -ire* (SAC-), Of a law or treaty, *to make sacred, render inviolable, fix unalterably, establish, appoint, decree, ordain, confirm, ratify, enact; To ratify, confirm, consecrate, enact, approve*

I.XXXI



CÆSAR IS BESEECHED TO DEFEND GAUL.



I.XXXII.



Ō CONCILIŌ DĪMISSŌ, ĪDEM PRĪNCĒPS
CĪVITĀTUM QUĪ ANTE FUERANT AD
CÆSAREM REVERTĒRUNT, PETIĒRUNTQUE
UTĪ SIBI SĒCRĒTŌ DĒ SUĀ OMNIUMQUE
SALŪTE CŪM EŌ AGERE LICĒRET.

Eō conciliō dīmissō¹

=with that council <having been> sent away ~when that assembly was dismissed

īdem prīncēpēs cīvitatū

=the same leaders of the states ~the same chiefs of states

quī ante fuerant

=who had been before ~who had before been

ad Cæsarem revertērunt

=returned to Cæsar ~returned to Cæsar

petiēruntque

=and they sought ~and asked

I ***eō conciliō dīmissō***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

utī sibi^I sēcrētō^{II} dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret^{III}
 =that it might be permitted to ~to be allowed to treat with him
 conduct with him in secret about privately (in secret) concerning
 their own safety and (the safety) the safety of themselves and of
 of all men all

I.XXXI.II.

EĀ RĒ IMPETRĀTĀ, SĒSĒ OMNĒS FLENTĒS CĀSARĪ AD
 PEDĒS PRŌIĒCĒRUNT: NŌN MĪNUS SĒ ID CŌNTĒNDERE
 ET LABŌRĀRE NĒ EA QUĀE DĪXISSĒNT ĒNŪNTIĀRENTUR,
 QUAM UTĪ EA QUĀE VELLENT IMPETRĀRENT; PROPTERĒĀ
 QUOD, SĪ ĒNŪNTIĀTUM ESSET, SUMMUM ĪN CRUCIĀTUM
 SĒ VENTŪRŌS VIDĒRENT.

Eā rē impetrātā^{IV}
 =with this thing <having been> ~that request having been
 achieved obtained

sēsē omnēs flentēs Cāsarī^V ad pedēs prōiēcērunt^{VI}
 =all the men, weeping, threw ~they all threw themselves in
 themselves forth to Caesar at tears at Caesar's feet
 (his) feet

I DAT. WITH IMPERSONAL V. **licēret**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH THE IMPERSONALS LIBET (LUBET), IT PLEASES, AND LICET, IT IS ALLOWED. §368

II **sēcernō, -crēvī, -crētus, -ere** (sē + CERNŌ), to put apart, sunder, sever, part, divide, separate; SUBST., **sēcrētum, -i, n.**, something secret, secret conversation; a mystery, secret

III **utī...licēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV **eā rē impetrātā**, ABL. ABS. §420

V DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE IS OFTEN USED TO QUALIFY A WHOLE IDEA, INSTEAD OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE MODIFYING A SINGLE WORD. §377

VI **prōiciō, -iēcī, -iectus, -ere** (PRO + IACIO), to throw forth, cast before, throw out, throw down, throw

nōn minus sē id^I contendere

=(saying,) no less, that they were striving for this thing ~[saying] that they no less begged

et labōrāre^{II III}

=and (that) (they) were working for ~and striving

nē ea quæ dīxissent^{IV}

=that those things which they had said // not ~to not say the things which

ēnūntiārentur^V

should /not/ be announced ~should be disclosed

quam utī^{VI} ea

=than that those things ~than those things

quæ vellent^{VII}

=which they wished for ~which they wished for

I Intransitive and Transitive Verbs sometimes take a Neuter Pronoun as an Accusative of Result produced, to carry forward or qualify the meaning; as. *Id eis persuasit, he persuaded them (to adopt) that (course),* Lit. *he persuaded that to them (I.II); hoc facere, to do this (II.XXVII)*

II **sē...contendere...labōrāre**, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **labōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (LABOR), to labor, take pains, endeavor, exert oneself, strive

IV **quæ dīxissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V **nē...ēnūntiārentur**, NEG. CLAUSE OF RES. §531

VI **quam utī, than that**, THE SUBJECT AND OBJECT OF COMPARISON ARE BOTH PURPOSE CLAUSES

VII **quæ vellent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

impetrārent^I

=they might obtain

~that they might obtain

propterea quod

=on account of that because

~inasmuch as

sī ēnūntiātum esset^{II}

=if it should have been disclosed

~if disclosure was made

summum in cruciātum^{III} sē ventūrōs [esse]^{IV}

=that they would come into the
highest torture

~that they should come into the
greatest tortures

vidērent^V

=they saw

~they saw

I.XXXI.III.

LOCŪTUS EST PRŌ HĪS DĪVICIĀCUS ÆDUŪS: GALLIÆ
TŌTĪUS FACTIŌNĒS ESSE DUĀS: HĀRŪM ALTERĪUS
PRĪNCIPĀTUM TENĒRE ÆDUŌS, ALTERĪUS ARVERNŌS.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Æduus

=Divitiacus, an Æduan, spoke on
behalf of these men (the Gauls)

~for these Divitiacus the Æduan
spoke and told him

I **utī...impetrārent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

II **sī ēnūntiātum esset**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III **cruciātus, -ūs**, M. (CRUCIO), *torture, torment, a torturing, execution*

IV **sē ventūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **vidērent**. §580

V **propterea quod...vidērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Galliæ tōtius factiōnēs^I esse duās

=(saying) that there are two factions of all of Gaul ~that there were two parties in the whole of Gaul

hārum alterius principātum tenēre^{II} Æduōs

=(and) that the Ædui hold the head of one of these ~that the Ædui stood at the head of one of these

alterius Arvernōs^{III}

=(that) the Arverni (hold the head) of the other ~the Arverni of the other

I.XXXI.IV.

HĪ CUM TANTOPERE DĒ POTĒNTĀTŪ ĪNTER SĒ MULTŌS
ANNŌS CONTENDERĒNT, FACTUM ESSE UTĪ AB ARVERNĪS
SĒQUANISQUE GERMĀNĪ MERCĒDE ARCESSERĒNTUR.

Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs^{IV}
contenderent^V

=when (after) these men greatly contended for many years among themselves for leadership ~after these had been violently struggling with one another for the superiority for many years

factum esse^{VI}

=it had been done ~it came to pass

I **factiō, -ōnis**, F. (FAC-), a making, doing, preparing; A company, association, class, order, sect, faction, party

II **factiōnēs esse...tenēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580

III **Arvernus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Arverni, a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Cevennes in modern Auvergne

IV **multōs annōs**, ACC. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

V **cum...contenderent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **factum esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque^{I II} Germānī mercēde^{III IV V}
arcesserentur^{VI VII}

=that the Germans were caused to come with pay wages by the Arverni and the Sequani ~that the Germans were called in for hire by the Arverni and the Sequani

I.XXXI.V.

HŌRUM PRIMŌ CIRCITER MĪLIA QUINDECIM RHĒNUM TRĀNSISSE: POSTEĀQUAM AGRŌS ET CULTUM ET CŌPIĀS GALLŌRUM HOMĪNĒS FERĪ AC BARBARĪ ADAMĀSSĒNT, TRADUCTŌS PLŪRĒS: NŪNC ESSE ĪN GALLIĀ AD CĒNTUM ET VĪGĪNTĪ MĪLIUM NŪMERUM.

Hōrum primō^{VIII} circiter mīlia quindecim Rhēnum trānsisse^{IX}
=that around fifteen thousands of these men had first crossed the Rhine ~that about 15,000 of them [i.e. of the Germans] had at first crossed the Rhine

-
- I **ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **Ā** OR **AB**. §405
- II **Sēquanus, -a, -um**, ADJ., of the Sequani, a tribe of Gaul, oñ the Rhone, north of Macon); M. SG., one of the Sequani, a Sequanian; M. PL., the Sequani
- III ABL. OF PRICE. THE PRICE OF A THING IS PUT IN THE ABLATIVE. NOTE. TO THIS HEAD IS TO BE REFERRED THE ABLATIVE OF THE PENALTY. §416
- IV The Ablative of Price is used only in indefinite expressions; thus, *parvo pretio redempta*, purchased at a low price (I.XVIII); *impenso pretio*, at a high price (IV.II); *quanto detrimento*, at how great a loss (VII.XIX); *levi momento*, of slight account (VII.XXXIX)
- V **mercēs, -ēdis**, F. (SMAR-), price, hire, pay wages, salary, fee, reward
- VI **arcessō, -ivī, itus, -ere**, INTENS. (ACCEDO), to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch
- VII **utī...arcesserentur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT MAY BE USED SUBSTANTIVELY AS THE OBJECT OF FACIO ETC. (§568) §567
- VIII **primō**, ADV. (PRIMUS), in the order of time, at first, at the beginning, first, in the first place
- IX **mīlia...trānsisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580

posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum

=after that // the lands and the culture and the abundance of the Gauls ~but after that // of the lands and the refinement and the abundance of the Gauls

hominēs ferī^I ac barbarī^{II} adamā[vi]ssent^{III IV}

=the uncultivated and barbaric men had fallen in love with ~these wild and savage men had become enamored

traductōs [esse] plūrēs

=more men (Germans) were led across ~more were brought over

nunc esse^V in Galliā ad centum et vīgintī milium numerum^{VI}

=now the number was up to a hundred and twenty thousands of numbers (of people) ~that there were now near 120,000 of them in Gaul (Germans) in Gaul

I **ferus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (FER-), *wild, untamed, uncultivated*; Trop., *wild, rude, uncultivated; savage, barbarous, fierce, cruel*

II **barbarus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP., Prop., *foreign, strange, barbarous*, opp. to Greek or Roman; In gen., for any *hostile people* (among the Romans, after the Aug. age, esp. the German tribes, as, among the Greeks, after the Persian war, the Persians); Transf., *foreign, strange*, in mind or character. In mind, *uncultivated, ignorant; rude, unpolished*

III **adamō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (AD + AMO); *to fall in love with, conceive desire for, desire eagerly*

IV **posteaquam...adamāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI ACC. SG. M., SUBJ. ACC. OF **esse**

I.LXXXI.VI.

CUM HĪS ÆDUŌS EŌRUMQUE CLIENTĒS SEMEL ATQUE
ITERUM ARMĪS CONTĒDISSE; MAGNAM CALAMITĀTEM
PULSŌS ACCĒPISSE, OMNEM NŌBILITĀTEM, OMNEM
SENĀTUM, OMNEM EQUITĀTUM ĀMĪSISSE.

Cum hīs Æduōs eōrumque clientēs^I semel^{II} atque iterum^{III} armīs^{IV}
contendisse^V

=that with these men, the Ædui ~that with these the Ædui and
and their dependents, had their dependents had repeatedly
contended once and again by struggled in arms
<means of> arms

magnam calamitātem^{VI} pulsōs^{VII} accēpisse

=that (those men), <having ~that they had been routed, and
been> repulsed, had received a had sustained a great
great calamity misfortunes of war

omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum
āmīsisse^{VIII}

=that (they) had lost all (their) ~had lost all their nobility, all
nobility, all (their) senate, all their senate, all their cavalry
(their) cavalry

I **cliēns, -entis**, M. (FOR *cluens*, PART. OF *clueo*), a personal dependant, client; Of whole nations, the allies, dependents, or vassals of a more powerful people

II **semel**, ADV. NUM. (SA-), once, a single time

III **iterum**, ADV., again, a second time, once more, anew; WITH OTHER ADV., ESP. WITH *semel*, *tertium*, etc., again and again, repeatedly

IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V **Æduōs...contendisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **calamitās, -ātis**, F. (SCAL-), loss, injury, damage, mischief, harm, misfortune, calamity, disaster

VII **pulsōs accēpisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VIII **omnem nōbilitātem...āmīsisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

I.XXXI.VII.

QUIBUS PRÆLIIS CALAMITATIBUSQUE FRACTOS, QUI ET SUÅ VIRTUTE ET POPULI RŌMĀNĪ HOSPITIŌ ATQUE AMĪCITIÅ PLŪRIMUM ANTE IN GALLIA POTUISSENT, COACTOS ESSE SEQUANIS OBSIDēs DARE NŌBILISSIMOS CĪVITĀTIS ET IŪRE IŪRANDŌ CĪVITĀTEM OBSTRĪNGERE, SĒSĒ NEQUE OBSIDēs REPETITŪROS NEQUE AUXILIUM Å POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ IMPLŌRĀTŪROS NEQUE RECŪSĀTŪROS QUŌ MĪNUS PERPETUŌ SUB ILLORUM DICIŌNE ATQUE IMPERIŌ ESSENT.

Quibus prœliis calamitātibusque^I frāctōs^{II} ^{III}

=(those men) <having been> ~and that broken by such broken down by ~~which~~ battles engagements and calamities and calamities

quī et suā virtūte et populī Rŏmānī hospitiŏ^{IV} atque amīcitiā^V

=(those men) whom // both by ~although // both from their own their own valor and by the valor and from the Roman hospitality and friendship of the people's hospitality and Roman people friendship

plūrimum ante in Gallia potuissent^{VI}

=they had been very much able ~they had formerly been very before in Gaul powerful in Gaul

I **quibus prœliis calamitātibusque**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **INDIR. DISC. §580**

III **frangō, frēgi, frāctus, -ere** (FRAG-), to break in pieces, dash to pieces, shiver, shatter, fracture; Fig., to break down, subdue, overcome, crush, dishearten, weaken, diminish, violate, soften

IV **hospitium, -ii**, N. (HOSPES), Hospitality

V **virtūte...hospitiŏ...amīcitiā**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

VI **quī...potuissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

coāctōs esse^I Sequanīs obsidēs^{II} dare nōbilissimōs^{III} civitātis

=(those men) had been ~they were now compelled to
compelled to give the noblest of give the chief nobles of their
the state as hostages to the state, as hostages to the Sequani
Sequani

et iūre iūrandō^{IV} cīvitatē obstringere^V sēsē

=and they (were compelled) to ~and to bind their state by an
bind (their) state by <means of> oath
a sworn oath

neque obsidēs repetitūrōs [esse]

=that (those men) would neither ~that they would neither
demand back hostages demand hostages in return

neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs [esse]^{VI}

=nor would (those men) implore ~nor implore aid from the
aid from the Roman people Roman people

neque recūsātūrōs [esse]^{VII VIII}

=nor would (those men) make ~nor refuse
an objection against

I **coāctōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II SUBST. PRED. APPOSITIVE OF **nōbilissimōs cīvitatīs**

III **nōbilis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (GNA-), *that is known, well-known, famous, noted, celebrated, renowned*

IV **iūre iūrandō**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **cīvitatē obstringere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **implōrō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (IN + PLORO), *to invoke with tears; To call to help, call for aid, appeal to, invoke, beseech, entreat, implore; To pray for, beg earnestly, implore*

VII **recūsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (RE- + CAUSA), *to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do*

VIII **obsidēs repetitūrōs...implōrātūrōs...recūsātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. §580

quō minus^I perpetuō^{II} sub illorum diciōe^{III} atque imperiō essent^{IV}
 =by which the less they would be ~to be forever under their sway
 under their perpetual sway and and empire
 command

I.XXXI.VIII.

ŪNUM SĒ ESSE EX OMNĪ CĪVITĀTE ÆDUŌRUM QUI
 ADDŪCĪ NŌN POTUERIT UT IURĀRET AUT LĪBERŌS SUŌS
 OBSIDĒS DARET.

Ūnum^V sē esse^{VI} ex omnī cīvitāte Æduōrum
 =that he is the one from every ~that he was the only one out of
 state of the Ædui all the state of the Ædui

-
- I Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne*, *that not*, *quo minus*, *that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quin*, *that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, *hos...detertere ne frumentum conferant*, these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quin...tela conicerent*, could not be restrained from hurling darts (I.XLVII)
- II **perpetuus**, -a, -um, ADJ. (PER + PAT-), continuous, unbroken, uninterrupted, constant, entire, whole, perpetual
- III **diciō**, -ōnis, F. (DIC-), dominion, sovereignty, authority, sway, control, rule; MILIT. and polit., dominion, sovereignty, authority, rule, sway, power
- IV **quō minus...essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIC. DISC. THE ORIGINAL MEANING OF QUIN IS HOW NOT? WHY NOT? (QUI-NE), AND WHEN USED WITH THE INDICATIVE OR (RARELY) WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IT REGULARLY IMPLIES A GENERAL NEGATIVE. THUS, QUIN EGO HOC ROGEM? WHY SHOULDN'T I ASK THIS? IMPLIES THAT THERE IS NO REASON FOR NOT ASKING. THE IMPLIED NEGATIVE WAS THEN EXPRESSED IN A MAIN CLAUSE, LIKE NULLA CAUSA EST OR FIERI NON POTEST. HENCE COME THE VARIOUS DEPENDENT CONSTRUCTIONS INTRODUCED BY QUIN. §557 & §583
- V **ūnus**, ūnūs, One, a single; Prægn., one, alone, only, sole, single
- VI **ūnum sē esse**, INDIC. DISC. §580

quī addūcī nōn potuerit^I ut iurāret

=who was not able to be led to swear (an oath) ~who could not be prevailed upon to take the oath

aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret^{II}

=or to give his own children as hostages ~or to give his children as hostages

I.LXXXI.IX.

OB EAM REM SĒ EX CĪVITĀTE PROFŪGISSE ET RŌMAM AD
SENĀTUM VĒNISSE AUXILIUM POSTULĀTUM, QUOD
SŌLUS NEQUE IŪRE IŪRANDŌ NEQUE OBSIDIBUS
TENĒRĒTUR.

Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitātē^{III} profūgissee^{IV V}

=for this thing he had fled from the state ~on that account he had fled from his state

et Rōmam ad senātum vēnissee^{VI}

=and (he) had gone to Rome to the senate ~and had gone to the senate at Rome

I **quī...potuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **ut iurāret...daret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

III **ex cīvitātē**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

IV **profugio, -fūgī, —, -ere** (PRO- + FUGIO), to flee, run away, escape

V **sē...profūgissee**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580

VI INDIR. DISC. §580

auxilium postulātum^{I II}

=to request aid

~to beseech aid

quod sōlus^{III} **neque iūre iūrandō** **neque obsidibus**^{IV} **tenērētur**^V

=because he alone could be held ~as he alone was bound neither
neither by sworn oath nor by by oath nor hostages
hostages

I.XXXI.X.

SED PEIUS VICTORIBUS SEQUANIS QUAM AEDUIS VICTIS
ACCIDISSE, PROPTEREA QUOD ARIOVISTUS, REX
GERMANORUM, IN EORUM FINIBUS CONSEDISSET
TERTIAMQUE PARTEM AGRIS SEQUANI, QUI ESSET
OPTIMUS TOTIUS GALLIAE, OCCUPAVISSET ET NUNC DE
ALTERA PARTE TERTIA SEQUANOS DECEDERE IUBERET,
PROPTEREA QUOD PAUCIS MENSIBUS ANTE HARUDUM
MILIA HOMINUM VIGINTI QUATTUOR AD EUM
VENISSENT, QUIBUS LOCUS AC SEDES PARARENTUR.

I **auxilium postulātum**, ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE SUPINE IN -UM IS USED AFTER VERBS OF MOTION TO EXPRESS PURPOSE. IT MAY TAKE AN OBJECT IN THE PROPER CASE. §509

II **postulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PREC-), to ask, demand, claim, require, request, desire

III **sōlus, sōlius**, ADJ. (SAL-), alone, only, single, sole—Hence, ADV., (SOLUM), alone, only, merely, barely—Negatively: non solum, nec (neque) solum...sed (verum) etiam (et), etc., not only (not merely, not barely)...but also, etc. (SEE SŌLUS, ALONE §113)

IV **iūre iūrandō...obsidibus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **quod...tenērētur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Sed peius^I victōribus^{II} Sequanīs quam Æduīs victīs^{III IV} accidissee^{V VI}
 =but a worse (fate) had come to the victorious Sequani than to the <having been> vanquished Ædui
 ~but a worse thing had befallen the victorious Sequani than the vanquished Ædui

propterea quod Ariovistus^{VII}, rēx^{VIII} Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset
 =on account of which because Ariovistus, king of the Germans, had settled in their territories
 ~for Ariovistus the king of the Germans, had settled in their territories

tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī
 =and // a third part of land of the Sequani
 ~and // a third of their land

quī esset^{IX} optimus^X tōtius Galliæ
 =(the third part of land) which was the best of all of Gaul
 ~which was the best in the whole of Gaul

I **malus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MAL-), IT ADOPTS AS COMP. AND SUP. **peior** AND **pessimus** (PED); *bad, not good; bad, in the widest sense of the word, evil, wicked, injurious, destructive, mischievous, hurtful; māle*, ADV., *badly, ill, wrongly, wickedly, unfortunately, erroneously, improperly, etc.*

II **vīctor, -ōris**, M. (VIC-), *a conqueror, vanquisher, victor*

III PPP. OF **vincō**

IV **victōribus Sequanīs...Æduīs victīs**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **accidissee**.
 MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB,
 SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **accidō, -cidī, —, -ere** (AD + CADO), *to fall upon, fall to, reach by falling; Fig., to come to pass, happen, occur, fall out, take place, befall*

VII **Ariovistus, -ī**, M., a chief of the Germans, called in by the Gauls in their domestic quarrels, who conquered and ruled them until he was himself crushed by the Romans

VIII **rēx, rēgis**, M. (REG-), *an arbitrary ruler, absolute monarch, king*

IX **quī esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

X SEE *bonus*

occupāvisset

=he had seized

~had seized upon

et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere^I

=and now // the Sequani to depart from another third part ~and was now // them to depart from another third part

iubēret^{II}

=he was ordering

~ordering

proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus^{III} ante Harudum^{IV} mīlia hominum^V vīgintī quattuor ad eum vēnissent^{VI}

=on account of which because ~because a few months before within a few months, previously 24,000 men of the twenty-four thousands of the Harudes had come to him Harudes had come to him

quibus locus ac sēdēs^{VII} parārentur^{VIII}

=(those men) to whom a place and dwelling-place were to be procured ~for whom room and settlements must be provided

I **Sēquanōs dēcēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iubēret**. §580

II **proptereā quod...cōnsēdisset...occupāvisset...iubēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §580

III **paucīs mēnsibus**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

IV **Harūdes, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe originally from the great expedition of the Cimbri

V PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE ALIUS, ALTER, NŪLLUS, ETC. §346

VI **proptereā quod...vēnissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VII **sēdēs, -is**, F. (SED-), a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple

VIII **quibus...parārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

I.XXXI.XI.

FUTŪRUM ESSE PAUCĪS ANNĪS UTI OMNES EX GALLIÆ
FĪNIBUS PELLERENTUR ATQUE OMNĒS GERMĀNĪ
RHĒNUM TRĀNSĪRENT: NEQUE ENIM CŌNFERENDUM
ESSE GALLICUM CUM GERMĀNŌRUM AGRŌ NEQUE
HANC CŌNSUĒTUDĪNEM VĪCTŪS CUM ILLĀ
COMPARANDAM.

Futūrum esse paucīs annīs^I

=it would be within a few years

~the consequence would be, in a
few years

uti omnes ex Galliæ finibus pellerentur

=that all men would be driven
from the territories of Gaul

~that they would all be driven
from the territories of Gaul

atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent^{II}

=and all Germans would cross
the Rhine

~and all the Germans would
cross the Rhine

**neque enim cōnferendum esse^{III} ^{IV} Gallicum [agrum] cum
Germānōrum agrō**

=for neither is the [land] of the
Gauls <having> to be compared
with the land of the Germans

~for neither must the land of
Gaul be compared with the land
of the Germans

I **paucīs annīs**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **futūrum esse...utī...pellerentur...trānsīrent**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580; THE EXPRESSION **futūrum esse ut** IS COMMONLY USED IN PLACE OF FUT. PASS. INF. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT ARE USED AS THE SUBJECT OF THE FOLLOWING: §569

III **cōnferō, contulī, conlātus, cōnferre** (CŌN + FERŌ), To bring together, collect, gather, unite, join; Fig., to bring together in thought, compare, contrast

IV **cōnferendum esse**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE §196 FOR A CHART) & §580

neque hanc cōsuētinem^I vīctūs^{II} cum illā comparandam
[esse]^{III}

=nor is the latter habit of living ~nor must the habit of living of
<having> to be compared with the latter be put on a level with
the former that of the former

I.XXX.XII.

ARIOVISTŪM AŪTEM, UT SEMEL GALLŌRŪM CŌPIĀS
PRÆLIŌ VĪCERIT, QUOD PRÆLIUM FACTUM SIT
ADMAGETOBRIGÆ, SŪPERBĒ ET CRŪDĒLITER IMPERĀRE,
OBSIDĒS NOBILISSIMĪ CUIUSQUE LĪBERŌS POSCERE, ET IN
EŌS OMNIA EXEMPLA CRŪCIĀTŪSQUE ĒDERE, SĪ QUĀ RĒS
NŌN AD NŪTUM AUT AD VOLŪNTATEM EIUS FACTA SIT.

Ariovistum autem

=Ariovistus, moreover

~moreover, [as for] Ariovistus

ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās præliō^{IV} vīcerit^V

when he had once defeated the
forces of the Gauls in battle

~when once he conquered the
forces of the Gauls in a battle

I **consuētudo, -inis**, F. (CONSUESCO), A being accustomed, custom, habit, use, usage; WITH PREPP., **ex consuetudine, pro consuetudine**, AND ABSOL. **consuetudine**, according to or from custom, by or from habit, in a usual or customary manner, etc.

II **vīctus, -ūs**, M. (VIV-), that which sustains life, means of living, sustenance, nourishment, provisions, victuals

III **hanc cōsuētinem...comparandam**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. §196 & §580

IV ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

V **ut semel...vīcerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

quod proelium factum sit^I Admagetobrigae^{II III}

=which battle was made at ~which battle was happened at
Magetobria Magetobria

superbē^{IV} et crūdēliter^V imperāre

=(he) (began) to command ~than [he began] to lord it
haughtily and cruelly haughtily and cruelly

[Ariovistum] obsidēs nobilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscere

=(he) [Ariovistus] demands the ~to demand as hostages the
children of each one of the children of all the principal
noblest as hostages nobles

et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere^{VI VII}

=and (he) was bringing about all ~and wreak on them every kind
examples of cruelty on them of cruelty

sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum^{VIII} aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit^{IX}

=if any thing was not done at ~if every thing was not done at
(his) nod or at his volition his pleasure or volition

I **quod...factum sit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II LOC. OF PLACE WHERE, TRANSLATE WITH **as**, WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE WHERE, BY THE LOCATIVE. §427

III **Admagetobriga, -ae**, F., a place in Gaul

IV **superbus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *haughty, proud, vain, arrogant, insolent, discourteous, supercilious, domineering*; Hence, ADV., *haughtily, proudly, superciliously*

V **crūdēliter**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (CRUDELIS), *cruelly, fiercely, in a cruel manner*

VI **ēdō, -didī, -ditus, -ere** (E + DŌ), *to give out, put forth, bring forth, raise, set up*; Of other objects, *to produce, perform, bring about, cause*

VII **Ariovistum...imperāre...poscere...ēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **locūtus est**. §580

VIII **nūtus**, —, M. (NV-), *a nodding, nod*; *Command, will, pleasure*

IX **si...facta sit**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PAST CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

I.LXXXI.XIII.

HOMINEM ESSE BARBARUM, IRACUNDUM, TEMERARIUM:
NŌN POSSE EIUS IMPERIA DIŪTIUS SUSTINĒRĪ.

Hominem esse^I barbarum, iracundum^{II}, temerarium^{III}

=that the man is a barbarian, ~that he was a savage,
irascible, (and) heedless passionate, and heedless man

nŏn posse^{IV} eius imperia diŭtius sustinĕrĭ

=that his commands are not able ~and that his commands could
to be sustained (any) longer no longer be borne

I.LXXXI.XIV.

NISI QUID IN CÆSARE POPULŌQUE RŌMĀNŌ SIT AUXILI,
OMNIBUS GALLIS IDEM ESSE FACIENDUM QUOD HELVĒTIĪ
FĒCERINT, UT DOMŌ ĒMIGRENT, ALIUD DOMICILIUM,
ALIĀS SĒDĒS REMŌTĀS Ā GERMĀNIS PETANT
FORTŪNAMQUE QUÆCUMQUE ACCIDAT EXPERIANTUR.

Nisi quid in Cæsare populōque Rōmānō sit^V auxili^{VI}

=unless something of aid is in ~unless there was some aid in
Cæsar and the Roman people Cæsar and the Roman people

I **hominem esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **iracundus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (IRA), *irascible, irritable, passionate, choleric, angry, ireful, easily provoked*

III **temerarius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TEMERE), *rash, heedless, thoughtless, imprudent, inconsiderate, indiscreet, unadvised, precipitate*

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

V **nisi...sit**, SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

VI PARTITIVE GEN. §346

omnibus Gallis^I idem esse faciendum^{II}

=*that the same thing is <having> to be done for all Gauls* ~*the Gauls must all do the same thing*

quod Helvētīī fēcerint^{III}

=*which the Helvetii have done* ~*that the Helvetii have done*

ut domō^{IV} ēmigrent^V

=(*namely,*) *that they might go forth from home* ~[viz.] *emigrate from their country*

aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs remōtās^{VI} ā Germānīs^{VII} petant

=(*and*) *that they might seek another home, other <having been> removed settlements from the Germans* ~*and seek another dwelling place, other settlements remote from the Germans*

fortūnamque quaecumque accidat^{VIII}

=*and whatever fortune may fall upon (them)* ~*and whatever fortune may fall to their lot*

I **omnibus Gallis**, DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. THIS IS THE REGULAR WAY OF EXPRESSING THE AGENT WITH THE SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONIUGATION (§196). §374

II **idem esse faciendum**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. §196 & §580

III **quod...fēcerint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. §427

V **ēmigrō, -āvī, —, -āre** (ē + MIGRŌ), *to move, depart, emigrate*

VI PPP., "*having been removed*," AS A PARTICIPLE ADJ., "*remote*"

VII **ā Germānīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH Ā, AB, DE, EX, (1) TAKE THE SIMPLE ABLATIVE WHEN USED FIGURATIVELY; BUT (2) WHEN USED LITERALLY TO DENOTE ACTUAL SEPARATION OR MOTION, THEY USUALLY REQUIRE A PREPOSITION. §402

VIII **quaecumque accidat**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

experiantur^{I II}

=they may attempt

~try

LXXXI.XV.

HÆC SĪ ENŪNTIĀTA ARIOVISTŌ SĪNT, NŌN DUBITĀRE
QUĪN DE OMNIBUS OBSIDIBUS QUĪ APUD EUM SĪNT
GRAVISSIMUM SUPPLICIUM SUMAT.

Hæc sī enūntiāta Ariovistō sint^{III}

=if these things are announced
to Ariovistus

~if these things were to be
disclosed to Ariovistus

[sē] nōn dubitāre^{IV}

=(Divitiacus says) that [he] did
not doubt

~[Divitiacus adds] that he does
not doubt

quīn de omnibus obsidibus

=that from all the hostages

~on all the hostages

quī apud eum sint^V

=(the hostages) who are among
him

~who are in his possession

I **experior, -pertus, -īrī**, DEP. (PAR-), to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience

II **ut...ēmigrent...petant...experiantur**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. §567

III **sī enūntiāta...sint**, SIMPLE PAST CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

V **quī...sint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §580

gravissimum supplicium sumat^I

=that he may take the most severe punishment ~that he would inflict the most severe torture

I.XXXI.XVI.

CÆSAREM VEL AUCTŌRITĀTE SUĀ ATQŪE EXERCITŪS VEL
RECENTĪ VICTŌRIĀ VEL NŌMINE POPULĪ ROMĀNĪ
DĒTERRĒRE POSSE NĒ MAIOR MULTITŪDŌ
GERMĀNŌRŪM RHĒNŪM TRĀDŪCĀTUR, GALLIAMQŪE
OMNEM AB ARIOVISTĪ ĪNĪŪRIĀ POSSE DĒFĒNDERE.

Cæsarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā

=(and he says) that either by his own authority or (that) of the army or by his recent victory ~[and says] that Cæsar, either by his own influence and by that of his army, or by his late victory

vel nōmine^{II} populī Romānī dēterrēre posse^{III}

=or by the name of the Roman people, (he) was able to frighten (him) off ~or by name of the Roman people could intimidate him

I **quīn...sūmat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION...I. QUĪN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NŌN DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NŌN EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558 & §583

II **auctōritāte...victōriā...nōmine**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **Cæsarem...posse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

nē maior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur^I

=*that not a greater multitude of* ~*so as to prevent a greater*
Germans may be led across the *number of Germans being*
Rhine *brought over the Rhine*

Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā^{II} *posse*^{III} *dēfendere*

=*and that (he) is able to defend* ~*and could protect all Gaul from*
all Gaul from the injustice of *the outrages of Ariovistus*
Ariovistus

-
- I *nē...trādūcātur*, SUBJ. WITH V. OF HINDERING. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. II. VERBS OF HINDERING AND REFUSING OFTEN TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE WITH NĒ OR QUŌMINUS (= UT EŌ MINUS), ESPECIALLY WHEN THE VERB IS NOT NEGATED. §558
- II *ab iniūriā*, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- III *Galliam...posse*, INDIC. DISC. §580

I.XXXII



THE SEQUANIANS SHOW WHAT MIGHT HAPPEN.



I.XXXII.I



ĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE AB DĪVICIĀCŌ HABITĀ, OMNĒS
QUĪ ADERANT MAGNŌ FLĒTŪ AUXILIUM Ā
CÆSARE PETERE CŒPĒRUNT.

Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō^I habitā^{II}

=with this speech <having been>
held by Divitiacus

~when this speech had been
delivered by Divitiacus,

omnēs

=all the men

~all

quī aderant

=who were present

~who were present

magnō flētū^{III} ^{IV}auxilium ā Cæsare petere cœpērunt

=they began to seek aid from
Cæsar with great weeping

~began with loud lamentation to
entreat assistance of Cæsar

I **ab Dīviciācō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

II **ōrātiōne...habitā**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

III **flētus, -ūs**, M., a weeping, wailing, lamenting

IV **magnō flētū**, ABL. OF MANNER. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §4

I.LXXXII.II.

ANIMADVERTIT CÆSAR ŪNŌS EX OMNIBUS SĒQUANŌS
NIHIL EĀRUM RĒRUM FACERE QUĀS CĒTERĪ FACERENT
SED TRĪSTĒS CAPITĒ DĒMISSŌ TERRAM ĪNTUĒRĪ.

Animadvertit Cæsar

=*Cæsar turned (his) mind to*

~*Cæsar noticed*

ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere^I

=*that the Sequani, one by one,
out from all (people), were doing
nothing of those things*

~*that the Sequani were the only
people of all who did none of
those things*

quās cēterī^{II} facerent^{III}

=*which the others did*

~*which the others did*

sed trīstēs^{IV V}

=*but // sadly*

~*but // in sadness*

capite dēmissō^{VI}

=*with the head <having been>
sent down*

~*with their heads bowed down*

I **ūnōs...Sēquanōs...facere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **animadvertit**. §580

II **cēterus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CA-, CI-), *the other, remainder, rest*—As SUBST M., *the others, all the rest, everybody else*

III **quās...facerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

IV Adjectives are sometimes used in Latin where in English an Adverb or a Phrase is required; as, *læti...ad castra pergunt* (Historical Present), *joyfully...they advanced against the camp* (III.XVIII); *viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant*, *they oblige travelers, even against their will, to stop* (IV.V)

V **trīstis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (TER-), *sad, sorrowful, mournful, dejected, melancholy, gloomy, downcast, disconsolate*; ADV., **trīstē**, *sadly, sorrowfully; harshly, severely*

VI **capite dēmissō**, ABL., ABS. §420

terram intuērī^{I II}

=(they) looked upon the land

~gazed on the earth

I.XXXII.III.

EIUS REI QUÆ CAUSA ESSET MĪRĀTUS EX IPSIS QUÆSIIT.

Eius rei

=of this thing

~of this conduct

quæ causa esset^{III}

=what was the cause /of this thing/

~what was the reason

mĭrātus^{IV} ex ipsīs quæsiit

=he <having> wondered // he inquired from themselves

~wondering // he inquired of themselves

I.XXXII.IV.

NIHIL SĒQUANĪ RESPONDĒRE, SED ĪN EĀDEM TRĪSTITIĀ TACITĪ PERMANĒRE.

Nihil Sēquanī respondēre

=the Sequani were responding nothing

~no reply did the Sequani make

I **intueor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP., to look upon, look closely at, gaze at

II **trīstēs...intuērī**, INDIR. DISC. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **quæ...esset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.) AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IV **mīror, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP., to wonder, marvel, be astonished, be amazed, admire

sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre¹

=but (the men) <having been> ~but silently continued in the
quieted, remained in the same same sadness
sadness

I.LXXXII.V.

CUM AB HIS SÆPIUS QUÆRERET NEQUE ŪLLAM OMNĪNŌ
VŌCEM EXPRIMERE POSSET, ĪDEM DĪVIĀCUS ÆDUUS
RESPONDIT: HŌC ESSE MISERIŌREM ET GRAVIŌREM
FORTŪNAM SĒQUANŌRŪM QUAM RELIQUŌRŪM, QUOD
SŌLĪ NĒ ĪN OCCULTŌ QUIDEM QUĒRĪ NEQUE AUXILIUM
IMPLŌRĀRE AUDĒRĒNT ABSENTISQUE ARIOVISTĪ
CRŪDĒLITĀTEM, VELŪT SĪ CŌRAM ADESSET, HORRĒRĒNT;
PROPTEREĀ QUOD RELIQUĪS TAMĒN FUGÆ FACULTĀS
DARĒTUR, SĒQUANĪS VĒRŌ, QUĪ ĪNTRĀ FĪNĒS SUŌS
ARIOVISTŪM RECĒPISSĒNT, QUŌRŪM OPPIDA OMNĪA ĪN
POTESTĀTE EIUS ESSĒNT, OMNĒS CRŪCIĀTŪS ESSĒNT
PERFERĒNDĪ.

Cum ab his sæpius quæreret

=when he more often inquired ~when he had repeatedly
from them inquired of them

I **respondēre, permanēre**, HIST. INF. THE INFINITIVE IS OFTEN USED FOR THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE IN NARRATION, AND TAKES A SUBJECT IN THE NOMINATIVE. §463

neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem^I exprimere^{II} posset^{III}

=and he was not able to press ~and could not elicit any answer
out any voice at all at all

Idem Diviācus Æduus respondit

=the same Divitiacus, the ~the same Divitiacus, the
Æduan, responded Æduan, answered

hōc^{IV} esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam^V Sēquanōrum quam
reliquōrum

=because of this thing, there was ~the lot of the Sequani was more
a more miserable and a more wretched and grievous than that
grave fortune of the Sequani of the rest, on this account
than of the remaining men

quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem^{VI} querī neque auxilium implōrāre
audērent

=because those men alone were ~because they alone durst not
daring, not even in hiding, to even in secret complain or
complain nor to implore aid supplicate aid

I **vōx, vōcis**, F. (VOC-), a voice, sound, tone, utterance, cry, call

II **exprimō, -pressī, -pressus, -ere** (EX + PREMO); to press out, force out, squeeze forth; Fig., to wring out, extort, wrest, elicit

III **cum...quæreret...posset**, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

IV **ABL. OF CAUSE.** THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

V **esse...fortūnam**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

VI **quidem**, ADV., indeed; In the phrases, **ne...quidem**, not even

absentisque^I Ariovistī crūdēlitātem^{II}

=and // (even) (with him) ~and [even when] absent at the
<being> absent, the cruelty of cruelty of Ariovistus
Ariovistus

velut^{III} sī cōram^{IV} adesset^V

=(just) as if he were openly ~just as if he were present
present

horrērent^{VI VII}

=they shuddered (at) ~they shuddered

proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugæ facultās darētur^{VIII}

=for this reason because for the ~for, to the rest, despite of every
remaining men, nonetheless, the thing there was an opportunity
facility of flight was given of flight given

I PRES. PART. USED AS A PRED. THE PRESENT AND PERFECT PARTICIPLES ARE OFTEN USED AS A PREDICATE, WHERE IN ENGLISH A PHRASE OR A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE WOULD BE MORE NATURAL. IN THIS USE THE PARTICIPLES EXPRESS TIME, CAUSE, OCCASION, CONDITION, CONCESSION, CHARACTERISTIC (OR DESCRIPTION), MANNER, MEANS, ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES. §496

II crūdēlitās, -ātis, F. (CRUDELIS), harshness, severity, cruelty, barbarity

III velut, ADV. (VEL- + UT), In a comparison, even as, just as, like as, like; To INTRODUCE A HYPOTHETICAL COMPARATIVE CLAUSE, just as if, just as though, as if, as though—Usually *velut si*

IV cōram, ADV. AND PRÆP. (COM- + ŌS), Object., in the presence of, before the eyes of, in the face of, before; SUBJECT. ADV., present in one's own person or presence, personally

V sī...adesset, CLAUSE OF COMPARISON. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, USUALLY IN THE PRESENT OR PERFECT UNLESS THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES REQUIRES THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT. SUCH CLAUSES ARE INTRODUCED BY THE COMPARATIVE PARTICLES TAMQUAM, TAMQUAM SĪ, QUASI, AC SĪ, UT SĪ, VELUT SĪ (LATER VELUT), POETIC CEU (ALL MEANING AS IF), AND BY QUAM SĪ (THAN IF). §524

VI quod...audērent...horrērent, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VII horreō, -uī, —, -ēre (HORS-), to stand on end, stand erect, bristle, be rough; To tremble, shudder, quake with fright; AS A V.. ACT., WITH AN OBJECT, to shudder or be frightened at, to tremble at, be afraid of

VIII proptereā quod...darētur, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

Sēquanīs^I vērō

=*by the Sequani, but in fact*

~*by the Sequani, but*

quī intrā^{II} finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent^{III}

=*(those men) who had received*
Ariovistus within their own
territories

~*who had admitted Ariovistus*
within their territories

quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent^{IV}

=*(and because) all the towns of*
which had been in his power

~*and whose towns were all in*
his power

omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī^V

=*all the tortures that were*
 <*having*> *to be endured*

~*all tortures must be endured*

I DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. THIS IS THE REGULAR WAY OF EXPRESSING THE AGENT WITH THE SECOND OR PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (§196). §374

II **intrā**, PRÆP. WITH ACC., *within, in, into*

III **quī...recēpissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **quōrum...essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V **essent perferendī**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. (SEE §196 FOR DETAILS) & §583

I.XXXIII



CÆSAR PROMISES TO HELP AGAINST ARIOVISTUS.



I.XXXIII.I.



IS RĒBUS COGNITĪS, CÆSAR GALLORUM
ANIMŌS VERBĪS CŌNFIRMĀVIT,
POLLICITUSQUE EST SIBI EAM REM CŪRÆ
FUTŪRAM; MAGNAM SĒ HABĒRE SPEM ET
BENEFICIŌ SUŌ ET AUCTŌRITĀTE ADDŪCTUM
ARIOVISTUM FĪNEM ÎNIŪRIIS FACTURUM.

His rēbus cognitīs^I

=with these things <having been> learned ~Cæsar, on being informed of these things

Cæsar Gallorum animōs verbīs^{II} cōfirmāvit

=Cæsar strengthened the minds of the Gauls with (his) words ~cheered the minds of the Gauls with his words

pollicitusque est

=and he promised ~and promised

sibi eam rem cūræ^{III} futūram [esse]^{IV}

=that this thing would be a <source of> concern for him ~that this affair should be an object of his concern

I **his rēbus cognitīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

magnam sē habēre^I spem

=(saying) that he (Cæsar) has great hope ~[saying] that he had great hopes

et beneficiō suō et auctōritātē^{II} adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs^{III} facturum [esse]^{IV}

=that Ariovistus, <having been> led by his own beneficence and authority, would make an end to (his) injuries ~that Ariovistus, induced both by his kindness and his power, would put an end to his oppression

I.XXXIII.II.

HĀC ŌRĀTIŌNE HABITĀ CŌNCILIUM DĪMĪSIT.

Hāc ōrātiōne habitā^V

=with this oration <having been> held ~after making this speech

concilium dīmīsīt

=he sent away the council ~he dismissed the assembly

III *sibi...cūræ*, DOUBLE DAT. CONSTRUCTION. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

IV *eam rem...futūram*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *pollicitus est*. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBIUNCTIVE. §580

I *sē habēre*, INDIR. DISC. §580

II *beneficiō suō et auctōritātē*, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with Transitive Verbs which have a Direct Object in the Accusative, or an Infinitive Clause as Object, and also with the Passive of such Verbs; as, *dat* (Historical Present) *negotium Senonibus*, He assigned the task to the Senones (II.II); *nostris — dabatur*, was given to our men (IV.XXIX)

IV *Ariovistum...factūrum*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *sē habēre spem*. §580

V *hāc ōrātiōne habitā*, ABL. ABS. §420

I.LXXXIII.III.

ET SECUNDUM EA MULTÆ RĒS EUM HORTĀBANTUR QUĀRĒ SIBI EAM REM CŌGITANDAM ET SUSCIPIENDAM PUTĀRET; IN PRĪMIS QUOD ÆDUOS, FRĀTRĒS CŌNSANGUĪNEŌSQUE SÆPE NŪMERŌ Ā SĒNĀTŪ APPELLĀTŌS, IN SERVITŪTE ATQUE IN DICIŌNE VIDĒBAT GERMĀNŌRUM TENĒRĪ EŌRUMQUE OBSIDĒS ESSE APUD ARIOVISTUM AC SĒQUANŌS ĪNTELLEGĒBAT; QUOD IN TANTŌ IMPERIŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ TURPISSIMUM SIBI ET REĪ PUBLICÆ ESSE ARBITRĀBĀTUR.

Et secundum ea multæ rēs eum hortābantur

=and after those things, many situations urged him

~and, besides those statements, many circumstances induced him

quārē

=for which reason (why)

~whereby

sibiⁱ eam rem cōgitandam [esse] et suscipiendam [esse]ⁱⁱ

=that this thing is <having> to be thought by him and <having> to be undertaken (by him)

~that this affair ought to be considered and taken up by Cæsar

putāret

=he was thinking

~to think

in prīmīsⁱⁱⁱ

=among the first things (in the first place)

~especially

I DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

II **rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam.** FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE §196 FOR CHART) & §580

quod Æduos, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque sæpe numerō ā senātū^I
appellātōs

=because, the Ædui, <having ~as the Ædui, styled [as they had
been> called, often in respect to been] repeatedly by the senate
number, "brothers" and "brethren" and "kinsmen"
"kinsmen" by the senate

in servitūte atque in diciōne

=in slavery and in dominion ~in the thralldom and dominion

vidēbat

=he saw ~he saw

Germānōrum tenērī^{II}

=that were being held // of the ~were held // of the Germans
Germans

eōrumque obsidēs esse^{III} apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs

=and their hostages (the Ædui) ~and that their hostages were
were among Ariovistus and the with Ariovistus and the Sequani
Sequani

intellegēbat

=he was aware ~understood

III **quārē...putāret**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

I **ā senātū**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

II **Hæduōs...tenērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **vidēbat**. §580

III **obsidēs esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellegēbat**. §580

quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī

=(a state of affairs) which in so ~which in so mighty an empire
great a command (as that) of the [as that] of the Roman people
Roman people

turpissimum^I sibi et rei publicæ^{II} esse^{III}

=that (it) was most repulsive to ~very disgraceful to himself and
him and to the republic the republic

arbitrābātur

=he thought ~he considered

I.LXXXIII.IV.

PAULĀTIM AUTEM GERMĀNŌS CONSUESCERE RHĒNUM
TRĀNSIRE ET IN GALLIAM MAGNAM EŌRUM
MULTITUDĪNEM VENIRE POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ
PERICULŌSUM VIDĒBAT.

Paulātim^{IV} autem Germānōs consueſcere^V Rhēnum trānsire

=that, however, the Germans ~that, moreover, the Germans
were habituated, little by little to should by degrees become
cross the Rhine accustomed to cross the Rhine

I **turpis, -e**, ADJ. (TARC-), WITH COMP. AND SUP., *ugly, unsightly, unseemly, repulsive, foul, filthy*

II **sibi et rei publicæ**, DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376

III **quod...esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrābātur**. §580

IV **paulātim**, ADV., *by little and little, by degrees, gradually*

V **Germānōs consueſcere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **vidēbat**. §580

et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre^I populō
Rōmānō^{II} periculōsum [esse]^{III IV}

=and that a great multitude of them coming into Gaul [was] dangerous to the Roman people ~and that a great body of them should come into Gaul [would be] dangerous to the Roman people

vidēbat

=he saw

~he saw

I.LXXXIII.V.

NEQUE SIBI HOMINĒS FERŌS AC BARBARŌS
TEMPERĀTURŌS EXĪSTIMĀBAT QUĪN, CUM OMNEM
GALLIAM OCCUPĀVISSENT, UT ANTE CIMBRI
TEUTONĪQUE FĒCISSENT, IN PROVĪNCIAM EXĪRENT
ATQUE INDE IN ĪTALIAM CONTENDERENT, PRÆSERTIM
CUM SĒQUANŌS Ā PROVĪNCIĀ NOSTRĀ RHODANUS
DĪVIDERET; QUĪBUS REBUS QUAM MĀTŪRRIMĒ
OCCURRENDUM PUTĀBAT.

Neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperāturōs [esse]^V

=that feral and savage men would not refrain themselves ~that wild and savage men would not be likely to restrain themselves

I **multitudinem venīre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **populō Rōmānō**, DAT. OF REF. §376

III **periculōsus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (PERICULUM), *dangerous, hazardous, perilous*

IV PRED. NOM. IN INDIR. DISC. THE INFINITIVE, WITH OR WITHOUT A SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE, MAY BE USED WITH EST AND SIMILAR VERBS (1) AS THE SUBJECT, (2) IN APPPOSITION WITH THE SUBJECT, OR (3) AS A PREDICATE NOMINATIVE. §452 & §580

V **hominēs...temperāturōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimābat**. §580

existimābat

=he thought

~and judged

quīn^{III}

=that // not

~from

cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent^{III}

=when they had occupied all
Gaul

~after they had possessed
themselves of all Gaul

ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fēcissent

=as the Cimbri and Teutones had
done before

~as the Cimbri and Teutones had
done before them

in provinciam exīrent

=they would go forth into the
province

~going forth into the province

atque inde in Ītaliā contendērent^{IV}

=and then they would hasten
into Italy

~and thence marching into Italy

I quīn...exīrent...condenderent; quīn CLAUSE

II Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne*; *that not*, *quo minus*; *that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quīn*; *that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, *hos...deterreere ne frumentum conferant*, these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quīn...tela conicerent*, could not be restrained from hurling darts (I.XLVII)

III **cum...occupāvissent, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

IV **quīn...exīrent...condenderent, quīn** CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUIN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. I. QUIN IS ESPECIALLY COMMON WITH NON DUBITŌ, I DO NOT DOUBT, NON EST DUBIUM, THERE IS NO DOUBT, AND SIMILAR EXPRESSIONS. §558

præsertim cum Sēquanōs ā provinciā nostrā^I Rhodanus dīvideret^{II}

=especially since the Rhone ~particularly as the Rhone [was separated the Sequani from our the sole barrier that] separated the Sequani from our province

quibus rebus^{III} quam mātūrrimē^{IV} v [sibi] occurrēdum [esse]^{VI} VII

=because of which things // that ~because of which events // he he (Ariovistus) is <having> to be ought to be opposed by him as met [by him] as timely as speedily as possible possible

putābat

=he thought

~he thought

I.XXXIII.VI.

IPSE AUTEM ARIOVISTUS TANTŌS SIBI SPĪRITŪS, TANTAM ARROGANTIAM SŪMPSERAT UT FERENDUS NŌN VIDĒRĒTUR.

I **ā provinciā nostrā**, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. \$400

II **cum...dīvideret**, **cum**, CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. \$549

III **quibus rēbus**, DAT. WITH INTRANS. V. USED IMPERSONALLY IN THE PASS. INTRANSITIVE VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE ARE USED IMPERSONALLY IN THE PASSIVE (\$208iv). THE DATIVE IS RETAINED (CF. \$365). \$372

IV **maturrimus**, **-a**, **-um** (SUPER. OF **mātūrus**), *ripest, most or very mature; timely, seasonable*

V **quam mātūrrimē**, **quam** + SUPER. = THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEG. BESIDES THEIR REGULAR SIGNIFICATION (AS IN ENGLISH), THE FORMS OF COMPARISON ARE USED AS FOLLOWS: WITH QUAM, VEL, OR ŪNUS THE SUPERLATIVE DENOTES THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEGREE. \$291

VI **occurrō**, **-currī**, **-cursus**, **-ere** (OB + CURRO), *to run up, run to meet, go to meet, meet, fall in with; To obviate or seek to obviate, to meet, resist, oppose, counteract*

VII FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **putābat**. \$196 & \$580

Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs^I, tantam arrogantiam^{II} sūmpserat

=*moreover, Ariovistus, himself, had taken up to himself so great spirits (and) arrogance*

~*moreover, Ariovistus, for his part, had assumed to himself such pride and arrogance*

ut

=*that*

~*so that*

ferendus [esse]

=*/that/ he was /not/ <having> to be endured*

~*to be quite sufferable*

nōn vidērētur^{III}

=*not // it seemed*

~*he was not felt*

I **spīritus, -ūs**, M. (CF. SPIRO), *a breathing, breath; Spirit, high spirit, energy, courage, haughtiness, pride, arrogance*

II **arrōgantia, -æ**, F. (ARROGANS), *An assuming, presumption, arrogance, conceitedness*

III **ut...vidērētur**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

I.XXXIV



CÆSAR INVITES ARIOVISTUS TO A CONFERENCE.



I.XXXIV.I.



QUAM OB REM PLACUIT EÏ UT AD ARIOVISTUM
LĒGĀTŌS MITTERET QUĪ AB EŌ
POSTULĀRENT UTĪ ALIQUEM LOCUM
MEDIUM UTRĪUSQUE COLLOQUĪŌ
DĒLIGERET: VELLE SĒSĒ DĒ RĒ PŪBLICĀ ET SUMMĪS
UTRĪUSQUE RĒBUS CŪM EŌ AGERE.

Quam ob rem placuit^I ei^{II}

=on account of which thing, it ~he therefore determined
pleased him

ut ad Ariovistum lĕgātōs mitteret^{III}

=that he should send ~to send ambassadors to
ambassadors to Ariovistus Ariovistus

I **placeō, -cuī, -citus, -ēre** (PLAC-), to please, give pleasure, be approved, be pleasing, be agreeable, be acceptable, suit, satisfy; WITH DAT. TRANSF., *placet mihi* (tibi, etc.), or simply *placet*, it pleases me, it seems good, right, or proper to me; it is my opinion, I am of opinion, I hold, believe, intends decided, resolved, determined (mihi, nobis, etc., or absol.)

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **placuit**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III **ut...mitteret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

quī ab eō postulārent^I

=(embassadors) who might ~to demand of him
demand from him

utī aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquī^{II} dēligeret^{III}

=that he should choose some ~to name some intermediate
middle place of both for a spot for a conference between
conference the two

velle sēsē^{IV} dē rē públicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere

=(saying) that he wished to ~[saying] that he wished to treat
conduct with him about the him on state-business and
republic and the highest things matters of the highest
of both (of them) importance to both of them

I.XXXIV.II.

Eī lēgātiōnī Arioivistus respōndit: sī quid ipsī ā
Cæsare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī
quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre.

Eī lēgātiōnī Arioivistus respondit

=Arioivistus responded to this ~to this embassy Arioivistus
embassy replied

I **quī...postulārent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. THE ABLATIVE QUŌ (= UT EŌ) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531

II DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

III **utī...dēligeret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

IV **velle sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **lēgātōs mitteret**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

sī quid^I ipsī ā Cæsare opus esset^{II}

=(saying) that if he (Ariovistus) had a need of anything from himself (Ariovistus) from Cæsar ~that if he himself had had need of anything from Cæsar

sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse^{III IV}

=that he (Ariovistus) would have come to him (Cæsar) ~he would have gone to him

sī quid ille sē velit^{V VI}

=(and saying) that if that (man) (Cæsar) wishes anything from himself (Ariovistus) ~and that if he (Cæsar) wished anything of him

illum^{VII} ad sē venīre oportēre^{VIII}

=(then) it is necessary that he (Cæsar) come to himself (Ariovistus) ~he ought to come to him

I USED AS SUBST; SUB. NOM. OF *esset*.

II *sī...esset*, PROTASIS OF CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

III PERF. INF. PERIPHRASTIC

IV *sēsē...ventūrum fuisse*, APODOSIS OF CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V *volo* is sometimes used like a Verb of asking, with two Accusatives; as, *si quid* (Accusative) *ille se* (Accusative) *velit*, if he (Cæsar) wished anything of him (I.XXXIV)

VI *sī...velit*, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

VII *illum...oportēre*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *respondit*. §580

VIII IMP.

I.XXXIV.III.

PRÆTEREĀ SĒ NEQUE SINE EXERCITŪ IN EĀS PARTĒS
GALLIÆ VENĪRE AUDĒRE QUĀS CÆSAR POSSIDĒRET,
NEQUE EXERCITUM SINE MAGNŌ COMMEĀTŪ ATQUE
MŌLIMENTŌ IN ŪNUM LOCUM CONTRAHERE POSSE.

Prætereā^I sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliæ venīre
audēre^{II}

=that, moreover, he neither ~that, besides, neither dare he
dares to come without an army go without an army into those
into those parts of Gaul parts of Gaul

quās Cæsar possidēret^{III IV}

=which Cæsar possessed ~which Cæsar had possession of

neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū^V atque mōlimentō^{VI} in
ūnum locum contrahere^{VII} posse^{VIII}

=nor is he able to draw together ~nor could (he) draw his army
(his) army into one place together to one place without
without great supply (money) great expense and trouble
and exertion

I **prætereā**, ADV. (PRÆTER + EA), *in addition, beyond this, further, besides, moreover*

II **sē...audēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **possidō, -sēdī, -sessus, -ere** (POR (FOR PRO) + SIDO), *to take possession of, occupy, seize*

IV **quās...possidēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V **commeātus, -ūs**, M. (COMMEO), *a going to and fro, passing back and forth; provisions, supplies*

VI **mōlimentum, -ī**, N. (MOLIOR), *a great exertion, trouble, effort*

VII **contrahō, -trāxī, -trāctus, -ere** (CON + TRAHŌ), *to draw together, collect, assemble*

VIII **exercitum...posse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

I.XXXIV.IV.

SIBI AUTEM MĪRUM VIDĒRĪ QUID ĪN SUĀ GALLIĀ QUAM
 BELLŌ VĪCISSET AUT CÆSARĪ AUT OMNĪNŌ POPULŌ
 RŌMĀNŌ NEGŌTĪ ESSET.

Sibi autem mīrum^I vidērī^{II III}

=*that, however, (it) seems* ~*that to him, moreover, it*
amazing to him *appeared strange*

quid in suā Galliā

=*what // in his own Gaul* ~*what // in his own Gaul*

quam bellŌ^{IV} vīcisset^V

=*which he had conquered by* ~*which he had conquered in war*
 <means of> war

I **mirus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (MI-), *wonderful, marvellous, astonishing, extraordinary, amazing*

II INDIR. DISC. §580

III USED IMPERSONALLY

IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V **quam...vīcisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

aut Cæsari^I aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō^{II} negōti^{III} ^{IV} esset^V

=/what/ of business to Cæsar or ~business either Cæsar or the
the to Roman people (there) was Roman people at all had
altogether

I The Dative is used with the verb *sum* to denote Possession; as, *Mercatoribus est aditus. Traders have access* (IV.II); *quid...Cæsari...negotii esset, what business Cæsar...had* (I.XXXIV)

II *Cæsari aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō*, DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. NOTE. THE GENITIVE OR A POSSESSIVE WITH ESSE EMPHASIZES THE POSSESSOR; THE DATIVE, THE FACT OF POSSESSION; AS,—*LIBER EST MEUS, THE BOOK IS MINE* (AND NO ONE'S ELSE); *EST MIHI LIBER, I HAVE A BOOK* (AMONG OTHER THINGS). §373

III PARTITIVE GEN. WITH *quid*. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NOUNS OR PRONOUNS. §346

IV *negōtium*, -ī, N. (NEC + OTIUM), a business, employment, occupation, affair

V *quid...esset*, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

I.XXXV

CÆSAR MAKES DEMANDS OF ARIOVISTUS.

I.XXXV.I.



IS RESPŌNSĪS AD CÆSAREM RELĀTĪS, ITERUM AD EUM CÆSAR LĒGĀTŌS CUM HĪS MANDĀTĪS MITTIT: QUŌNIAM TANTŌ SUŌ POPULĪQUE RŌMĀNĪ BĒNEFICIŌ ADFECTUS, CUM IN CONSULĀTŪ SUŌ RĒX ATQUE AMĪCUS Ā SENĀTŪ APPELLĀTUS ESSET, HANC SIBI POPULŌQUE RŌMĀNŌ GRĀTIAM REFERRET UT IN COLLOQUIUM VENIRE INVĪTĀTUS GRAVĀRĒTUR NEQUE DĒ COMMŪNĪ RĒ DĪCENDUM SIBI ET COGNŌSCENDUM PUTĀRET, HÆC ESSE QUÆ AB EŌ POSTULĀRET: PRĪMUM NĒ QUAM MULTITŪDĪNEM HOMĪNŪ AMPLIUS TRĀNS RHĒNŪM IN GALLIAM TRĀDŪCERET; DEĪNDE OBSIDĒS QUŌS HABĒRET AB ĀDUĪS REDDERET, SĒQUANĪSQUE PERMITTERET UT QUŌS IPSĪ HABĒRENT VOLUNTĀTE EIUS REDDERE ILLĪS LICĒRET; NĒVE ĀDUŌS ĪNĪŪRIĀ LACESSERET NĒVE HĪS SOCIĪSQUE EŌRŪM BELLUM ĪNFERRET.

Hīs respōnsīs ad Cæsarem relātīs¹

=with these things <having been> reported to Cæsar

~when these answers were reported to Cæsar

I ***hīs respōnsīs...relātīs***, ABL., ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

iterum ad eum Cæsar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs^I mittit

=again, Cæsar sends ~he sends ambassadors to him a
ambassadors to him with these second time with this message
mandates

quoniam^{II} tantō suō populūque Rōmānī beneficiō^{III} adfectus

=since (he,) <having been> ~since, after having been treated
treated with so great kindness with so much kindness by
by himself (Cæsar) and the himself and the Roman people
Roman people

cum in consulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū^{IV} appellātus
esset^V

=as he had been called a king ~as he had in his consulship
and a friend in his own been styled 'king and friend' by
consulship by the senate the senate [59 B.C.]

hanc sibi populūque Rōmānō grātiā referret^{VI}

=he was bringing back this ~he returns thanks to [Cæsar]
thanks to himself (Cæsar) and to himself and the Roman people
the Roman people

-
- I **mandātum**, -ī, n. (P. N. OF mando), a charge, commission, injunction, command, order
- II **quoniam**, ADV. (QUOM + IAM), since now, since then, since, seeing that, as, because, whereas
- III **tantō suō...beneficiō**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409
- IV **ā senātū**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405
- V **cum...appellātus esset**, cum, CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546
- VI **quoniam...referret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur^I

=that (he,) <having been> invited ~[viz.] that when invited to a
to come to a conference, conference, he demurs
hesitates

neque

=and // not

~and // not

dē commūnī rē dicendum [esse] sibi^{II} et cognōscendum [esse]^{III}

=that it is not <having> to be ~that it concerns him to advise
spoken and it is not <having> to be and inform himself about an
be thought by him (Ariovistus) object of mutual interest
about a common thing

putāret^{IV}

=he did // think

~does // think

hæc esse^V

=(therefore) these are the things ~these are the things

I **gravor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (PASS. OF gravo), to be burdened, feel incommoded, be vexed, take amiss, bear with reluctance, regard as a burden, hesitate, do unwillingly

II DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

III **dicendum...cognōscendum**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **putāret**. (SEE CHART AT §196) & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV **ut...gravārētur...putāret**, THIS **ut** IS AN INDIC. CONCESSIVE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE PARTICLES OF CONCESSION (MEANING ALTHOUGH, GRANTING THAT) ARE QUAMVIS, UT, LICET, ET SI, TAMETSĪ, ETIAM SI, QUAMQUAM, AND CUM. SOME OF THESE TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, OTHERS THE INDICATIVE, ACCORDING TO THE NATURE OF THE CLAUSE WHICH EACH INTRODUCES. §527 & §583

V **hæc esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **lēgātōs...mittit**. §580

quæ ab eō postulāret^I

=*(the things) which he should demand from him* ~*which he requires of him*

prīmum nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret^{II}

=*first (of all), that he should not lead across the Rhine into Gaul any more multitude of men* ~*first, that he do not any more lead any body of men across the Rhine into Gaul*

deinde [ut] obsidēs

=*next, [that] the hostages* ~*in the next place, that the hostages*

quōs habēret^{III} ab Æduīs^{IV}

=*which he held from the Ædui* ~*which he has from the Ædui*

redderet

=*he should return* ~*he restore*

Sēquanīsque^V permitteret^{VI VII}

=*and he should permit to the Sequani* ~*and grant the Sequani*

I **quæ...postulāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **nē...trādūceret**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

III **quōs habēret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **ab Hæduīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

V DAT. WITH V. **permitteret**. THE DATIVE IS USED: WITH THE IMPERSONALS LIBET (LUBET), IT PLEASES, AND LICET, IT IS ALLOWED. §368

VI **permittō, -misi, -missus, -ere** (PER + MITTŌ), *to let pass, let go, let loose: equos in hostem, i.e. ride at full speed; To give leave, let, allow, suffer, grant, permit*

VII **redderet...permitteret**, COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. §401

ut

=to

~to

quōs ipsī habērentⁱ

=those (hostages) whom they themselves held (from the Æduis) ~those hostages which they have

voluntāteⁱⁱ eius reddere illis licēretⁱⁱⁱ

=it should be allowed, with his consent (Ariovistus'), to return those (hostages) ~permission to restore to them with his consent

nēve Æduōs iniuriā^{iv} lacesseret

=(and) that he should neither provoke the Ædui by injury ~and that he neither provoke the Ædui by outrage

nēve hīs sociīsque^v eōrum bellum inferret^{vi}

=nor should he bring war upon them and their allies ~nor make war upon them or their allies

I **quōs...habērent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **ut...licēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **hīs sociīsque**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **inferret**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AQ, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VI **nēve...lacesseret...inferret**, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. §588

I.LXXXV.II.

SĪ ID ITA FĒCISSET, SIBI POPULŌQUE RŌMĀNŌ
 PERPETUAM GRĀTIAM ATQUE AMĪCITIAM CUM EŌ
 FUTURAM: SĪ NŌN IMPETRĀRET, SĒSĒ, QUŌNIAM M.
 MESSĀLĀ M. PĪSŌNE CONSULIBUS SENĀTUS CĒNSUISSET
 UTĪ QUĪCUMQUE GALLIAM PRŌVĪNCIAM OBTĪNĒRET,
 QUOD COMMODŌ REĪ PŪBLICÆ FACERE POSSET, ÆDUŌS
 CĒTERŌSQUE AMĪCŌS POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ DĒFĒNDERET, SĒ
 ÆDUŌRUM ĪNĪURIĀS NŌN NEGLĒCTŪRUM.

SĪ id ita fēcisset^I

=if he should do it (this) so (e.g. ~if he would accordingly do this
 in this manner)

sibi populōque Rōmānō^{II} perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiā
 cum eō futuram [esse]^{III}

=there would be perpetual ~[Cæsar says] that "he himself
 gratitude and friendship with and the Roman people will
 him (Ariovistus) for himself entertain a perpetual feeling of
 (Cæsar) and for the Roman favor and friendship toward him
 people

sī nōn impetrāret^{IV}

=if he (Cæsar) should not ~but that if he [Cæsar] does not
 achieve (his desires) obtain [his desires]

I ***sī...fēcisset***, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II ***sibi populōque Rōmānō***, DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. §373

III ***perpetuam grātiā...futūram***, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV ***sī...impetrāret***, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

sēsē

=that he

~that he

quoniam

=since

~forasmuch as

M[arcō] Messālā M[arcō] Pisōne consulibus^I

=with M[arcus] Messala (and)
M[arcus] Piso <being> consuls

~in the consulship of Marcus
Messala and Marcus Piso [61
B.C.]

senātus cēnsuisset^{II III}

=the senate had judged

~the senate had decreed

utī quicumque^{IV} Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret^V

=that whomsoever should
obtain the Gallic province (e.g.
as governor)

~that, whoever should have the
administration of the province
of Gaul

I **M. Messālā M. Pisōne consulibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

II **cēnsēō, cēnsuī, cēnsus, -ēre** (CAS-), to tax, assess, rate, estimate; Of senators, to be of opinion, propose, vote, move, give judgment, argue, insist, urge

III **quoniam...cēnsuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV **quicumque, quæcumque, quodcumque**, PRON. REL., whoever, whatever, whosoever, whatsoever, every one who, everything that, all that

V **quicumque...obtinēret**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

quod commodō^I II reī publicae^{III} facere posset^{IV}

=as far as he was able to do (it) ~should, as far as he could do so
with advantage to the republic consistently with the interests of
the republic

Æduōs cēterōsque^V amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet^{VI}

=he should defend the Ædui and ~protect the Ædui and the other
the other friends of the Roman friends of the Roman people
people

sē Æduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum [esse]^{VII} VIII

=that he would not neglect the ~will not overlook the wrongs of
Ædui's injuries the Ædui

I **commodō**, ABL. OF SPEC. A NOUN OR PRONOUN, WITH A PARTICIPLE IN AGREEMENT, MAY BE PUT IN THE ABLATIVE TO DEFINE THE TIME OR CIRCUMSTANCES OF AN ACTION. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE. §418

II **commōdus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COM + MŌDUS), that has a due or proper measure; Of things, suitable, fit, convenient, opportune, commodious, easy, appropriate, favorable, friendly; SUBST., **commōdum, -i**, N., A convenient opportunity, favorable condition, convenience

III **reī publicae**, DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376

IV **quod...posset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

V **cēterus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (CA-, CI-), the other, remainder, rest

VI **utī...dēfenderet**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

VII **neglegō, -ēxī, -ēctus, -ere** (NEC + LEGO), to disregard, not heed, not trouble oneself about, not attend to, slight, neglect, be regardless of, be indifferent to

VIII **sēsē...sē...neglēctūrum**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

I.XXXVI



ARIOVISUTS REPLIES, DEFYING CÆSAR.



I.XXXVII.



D HÆC ARIOVISTUS RESPONDIT: IŪS ESSE
BELLĪ UT QUĪ VĪCISSENT EĪS QUŌS VĪCISSENT
QUĒM AD MODUM VELLENT IMPERĀRENT:
ITEM POPULUM RŌMĀNUM VICTĪS NŌN AD
ALTERĪUS PRÆSCRĪPTUM, SED AD SUUM ARBITRIUM
IMPERĀRE CŌNSUĒSSE.

Ad hæc Ariovistus respondit

=to this (thing), Ariovistus ~to this, Ariovistus replied
responded

iŭs esse¹ bellĭ

=it was a right of war

~that the right¹ of war was

ut

=that

~that

I **iŭs esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quī vīcissent^I

=(those men) who had ~they who had conquered
conquered

eīs^{II}

=those (people) ~those

quōs vīcissent^{III}

=(those people) whom they had ~whom they had conquered
conquered

quem ad modum^{IV} vellent^{VI}

=to which manner they wished ~in what manner they pleased

imperārent^{VII}

=they might command ~should govern

I **quī vīcissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **imperārent**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

III **quōs vīcissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **quēmadmōdum** or **quē ad mōdum**, ADV. (QUĒM + AD + MŌ + DUM), in what manner, how

V **modus**, -ī, M. (MA-), a measure, extent, quantity; A way, manner, mode, method, fashion, style

VI **quem...vellent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VII **ut...imperārent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

item populum Rōmānum victis^I nōn ad alterius præscriptum^{II} sed ad suum arbitrium^{III} imperāre cōsuēsse^{IV}

=that, likewise, the Roman people are accustomed to govern the conquered men, not (according) to the regulation of the others, but (according) to their own will ~that in that way the Roman people were wont to govern the nations which they had conquered, not according to the dictation of any other, but according to their own authority

LXXXVII.

SĪ IPSE POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ NŌN PRÆSCRĪBERET QUEM AD MODUM SUŌ IŪRE ŪTERĒTUR, NŌN OPORTĒRE SĒ Ā POPULŌ RŌMĀNŌ ĪN SUŌ IŪRE IMPEDĪRĪ. ĀDUŌS SIBI, QUŌNIAM BELLĪ FORTŪNAM TEMPTĀSSENT ET ARMĪS CŌNGRESSĪ AC SUPERĀTĪ ESSENT, STĪPĒNDIĀRĪŌS ESSE FACTŌS.

SĪ ipse populō Rōmānō^V nōn præscriberet^{VI VII}

=if he, for his part, should not prescribe to the Roman people ~if he for his part did not dictate to the Roman people

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præscriptum**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO., ANTE., CON., IN., INTER., OB., POST., PRÆ., PRO., SUB., SUPER., AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **præscriptum, -ī**, N. (P. N. OF PRÆSCRIBO; PRÆ + SCRIBO), a previous direction, precept, limitation, proviso, regulation

III **arbitrium, -ī**, N. (ARBITER), In law, a judgment, decision of an arbitrator; Mastery, dominion, authority, power, will, free-will, choice, pleasure

IV **populum...cōsuēsse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **populō Rōmānō**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præscriberet**. §370

VI **præscribo, -psi, -ptum, -ere** (PRÆ + SCRIBO), to write before, in front, or previously, to prefix in writing; TROP, to order, appoint, direct, command, prescribe; dictate

VII **sī...præscriberet**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRESENT CONDITION IN INDIR DISC. §589

quem ad modum^I suō iūre ūterētur^{II}

=to which manner they (the roman people) should use their own right ~as to the manner in which they were to exercise their right

nōn oportēre sē^{III} ā populō Rōmānō^{IV} in suō iūre^V impedīri

=that he ought not to be hindered by the Roman people in his own right ~he ought not to be obstructed by the Roman people in his right

Æduōs sibi^{VI}

=to him // the Ædui ~that the Ædui // to him

quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent

=since they had attempted the fortune of war ~inasmuch as they had tried the fortune of war

I **quem**, HERE AS AN INTERROG.

II **quem...ūterētur**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III **oportēre sē**, APODOSIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

IV **ā populō Rōmānō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

V **suō iūre**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūterētur**. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VI **DAT. OF REF.** THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376

et armīs^I congressī [essent]^{II} ac superātī essent^{III}

=and they had contended by ~and had engaged in arms and
<means of> arms and they had been conquered
been overcome

stīpendiārīōs^{IV} esse factōs^V

=that (those men) had been ~had become tributaries
made tributaries

I.LXXVI.III.

MAGNAM CÆSAREM INIŪRIAM FACERE, QUI SUO
ADVENTŪ VECTĪGĀLIA SIBI DĒTERIŌRA FACERET.

Magnam Cæsarem iniūriam facere^{VI}

=that Cæsar is doing a great ~that Cæsar was doing a great
injury injustice

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **congregior, -gressus, -ī**, DEP. (COM- + GRADIOR), to come together, meet, have an interview; To meet in strife, fight, contend, engage, join battle

III **quoniam...temptāssent...congressī ac superātī essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV Predicate Adjectives, and Participles in Predicate used as Adjectives, are connected with a Noun or Pronoun through a Verb or Participle; as, *fortissimi sunt Belgæ*, the Belgians are the bravest (I.I); *qui peritissimus habebatur*, who was considered highly skilled (I.XXI); *Gallia est divisa*, Gaul is divided, the Perfect Passive Participle of divide being used as an Adjective; if *est divisa* were here a Perfect Passive tense, it would have to be translated *has been divided* or *was divided* (I.I)

V **Hæduōs...esse factōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

VI **Cæsarem...facere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **respondit**. §580

quī suō adventū^I vectigālia^{II} sibi^{III} dēteriōra^{IV} faceret^V

=(he) who, by his (Cæsar's) ~in that by his arrival he was coming, was making (his) making his revenues less revenues lower to him valuable to him (Ariovistus)

LXXXVI.IV.

ÆDUIS SĒ OBSIDĒS REDDITŪRUM NŌN ESSE, NEQUE HIS NEQUE EŌRUM SOCIIS INIŪRIĀ BELLUM INLĀTŪRUM, SĪ IN EŌ MANĒRENT QUOD CONVĒNISSET STĪPĒNDIUMQUE QUOTĀNNIS PENDERENT: SĪ ID NŌN FĒCISSĒNT, LONGĒ HĪS FRĀTERNUM NŌMEN POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ AFUTŪRUM.

Æduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse^{VI}

=that (he) would not give back ~that he should not restore their (their) hostages to the Ædui hostages to the Ædui

I **suō adventū**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **vectigal, -ālis**, N. (VAG-), a payment to the state, revenue, toll, tax, impost, excise, duty, tribute

III **DAT. OF REF.** §376

IV **dētērior, -ius**, ADJ. COMP. (DETER; FROM *de*), down; hence, lower, inferior, worse, worse, poorer, meaner

V **quī...faceret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §583

VI **reddō, -didī, -ditus, -ere** (RED + DŌ) To give back, return, restore

neque his neque eōrum sociis^I iniūriā^{II} bellum inlātūrum [esse]^{III}

=(but) that he would bring war ~but should not make war
with injury neither to these men unjustly either upon them or
nor to their allies their allies

sī in eō manērent^{IV}

=if they remained in this ~if they abided by that

quod convēnisset^V

=(that thing) which he had ~which had been agreed on
agreed in

stīpendiumque quotannīs^{VI} penderent^{VII VIII}

=and they would weigh out in ~and paid out their tribute
payment (their) tribute every annually
year

sī id nōn fēcissent^{IX}

=(and) if they had not done it ~if they did not continue to do
that

I **his...sociis.** DAT. WITH COMP. V. **inlātūrum.** §370

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **sē...redditūrum esse...illātūrum,** APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IV **maneō, mānsī, mānsus, -ēre** (MAN-), to stay, remain, abide, tarry; To remain, last, endure, continue, abide, persist

V **quod convēnisset,** SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **quōt,** INDECL. Lit., how many, as many, as: quot sunt?; TRANSF., in specifications of time, all, each, every; hence, quod annis, every year, yearly, annually

VII **pendō, -pendī, -pēnsus, -ere** (PAND-), to suspend, weigh, weigh out; To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out; Fig., to pay, suffer, undergo

VIII **sī...manērent...penderent,** PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

IX **sī...fēcissent,** PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

longē hīs^I frāternum nōmen populi Rōmānī āfutūrum [esse]^{II}

=(then) the name of the Roman ~the Roman people's name of
people of 'brothers' would be far ~brothers' would be of no avail
away <with reference> to them to them

I.XXXVI.V.

QUOD SIBI CÆSAR DĒNŪNTIĀRET SĒ ÆDUŌRUM
INIŪRIĀS NŌN NEGLĒCTŪRUM, NĒMĪNEM SĒCUM SĪNE
SUĀ PERNICIĒ CONTĒNDISSE.

Quod^{III} sibi Cæsar dēnūntiāret^{IV V}

=as (to) Cæsar threatening ~as to the fact that to Cæsar
himself threatened him

sē Æduōrum iniūriās nōn neglĕctūrum [esse]^{VI}

=that he would not neglect the ~that he would not overlook the
injuries of the Ædui wrongs of the Ædui

I A Dative of Reference is used with Verbs of taking away, especially those compounded with *ab*, *de*, and *ex* (sometimes called Dative of Separation); thus, *Æduis libertatem sint erepturi*, that they were going to take away liberty from the Æduans, Lit. that as regards the Æduans, they are, etc. (I.XVII); *scuto uni militi detracto*, snatching a shield from a soldier, Lit. to a soldier, the Dative expressing the point of view of the soldier (II.XXV); *longe eis afuturum*, would be far from benefiting them, Lit. would be far away with reference to them (I.XXXVI)

II **frāternum nōmen...āfutūrum**, APODOSIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning as to the fact that, as regards the fact that, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod...enuntiarit*, as to the fact that he had reported, in the direct form, *quod enuntiavi*, as to the fact that I have reported (I.XVII)

IV **dēnūntiō**, -āvī, -ātus, -āre (DE + NŪNTIŌ), to announce, declare, denounce, menace, threaten, intimate, order, command

V **quod...dēnūntiāret**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **sē...neglĕctūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dēnūntiāret**. §580

nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse^I

=(he said) that no one had ever
fought with him (Ariovistus)
without his own destruction

~[he said] that no one had ever
entered into a contest with him
[Ariovistus] without utter ruin
to himself

I.XXXVI.VI.

CUM VELLE, CONGREDERĒTUR: INTELLĒCTŪRUM QUID
INVICTĪ GERMĀNĪ, EXERCITĀTISSIMĪ IN ARMĪS, QUĪ
INTER ANNŌS QUATTUORDECIM TĒCTUM NŌN
SUBĪSENT, VIRTŪTE POSSENT.

Cum vellet^{II}

=when he wishes

~when he chose

congrederētur^{III}

=he might meet (him) (e.g. to
meet in battle)

~that Cæsar might enter the lists

intellĒctŭrum [esse]^{IV}

=that (he) (Cæsar) would learn

~he would feel

I *nēminem...contendisse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *respondit*. §580

II *cum vellet*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM, WHEN, AND SOME PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE DATES OR DEFINES THE TIME AT WHICH THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB OCCURRED. §545 & §583

III COMMAND IN INDIR. DISC. ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

IV INDIR. DISC. §580

quid invictī^I Germānī, exercitātissimī^{II} in armīs

=*what the unconquerable* ~*what the invincible Germans,*
Germans, the most-exercised in *well-trained [as they were]*
arms *beyond all others to arms*

quī inter annōs quattuordecim tēctum^{III} nōn subissent^{IV}

=(*the Germans*) *who, in the* ~*who for fourteen years had not*
course of fourteen years, had *been beneath a roof*
not come under a roof

virtūte^V possent^{VI}

=(*those men*) *were able (to do)* ~*could achieve by their valor*
 <*by means of*> (*their*) *manliness*

I **invictus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH SUP. (IN + VICTUS), *unconquered, unsubdued, unconquerable, invincible*

II **exercito, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (EXERCEO), *to exercise diligently or frequently, practise; Hence, exercitatus, -a, -um, (P. A.), Well exercised, practised, versed, trained*

III **tēctum, -i**, N. (P. N. OF TEGO), *a covered structure, roofed enclosure, shelter, house, dwelling, abode, roof*

IV **quī...subissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI **quid...possent**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

I.XXXVII

CÆSAR HEARS FURTHER COMPLAINTS.

I.XXXVII.I.



ÆC EÖDEM TEMPORE CÆSARĪ MANDĀTA
REFERĒBANTUR, ET LĒGĀTĪ AB ÆDUĪS ET Ā
TRĒVERĪS VENIĒBANT: ÆDUĪ QUESTUM
QUOD HARUDĒS, QUI NŪPER IN GALLIAM
TRĀNSPORTĀTĪ ESSĒNT, FĪNĒS EÖRUM POPULĀRENTUR;
SĒSĒ NĒ OBSIDIBUS QUIDEM DATĪS PACEM ARIOVISTĪ
REDIMERE POTUISSE: TRĒVERĪ AUTEM, PĀGŌS CENTUM
SUĒBORUM AD RĪPĀS RHĒNĪ CŌNSĒDISSE, QUI RHĒNUM
TRĀNSIRE CŌNĀRENTUR; HĪS PRÆESSE NASUAM ET
CIMBERIUM FRĀTRĒS.

Hæc eödem tempore^I Cæsari mandata^{II} referēbantur

=at the same time (that) these ~at the same time that this
commands were brought back message was delivered to Cæsar
to Cæsar

I **eödem tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. \$423

II **mandātum, -ī**, N. (PPP. OF mando), a charge, commission, injunction, command, order

et lēgātī ab Æduīs et ā Trēverīs^I veniēbant

=the ambassadors were coming ~embassadors came from the
from both the Ædui and from Ædui and the Treviri
the Treviri

Æduī [veniēbat]

=the Ædui [were coming] ~the Ædui [were coming]

questum^{II III}

=to complain ~to complain

quod Harudēs

=that the Harudes ~that the Harudes

quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent^{IV V}

=who had recently been carried ~who had lately been brought
across into Gaul over into Gaul

finēs eōrum populārentur^{VI VII}

=(the Harudes) were laying ~were ravaging their territories
waste their territories

I **Trēverī, -ōrum**, M. PL., *Treverans, Treveri*, a Belgic people near the Rhine

II ACC. SUPINE EXPRESSING PURPOSE AFTER V. OF MOTION **veniēbant**. THE SUPINE IS A VERBAL ABSTRACT OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION (§94II), HAVING NO DISTINCTION OF TENSE OR PERSON, AND LIMITED TO TWO USES. (1) THE FORM IN -UM IS THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE END OF MOTION (§428I). (2) THE FORM IN -Ū IS USUALLY DATIVE OF PURPOSE (§382), BUT THE ABLATIVE WAS EARLY CONFUSED WITH IT. §508

III **queror, questus, -ī**, DEP. (QVES-), to express grief, complain, lament, bewail; **questum**, SUPINE. EXPRESSING PURPOSE—Hence, to complain

IV **trānsportō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (TRĀNS + PORTŌ), to carry over, take across, carry, convey, remove, transport

V **quī...trānsportātī essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

VI **populor, ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (SCAL-), to lay waste, ravage, devastate, spoil, plunder, pillage

VII **quod...populārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

sēsē nē

=(and) that they // not

~that they // not

obsidibus quidem datīs^I

=even with hostages <having been> given ~even by giving hostages

pacem Ariovistī redimere^{II} potuisse^{III}

=had // been able to buy back the peace of Ariovistus

~had // been able to procure peace from Ariovistus

Trēverī

=(and) of the Treviri

~and from the Treviri

autem, pāgōs centum Suēborum^{IV} ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse

=(to state) moreover, that a hundred cantons of the Suevi had settled on the banks of the Rhine

~[to state] that a hundred cantons of the Suevi had encamped on the banks of the Rhine

quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur^V

=who were trying to cross the Rhine

~and were attempting to cross it

I **obsidibus...datīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II **redimō, -ēmī, -ēmtus, -ere** (RED- + EMO), to buy back, repurchase, redeem; to buy, purchase; To gain, acquire, obtain, procure any thing desirable

III **sēsē...potuisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **questum**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV **Suēbī, -ōrum**, M. PL., the Swabians, Suebi, a powerful German people

V **quī...cōnārentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

hīs^{VI} præesse^{VII} Nasuam^{VIII} et Cimberium^{IX} frātrēs

=(and that) the brothers, Nasuas ~that the brothers, Nasuas and
and Cimberius, had presided Cimberius, headed them
over them

I.XXXVII.II.

QUIBUS RĒBUS CÆSAR VEHEMENTER COMMŌTUS
MĀTŪRANDUM SIBI EXĪSTIMĀVIT, NĒ, SĪ NOVA MANUS
SUĒBŌRUM CUM VETERIBUS CŌPIĪS ARIOVISTĪ SĒSĒ
CONIUNXISSET, MINUS FACILE RESISTĪ POSSET.

Quibus rēbus^V Cæsar vehementer commōtus

=Cæsar, <having been> moved ~being greatly alarmed at these
by which things things, Cæsar

mātūrandum [esse]^{VI VII} sibi^{VIII}

=that it is <having> to be ~that he must hasten
hastened by him

exīstimāvit

=he thought ~thought

VI DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præesse**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

VII **pāgōs...cōnsēdisse...præesse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

VIII **Nasua, -ae**, M., a chieftain of the Suebi

IX **Cimberius, -ī**, M., a leader of the Suebi

V **quibus rēbus**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI **mātūrō, āvī, -ātus, -āre** (MATURUS), to make ripe, ripen, bring to maturity; Fig., to make haste, hasten, accelerate, quicken, despatch, expedite

VII FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE CHART §196) & §580

VIII DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

nē

=lest

~lest

sī nova manus Suebōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovistī sēsē
coniunxisset^{I II}

=if (this) new band of Suevi had
united itself with the old troops
of Ariovistus

~if this new band of Suevi should
unite with the old troops of
Ariovistus

minus facile resistī posset^{III}

=he (Ariovistus) might be less
easily able to be withstood

~he (Ariovistus) might be less
easily withstood

I.LXXXVII.III.

ITAQUE RĒ FRŪMENTARIĀ QUAM CELERRIMĒ POTUIT
COMPARĀTĀ MAGNĪS ITĪNERIBUS AD ARIOVISTUM
CONTENDIT.

Itaque

=therefore

~therefore

rē frūmentariā quam^{IV} celerrimē potuit comparātā^V

=with the corn thing <having
been> prepared as quickly as he
was able

~after having, as quickly as he
could, provided a supply of corn

I **coniungo, -nxi, -nctum, -ere** (CON + IUNGO), to bind together, connect, join, unite

II **sī...coniūnxisset**, PROTASIS OF FUT. CONDITION IN INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. §589 & §592

III **nē...posset**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

IV MODIFIES THE SUP. ADV. **celerrimē**

V **rē frūmentariā...comparātā**, ABL. ABS. §420

magnis itineribus^{VI} ad Ariovistum contendit

=he hastened to Ariovistus by *~he hastened to Ariovistus by*
<means of> great marches *forced marches*

I.XXXVIII

CAESAR HASTENS TO VESONTIO.

I.XXXVIII.I.



UM TRĪDUĪ VIAM PRŌCESSISSET, NŪNTIĀTUM
EST EĪ ARIOVISTUM CUM SUĪS OMNIBUS
CŌPIĪS AD OCCUPANDUM VESONTIŌNEM,
QUOD EST OPPIDUM MAXIMUM
SĒQUANŌRUM, CONTĒNDERE TRĪDUĪQUE VIAM Ā SUĪS
FĪNIBUS PRŌCESSISSE.

Cum trīduī^I ^{II} viam^{III} prōcessisset^{IV V}

=when he had went forth (on a)
three days' journey

~when he had proceeded three
days' journey

nūntiātum est eī

=it was announced to him

~word was brought to him

I GEN. OF QUALITY. THE GENITIVE IS USED TO DENOTE QUALITY, BUT ONLY WHEN THE QUALITY IS MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE. §345

II **trīdium, -ī**, N. (TRES + DIES), (SC. *spatium*), *three days' time, three days*

III COGNATE ACC. AN INTRANSITIVE VERB OFTEN TAKES THE ACCUSATIVE OF A NOUN OF KINDRED MEANING, USUALLY MODIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE OR IN SOME OTHER MANNER. THIS CONSTRUCTION IS CALLED THE COGNATE ACCUSATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE OF KINDRED SIGNIFICATION. §390

IV **cum...prōcessisset, cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §546

V **prōcēdō, -cessī, —, -ere** (PRŌ + CĒDŌ), *to go before, go forward, advance, proceed, march on, move forward, go forth*; In partic. In milit. lang., *to go or march forwards, to advance*

Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem^I

=*that Ariovistus // with all his own forces, for <the purpose of> occupying Vesontio* ~*that Ariovistus // with all his forces to occupy Vesontio*

quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum

=*which is the greatest town of the Sequani* ~*which is the largest town of the Sequani*

contendere

=*was hastening* ~*was hastening*

trīdūīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse^{II}

=*and (he) had went forth (on a) three days' journey from its own territories* ~*and had advanced three days' journey from its territories*

I.LXXXVIII.II.

ID NĒ ACCIDERET, MAGNO OPERE SIBI PRÆCAVENDUM
CÆSAR EXISTIMĀBAT.

Id nē accideret^{III}

=*lest it should happen* ~*lest this should happen*

I **ad occupandum Vesontiōnem**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

II **Ariovistum...contendere...prōcessisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **nē accideret**, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UT) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

magno opere sibi^I prævendum [esse]^{II} ^{III}

=that it is <having> to be heeded ~that he ought to take the
with great labor by him greatest precautions

Cæsar exīstimābat

=Cæsar was thought ~Cæsar thought

I.XXXVIII.III.

NAMQUE OMNIUM RĒRUM QUÆ AD BELLUM ŪSUI
ERANT SUMMA ERAT IN EŌ OPPIDŌ FACULTĀS; IDQUE
NĀTŪRĀ LOCĪ SĪC MŪNIĒBĀTUR UT MAGNAM AD
DŪCENDUM BELLUM DARET FACULTĀTEM, PROPTERĒA
QUOD FLŪMĒN DŪBIS UT CIRCĪNŌ CIRCUMDUCTUM
PÆNE TŌTUM OPPIDUM CINGIT; RELIQUUM SPATIUM,
QUOD EST NŌN AMPLIUS PEDUM MILLE SESCĒNTŌRUM,
QUĀ FLUMĒN ĪNTERMITTIT, MŌNS CONTĪNET MAGNĀ
ALTITŪDĪNE, ITA UT RĀDĪCĒS MONTIS EX UTRĀQUE
PARTE RĪPÆ FLŪMĪNIS CONTĪNGANT, HUNC MŪRUS
CIRCUMDATUS ARCEM EFFICIT ET CUM OPPIDŌ
CONIUNGIT.

Namque omnium rĕrum

=for // of all the supplies ~for // of every thing

I DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

II prævēō, -cāvī, -cautus, -ēre (PRÆ + CAVEŌ), to take care, take heed, use precaution, be on one's guard, beware; NEUT., to take care or heed, to use precaution, to be on one's guard, to beware

III FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimābat**. (SEE CHART §196) & §580

quæ ad bellum ūsu^I ^{II} erant

=(the supplies) which were for use <with regards> to war ~which was serviceable for war

summa erat in eō oppidō facultās

=the best facility was in that town ~there was in that town a most ample supply

idque nātūrā^{III} locī sīc^{IV} mūniēbātur^V

=and it was so fortified by the nature of the place ~and so fortified was it by the nature of the ground

ut magnam ad dūcendum^{VI} bellum daret^{VII} facultātem

=that it gave a great facility for <the purpose of> leading war ~as to afford a great facility for protracting the war

proptereā quod flūmen Dūbis^{VIII}

=on account of which because the river Doubs ~inasmuch as the river Doubs

I DAT. SG. OF *ūsus*; DAT. OF SERVICE TO *erant*

II *ūsus*, -*ūs*, M. (AV-), use, practice, employment, exercise, enjoyment

III ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV *sīc*, ADV., Referring to something done or pointed out by the speaker, thus, in this way, as I do, as you see (COLLOQ.); Referring to what precedes, so, thus, in this manner, in such a manner, in the same way or manner, in like manner, likewise—WITH A CLAUSE OF DEG., to such a degree, so, so far

V *mūniō*, -*ivī*, -*itum*, -*ire* (MCENIA), to wall, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect, secure, strengthen

VI *ad dūcendum bellum*, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. §506

VII *ut...daret*, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

VIII *Dubis*, -*is*, M., a river in Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône), now the Douba

ut circinō^{I II} circumductum^{III} pæne tōtum oppidum cingit^{IV}

=as if <having been> encircled by a pair of compasses, it (the river Doubs) nearly encircles the entire town ~almost surrounds the whole town, as though it were traced round it with a pair of compasses

reliquum spatium

=the remaining space ~in the remaining space

quod est nōn amplius pedum mille sescentōrum^V

=which is not more than a thousand (and) six-hundred of feet ~which is not more than 1600 feet

quā^{VI} flumen intermittit

=on which side the river leaves off ~where the river leaves an interval

mōns continet magnā altitūdine^{VII}

=a mountain with great altitude encloses ~a mountain of great height shuts

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **circinus**, -ī, m., A pair of compasses

III **circumdūcō**, -dūxī, -ctus, -ere (CIRCUM + DŪCŌ), to lead around, draw around

IV **cingō**, -xī, -inctus, -ere, to go around, surround, encompass, environ, gird, wreath, crown; Of places, to surround, encircle, invest, enclose

V **pedum mille sescentōrum**, GEN. OF QUALITY.. §345 & THE COMPARATIVE MAY BE FOLLOWED BY QUAM, THAN. WHEN QUAM IS USED, THE TWO THINGS COMPARED ARE PUT IN THE SAME CASE: AFTER THE COMPARATIVES PLUS, MINUS, AMPLIUS, LONGIUS, WITHOUT QUAM, A WORD OF MEASURE OR NUMBER IS OFTEN USED WITH NO CHANGE IN ITS CASE. §407^{III}

VI **quā**, ADV. (ABL. FEM. OF quī), of place, on which side, at which place, in what direction, where, by what way

VII **magnā altitūdine**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. §415

ita ut rādicēs^I montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant^{II}

III

=in such a manner that the roots of (that) mountain reach from either part of the bank of the river ~in such a manner that the roots of that mountain extend to the river's bank on either side

hunc [montem] mūrus circumdatus^{IV} arcem^V efficit^{VI}

=(furthermore), a wall, <having been> placed around (it), makes this [mountain] a fortress ~a wall thrown around it makes a citadel of this [mountain]

et cum oppidō coniungit

=and connects (it) with the town ~and connects it with the town

I **rādix, -icis**, F. (RAD-), a root; radish; TRANS. IN PL. The root, i.e. the lower part of an object, the foot of a hill, mountain, etc.

II **contingō, -tigī, -tāctus, -ere** (COM- + TANGO), to touch, reach, take hold of, seize; To touch, adjoin, border on, reach, extend to

III **ut...contingant**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE RELATIVE CLAUSE OF CHARACTERISTIC WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS A DEVELOPMENT PECULIAR TO LATIN. A RELATIVE CLAUSE IN THE INDICATIVE MERELY STATES SOMETHING AS A FACT WHICH IS TRUE OF THE ANTECEDENT; A CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSE (IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE) DEFINES THE ANTECEDENT AS A PERSON OR THING OF SUCH A CHARACTER THAT THE STATEMENT MADE IS TRUE OF HIM OR IT AND OF ALL OTHERS BELONGING TO THE SAME CLASS. THUS,— NON POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINERE IMPERATOR QUI SE IPSE NON CONTINET (INDICATIVE) MEANS SIMPLY, THAT COMMANDER WHO DOES NOT (AS A FACT) RESTRAIN HIMSELF CANNOT RESTRAIN HIS ARMY; WHEREAS NON POTEST EXERCITUM IS CONTINERE IMPERATOR QUI SE IPSE NON CONTINEAT (SUBJUNCTIVE) WOULD MEAN, THAT COMMANDER WHO IS NOT SUCH A MAN AS TO RESTRAIN HIMSELF, ETC., THAT IS, WHO IS NOT CHARACTERIZED BY SELF-RESTRAINT. §534

IV **circumdō, -dedī, -datus, -are** (CIRCUM + DŌ), to place around, cause to surround, set around

V **arx, arcis**, F. (ARC-), a castle, citadel, fortress, stronghold

VI **efficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere** (EX + FACIO), to make out, work out, bring to pass, bring about, effect, cause, produce, make, form, execute, finish, complete, accomplish

I.LXXXVIII.IV.

HŪC CÆSAR MAGNĪS NOCTURNĪS DIURNĪSQUE
ITĪNERIBUS CONTENDIT, OCCUPĀTŌQUE OPPIDŌ IBI
PRÆSIDIUM COLLOCAT.

hūc^I Cæsar magnīs nocturnīs^{II} diurnīsque^{III} itineribus^{IV} contendit
=to this place, Cæsar hastens ~hither Cæsar hastens by forced
with great marches by night and marches by night and day
by day

occupātōque oppidō^V
=and, with the town <having ~and, after having seized the
been> occupied town

ibi præsidium collocat
=he places together a defence ~stations a garrison there
there

I **hūc**, ADV. (HO- OF *hic*, + -CE), to this place, hither

II **nocturnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (NOX), of night, by night, nocturnal

III **diurnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (DIV-), of the day, by day; Daily, of one day, of each day

IV **magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **occupātōque oppidō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

I.XXXIX

PANIC SEIZES CÆSAR'S ARMY.

I.XXXIX.I.



UM PAUCŌS DIĒS AD VESONTIŌNEM REĪ
FRŪMENTĀRIÆ COMMEĀTŪSQUE CAUSĀ
MORĀTUR, EX PERCONTĀTIŌNE NOSTRŌRŪM
VŌCIBŪSQUE GALLŌRŪM AC MERCĀTŌRŪM,
QUĪ ĪNGENTĪ MAGNITŪDĪNE CORPORŪM GERMĀNŌS,
ĪNCRĒDIBILĪ VIRTŪTE ATQUE EXERCITĀTIŌNE ĪN ARMĪS
ESSE PRÆDICĀBĀNT (SÆPE NUMERŌ SĒSĒ CŪM HIS
CONGRESSŌS NĒ VULTŪM QUIDEM ATQUE ACIEM
OCULŌRŪM DĪCĒBĀNT FERRE POTUISSE), TANTUS
SŪBITŌ TIMOR OMNEM EXERCITŪM OCCUPĀVIT UT
NON MEDIOCRITER OMNIŪ MENTĒS ANIMŌSQUE
PERTŪRBĀRET.

Dum paucōs diēs^I ad Vesontiōnem^{II} rei frūmentāriæ
commeātūsque^{III} causā^{IV} morātur^V

=while he is delaying for a few days at Vesontio, on account of the grain situation and supplies of war ~while he was tarrying a few days at Vesontio, on account of corn and provisions

ex percontātiōne^{VI} nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac
mercātōrum

=from the (persistant) questioning of our men and the speeches of the Gauls and of the traders ~from the inquiries of our men and the reports of the Gauls and traders

quī

=(those men) who ~who

-
- I **paucōs diēs**, ACC. OF TIME. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §423
- II **Vesontiō, -ōnis**, M., chief city of the Sequanians, on the Dubis (Doubs) river, now *Besançon*
- III **rei frūmentāriæ commeātūsque**, GEN. WITH **causā**. PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ, GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF; ERGŌ, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE INSTAR, LIKE; ALSO WITH PRĪDIĒ, THE DAY BEFORE; POSTRĪDIĒ, THE DAY AFTER; TENUS, AS FAR AS. §359II
- IV ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. III. THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ AND GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF, ARE USED WITH A GENITIVE PRECEDING, OR WITH A PRONOUN IN AGREEMENT. §404III
- V **dum...morātur, dum** CLAUSE. DUM, WHILE, REGULARLY TAKES THE PRESENT INDICATIVE TO DENOTE CONTINUED ACTION IN PAST TIME. IN TRANSLATING, THE ENGLISH IMPERFECT MUST GENERALLY BE USED. §556
- VI **percontātiō, -ōnis**, F. (PERCONTOR), a persistent asking, questioning, inquiry

ingentī^I magnitudīne^{II} corporum Germānōs incredibīlī virtūte
atque exercitātiōne^{III} in armīs esse^{IV}

=that the Germans are of huge size of bodies, with incredible valor and practice in arms ~that the Germans were men of huge stature, of incredible valor and practice in arms

prædicābant^V

=they boasted

~asserted

sæpe numerō^{VI} sēsē cum his congressōs

=that (those men,) often in <respect to> a number contended with these men ~that, frequently, they, on encountering them

nē vultum^{VII} quidem atque aciem oculōrum

=not // even (their) countenance, and the sharpness of (their) eyes ~not // even their expression, and the fierceness of their eyes

I ABL. SG. F.

II **māgnitūdō, -inis, F. (MATNUS), greatness, size, bulk, magnitude**

III **ingentī magnitudīne...incredibīlī virtūte atque exercitātiōne,** ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. §415

IV **Germānōs...esse,** INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicābant.** IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **prædicō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PRÆ + DICŌ), to make known by proclamation, announce, publish, proclaim; To make known, announce, proclaim, herald, relate, declare openly

VI The Ablative of Specification (answering the question, in respect to what?) is used with Verbs and Adjectives and the Adverb *sæpe*; as, *cum virtute omnibus præstarent*, since they surpassed all in valor (I.II); *Sueba natioue*, a Sueban by birth (I.LIII); *numero ad duodecim*, about twelve in number, Lit. in number about twelve (I.V); *sæpe numero*, frequently, Lit. often in respect to number (I.LXXXIII)

VII **vultus, -ūs, M.,** an expression of countenance, the countenance, visage, as to features and expression; hence, often to be translated by features, looks, air, mien, expression, aspect

dicēbant

=they said

~said

ferre potuisse^I

=that (they) had // been able to bear

~that they had // been able to bear

tantus subitō^{II} timor omnem exercitum occupāvit

=so great a fear suddenly seized the whole army

~so great a panic suddenly took possession of the whole army

ut non mediocriter^{IIIIV} omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret^{V VI}

=as to, not moderately, disturb the minds and feelings of all men

~as to discompose the minds and hearts of all in no moderate degree

I **sēsē...potuisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicēbant**. §580

II **subitō**, ADV. (SUBITUS), *suddenly, immediately, unexpectedly, at once, off-hand*

III **mediocriter**, ADV. WITH COMP. (MEDIOCRIS), *moderately, tolerably, ordinarily, not very, not remarkably, slightly, somewhat; non mediocriter, in no moderate degree*

IV **mēns, mentis**, F. (MAN-), *the mind, disposition, feeling, character, heart, soul*

V **perturbō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (PER + TURBŌ), *to confuse, disturb, confound, throw into disorder; Fig., to disturb, discompose, embarrass, confound*

VI **ut...perturbāret**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

I.XXXIX.II.

HIC PRIMUM ORTUS EST Ā TRIBŪNĪS MĪLITUM,
PRÆFECTĪS, RELIQUISQUE QUĪ EX URBE AMĪCITIÆ CAUSĀ
CÆSAREM SECŪTĪ NON MAGNUM IN RĒ MĪLITĀRĪ ŪSUM
HABĒBANT; QUŌRUM ALIUS ALIĀ CAUSĀ INLĀTĀ QUAM
SIBI AD PROFICISCENDUM NECESSARIAM ESSE DĪCERET,
PETĒBAT UT EIUS VOLUNTĀTE DISCĒDERE LICĒRET; NON
NULLĪ PUĐŌRE ADDUCTĪ, UT TIMŌRIS SUSPICIŌNEM
VĪTĀRENT, REMANĒBANT.

Hic primum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, prāfectīs^I, reliquisque^{II}

=this (fear) first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, from the prefects, and from the remaining men
~this first arose from the tribunes of the soldiers, the prefects and the rest

quī ex urbe^{III} amīcitiae^{IV} causā^V Cæsarem secūtī non magnum in rē
militārī ūsum habēbant

=(those men) who followed Cæsar out from the city (Rome), from motives of friendship had no great use in military things
~who, having followed Cæsar from the city (Rome) from motives of friendship, had no great experience in military affairs

quōrum alius

=some of these men

~some of them

I **prāfectus, ī**, M. (P. OF PRÆFICIO), an overseer, director, superintendent

II **ā tribūnīs...prāfectīs...reliquis**, ABL. OF SOURCE. §404

III **ex urbe**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

IV GEN. WITH **causā**. §359ii

V ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. III. THE ABLATIVES CAUSĀ AND GRĀTIĀ, FOR THE SAKE OF, ARE USED WITH A GENITIVE PRECEDING, OR WITH A PRONOUN IN AGREEMENT. §404iii

aliā causā inlātā^I

=with one cause <having been> ~alleging one reason, another,
brought forward (e.g. presented) another reason
another, another (with another
cause)

quam

=which ~which

sibi ad proficiscendum^{II} necessariam esse^{III}

=that was necessary for them ~that it was necessary for them
for <purpose of> departing to depart

diceret^{IV}

=(each) said ~said

petēbat

=sought ~requested

ut eius voluntāte^V discēdere licēret^{VI VII}

=that it be allowed to depart by ~that by his consent they might
<means of> his permission be allowed to withdraw

I **aliā causā illātā**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II **ad proficiscendum, ad** WITH ACC. OF THE GERUND EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

III **necessariam esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **diceret**. §580

IV **quam...diceret**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

V ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI IMPER., AS. *it be allowed*

VII **ut...licēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

nōn nūllī pudōre^{I II} adductī

=not no one, <having been> led ~some, influenced by shame
by <means of> shame

ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent^{III}

=<in order> that they might ~to avoid the suspicion of
avoid the suspicion of cowardice cowardice

remanēbant

=were remained ~stayed behind

I.XXXIX.III.

HĪ NEQUE VULTUM FĪNGERE NEQUE INTERDUM
LACRIMĀS TENĒRE POTERĀNT: ABDITĪ IN TABERNĀCULĪS
AUT SUUM FĀTUM QUERĒBANTUR AUT CUM
FAMILIĀRIBUS SUIS COMMŪNE PERĪCULUM
MISERĀBANTUR.

Hī neque vultum fingere^{IV}

=these men (were) neither (able) ~these men were neither able to
to feign (their) countenance alter their countenance

neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant

=nor, sometimes were they able ~nor even sometimes check
to hold back tears their tears

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **pudor, -ōris**, M. (PV-), a shrinking from blame, desire of approval, shame, shamefastness, modesty, decency, propriety

III **ut...vītārent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

IV **fingō, finxi, fictus, -ere** (FIG-), to touch, handle, stroke, touch gently; Of the countenance, to alter, change, put on, feign

abditī in tabernāculīs^I aut suum fātum^{II} querēbantur

=(these men,) <having been> ~but hidden in their tents, either
hidden in (their) tents, either bewailed their fate
were bewailing their own fate

aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur^{III}

=or with their own comrades ~or deplored with their
they were lamenting the general comrades the general danger
danger

I.XXXIX.IV.

VULGŌ TŌTĪS CASTRĪS TESTĀMENTA OBSIGNĀBANTUR.

Vulgō tōtīs castrīs^{IV} testāmenta^V obsignābantur

=testaments were being sealed ~wills were sealed universally
en masse in all the camps throughout the whole camp

I.XXXIX.V.

HŌRŪM VŌCIBŪS AC TIMŌRE PAULĀTIM ETIAM EĪ QUĪ
MAGNUM IN CASTRĪS ŪSUM HABĒBANT, MĪLĪTĒS
CENTURIŌNĒSQUE QUĪQUE EQUITĀTUĪ PRÆERANT,
PERTURBĀBANTUR.

I **tabernāculum, ī, N.** (TABERNA), a tent

II **fātum, -ī, N.,** an utterance, prophetic declaration, oracle, prediction;
That which is ordained, destiny, fate

III **miseror, -ātus, -ārī, DEP.** (MISER), to lament, deplore, commiserate

IV **tōtīs castrīs, ABL.** OF PLACE WHERE. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION, §429

V **testāmentum, -ī, N.** (TESTOR), a last will, testament, will

Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre^I paulātim etiam ei

=*by their voices and fear, little and little, even for him* ~*by the cries and cowardice of these men, gradually, even for him*

quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, milītēs centuriōnēsque^{II}

=*(those men) who had great experience in the camp: (i.e.) the soldiers and centurions* ~*even those who possessed great experience in the camp, both soldiers and centurions*

quīque equitātū^{III} præerant

=*and (those) (the decurions) who presided over the cavalry* ~*and those [the decurions] who were in command of the cavalry*

perturbābantur

=*were perturbed* ~*were disconcerted*

I.XXXIX.VI.

QUĪ SĒ EX HĪS MĪNUS TIMIDŌS EXĪSTIMĀRĪ VOLĒBĀNT,
NŌN SĒ HOSTEM VERĒRĪ, SED ĀNGUSTIĀS ITĪNERIS ET
MAGNĪTUDĪNEM SILVĀRŪM QUÆ ĪNTERCĒDERĒNT
ĪNTER IPSŌS ATQUE ĀRIOVISTŪM, ĀŪT REM
FRŪMENTĀRIAM, UT SATIS COMMODĒ SŪPPORTĀRĪ
POSSET, TIMĒRE DICĒBĀNT.

Quī

=*(those men) who* ~*those men*

I **vōcibus ac timōre**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **centuriō, -ōnis**, M. (CENTURIA), *a commander of a century, captain, centurion* (next in rank to the tribunes of the legion)

III DAT. WITH COMP. V. **præerant**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AQ. ANTE. CON. IN. INTER. OB. POST. PRÆ. PRŌ. SUB. SUPER. AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

sē

=*themselves*

~*themselves*

ex hīs

=*of them*

~*of them*

minus timidōs^{I II}

=*(as) less fearful*

~*as less alarmed*

exīstimārī volēbant

=*wished to be estimated*

~*wished to be considered*

nōn sē hostem verērī^{III IV}

=*that they were not fearing the enemy*

~*that they did not dread the enemy*

sed angustīas itineris et magnitudinem silvārum^V

=*but (were fearing) the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests*

~*but feared the narrowness of the roads and the vastness of the forests*

quāe intercēderent^{VI} inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum

=*which came between themselves and Ariovistus*

~*which lay between them and Ariovistus*

I **timidus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (TEM-), *fearful, afraid, faint-hearted, cowardly, timid*

II **sē...timidōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **exīstimārī**. §580

III **vereor, -itus, -ērī**, DEP. (VEL-), *to reverence, revere, respect, stand in awe; To fear, be afraid, dread, apprehend, shrink*

IV **sē...verērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dīcēbant**. §580

V **silva, -æ**, F. (SER-), *a wood, forest, woodland*

VI **quāe...intercēderent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

aut rem frūmentāriam

=or // the corn supply

~or // else the supplies

ut satis commodē supportārī^I posset^{II}

=(that) (they) feared/ that /the corn supply/ was not able to be brought up readily enough
brought up readily enough

~that // could not be brought up readily enough

timēre^{III}

=/they said/ that (they) feared

~feared

dicēbant

=they said

~said

I.LXXXIX.VII.

NŌN NŪLLĪ ETIAM CÆSARĪ NŪNTIĀBANT, CUM CASTRA
MOVĒRĪ AC SIGNA FERRĪ IUSSISSET, NŌN FORE DICTŌ
AUDIENTĒS MĪLITĒS NEQUE PROPTER TIMŌREM SIGNA
LĀTŪRŌS.

Nōn nūllī etiam Cæsarī nūntiābant

=not no one even had declared to Cæsar
~some even declared to Cæsar

cum

=when

~when

castra movērī

=the camp to be moved

~for the camp to be moved

I **supportō, -āvi, —, -āre** (SUB + PORTŌ), to convey, bring up, bring forward, conduct

II **ut...posset**, NEG. FEAR CLAUSE. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH NE AFFIRMATIVE AND NE NŌN OR UT NEGATIVE. §564

III **angustiās...rem...timēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

ac signa ferri^I

=and to carry the standards ~and the troops to advance
(forward)

iussisset^{II}

=he should have ordered ~he gave orders

nōn fore dictō^{III IV} audientēs^V militēs

=that the soldiers would not ~the soldiers would not obey the
obey the command command

neque propter timōrem signa^{VI} lātūrōs [esse]^{VII}

=nor, on account of fear, would ~nor advance in consequence of
they carry forward the their fear
standards

I **castra movērī ac signa ferri**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iussisset**. §580

II **cum...iussisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **dictum, -ī**, N. (DIC-), *something said, a saying, word, assertion, remark; An order, command*

IV DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **audientēs**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

V **audiō, -ivī** or **-iī, -itus, -ire** (AV-), *to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed; ONLY WITH ACC., BUT ALSO WITH DAT.*

VI DIR. OBJ. OF **lātūrōs [esse]**

VII **fore...militēs...lātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiābant**. §580

I.XL

CÆSAR EMPLOYS A PERSUASIVE ADDRESS.

I.XL.I.



HÆC CUM ANIMADVERTISSET, CONVOCATŌ
CŌNSILIŌ, OMNIUMQUE ORDINUM AD ID
CŌNSILIUM ADHIBITIS CENTURIŌNIBUS,
VEHEMENTER EŌS INCŪSĀVIT: PRIMUM,
QUOD AUT QUAM IN PARTEM AUT QUŌ CŌNSILIŌ
DŪCERENTUR SIBI QUÆRENDUM AUT CŌGITANDUM
PUTARENT.

Hæc cum animadvertisset^I

=when he (Cæsar) had directed
(his) mind to these things

~when Cæsar observed these
things

convocatŏ cōnsiliŏ^{II}

=with council <having been>
called

~having called a council

I **cum animadvertisset, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **cum animadvertisset, cum** CLAUSE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

omniumque ōrdinum^I ad id cōsiliū adhibitīs centuriōnibus^{II}
 =and with the centurions of all ~and summoned to it the
 the companies <having been> centurions of all the companies
 summoned to that council

vehementer^{III} eōs incūsāvit^{IV}
 =he severely accused them ~he severely reprimanded them

primum, quod
 =firstly, because ~particularly, for

aut quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō^V dūcerentur^{VI}
 =either in which part or by ~either in what direction they
 which council they might be led were marching, or with what
 object

I **ōrdō, -inis**, M. (OL-), a row, line, series, order, rank

II **adhibitīs centuriōnibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **vehementer**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (VEHEMENS), eagerly, impetuously, ardently, violently, earnestly, vehemently

IV **incūsō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (IN + CAUSA), to accuse, complain of, find fault with, blame

V ABL. OF MEANS, THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI **quam in partem...quō cōsiliō dūcerentur**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §57

sibi^I quærendum [esse] aut cōgitandum [esse]^{II}

=that it is <having to be> asked ~that they must ask and
and <having to be> considered consider
by them

putārent^{III}

=they supposed ~supposing

I. XL.II.

ARIOVISTUM, SĒ CŌNSULE, CŪPIDISSIMĒ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ
AMĪCITIAM APPETĪSSE: CŪR HUŢC TAM TEMERĒ
QUISQUAM AB OFFICIŌ DISCESSŪRUM IŪDICĀRET?

"ARIOVISTUS ME CŌNSULE ... POPULI ROMĀNI AMICITIAM
ADPETIIT; CŪR HUŢC ... QUISQUAM AB OFFICIO
DISCESSŪRUM IUDICET?"

Ariovistum

=that Ariovistus ~that Ariovistus

sĕ cōnsule^{IV}

=with himself <being> consul ~during his [Cæsar's] consulship
[59 B.C.]

I DAT. OF AGENT. THE DATIVE OF THE AGENT IS USED WITH THE GERUNDIVE TO DENOTE THE PERSON ON WHOM THE NECESSITY RESTS. §374

II **quærendum...cōgitandum**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **putārent**. (SEE CHART §196) & IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

III **quod...putārent, quod** CLAUSE GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540

IV **sĕ cōnsule**, ABL. ABS. §420

cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetisse^{I II}

=had most desirously strove for the friendship of the Roman people ~had most anxiously sought after the friendship of the Roman people

cūr

=why

~why

hunc tam temerē^{III} quisquam ab officiō^{IV V} discessūrum [esse]^{VI}

=anyone // that this man would so heedlessly depart from (his) duty? ~anyone // that he would so rashly depart from his duty?

iūdicāret^{VII}

=why/ should /anyone/ think

~should // judge

-
- I **appetō, -ivī or -iī, itus, -ere** (AD + PETO), TRANS, *to strive for, reach after, grasp at; Fig., to strive after, long for, desire, seek, court*
- II **Ariovistum...appetisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580
- III **temerē**, ADV. (ETY. *in the darkness*), *by chance, by accident, at random, without design, casually, fortuitously, rashly, heedlessly, thoughtlessly, inconsiderately, indiscreetly*
- IV **ab officiō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- V **officiū, -i**, N. (OPUS + FAC-), *a service, kindness, favor, courtesy; In gen., an obligatory service, an obligation, duty, function, part, office*
- VI **hunc...discessūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iūdicārent**. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583
- VII **cūr...iūdicārent** DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN QUESTIONS IMPLYING (1) DOUBT, INDIGNATION, OR (2) AN IMPOSSIBILITY OF THE THING'S BEING DONE. THE NEGATIVE IS NON. §444 & A DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (§444) IN THE DIRECT DISCOURSE IS ALWAYS RETAINED IN THE INDIRECT. §587

I.XL.III.

SIBI QUIDEM PERSUĀDĒRĪ COGNITĪS SUĪS POSTULĀTĪS
ATQUE ÆQUITĀTE CONDICIŌNUM PERSPECTĀ EŪM
NEQUE SUAM NEQUE POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ GRĀTIAM
REPUDIĀTŪRUM.

"MIHI QUIDEM PERSUADETUR, COGNITIS MEIS
POSTULATIS ... EŪM NEQUE MEAM NEQUE POPULI
ROMANI GRATIAM REPUDIATURUM."

Sibi quidem persuādērī^I

=that he, for his part, was ~he, for his part, was persuaded
persuaded

cognitīs suīs postulātīs^{II} atque æquitāte^{III} condiōnum perspectā^{IV}
V

=with his own demands <having ~that, when his demands were
been> known and with the known and the fairness of the
fairness of the conditions terms considered
<having been> looked into

I INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvīt.** §580

II **cognitīs suīs postulātīs,** ABL. ABS. §420

III **æquitās, -ātis,** F. (ÆQUUS), *uniformity, evenness; with animi, calmness, repose, equability, equanimity; Equity, fairness, humanity, kindness*

IV **æquitāte...perspectā,** ABL. ABS. §420

V **perspiciō, -spēxī, -spectus, -ere** (SPEC-), *to look through, look into, look at, see through; TRANSF., to look closely at, to view, examine, inspect*

eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiām repudiātūrum
[esse]! ^{II}

=he would reject neither his own ~he would reject neither his nor
nor the favor of the Roman the Roman people's favor
people

I.XL.IV.

QUOD SĪ FURŌRE ATQUE ĀMENTIĀ IMPULSUS BELLUM
INTULISSET, QUID TANDEM VERĒRENTUR? AUT CŪR DĒ
SUĀ VIRTŪTE AUT DĒ IPSIUS DĪLIGĒNTIĀ DĒSPĒRĀRENT?

"QUOD SI FURORE ... IMPULSUS BELLUM INTULERIT, QUID
TANDEM VEREAMĪNI? AUT CŪR DE VESTRA VIRTUTE
AUT DE MEA DILIGĒNTIA DESPERETIS?"

Quod sī furōre^{III} atque āmentīā^{IV} v impulsus^{VI} bellum intulisset^{VII}

=but, if he, <having been> driven ~but even if, driven on by rage
by rage or madness, should have and madness, he should make
brought on war war upon them

I *eum...repudiātūrum*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *persuādērī*. §580

II *repudiō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre* (REPUDIUM), *to cast off, put away, reject*

III *furor, -ōris*, M. (FURO), *a raving, rage, madness, fury, passion*

IV *āmentia, -æ*, F. (AMENS), *want of reason, madness, senselessness*

V *furōre atque āmentīā*, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VI *impellō, -pulī, -pulsus, -ere* (in + pellō), *To strike against, push, drive, smite, strike, reach; Trop. To move to a thing; to impel, incite, urge; Esp., to instigate, stimulate, persuade—CONSTR. USU. WITH aliquem, in OR ad aliquid AND ut*

VII *si...intulisset*, FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

quid tandem verērentur^I

=*what, after so long, should they* ~*what, pray, were they afraid of?*
fear?

aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā^{II} dēspērārent^{III}

=*(or) why should they despair* ~*or why should they despair*
either from their own valour *either of their own valor or of*
(i.e. the camp followers) or his *his zeal?*
own (Cæsar's) diligence?

I.XL.V.

FACTUM EIUS HOSTIS PERICULUM PATRUM NOSTRORUM
MEMORIA, CIMBRIS ET TEUTONIS A C. MARIO PULSIS,
CUM NON MINOREM LAUDEM EXERCITUS QUAM IPSE
IMPERATOR MERITUS VIDEBATUR; FACTUM ETIAM
NUPER IN ITALIA SERVILI TUMULTU, QUOS TAMEN
ALIQUID USUS AC DISCIPLINA QUAE A NOBIS
ACCÉPISSENT SUBLEVARENT.

"FACTUM (EST) EIUS HOSTIS PERICULUM ... ; FACTUM (EST)
ETIAM NUPER IN ITALIA SERVILI TUMULTU, QUOS
TAMEN ALIQUID USUS AC DISCIPLINE QUAM A NOBIS
ACCEPERANT SUBLEVABANT."

I **quid...verērentur**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. §444 & §587

II **dīligentia, -æ**, F. (DILIGENS), *attentiveness, earnestness, diligence, industry, assiduity, care, faithfulness*

III **cūr...dēspērārent**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. §444 & §587

Factum [esse]^I eius hostis periculum^{II} patrum nostrorum memoria^{III}

=a trial [was] made of this enemy in memory of our fathers ~of that enemy a trial had been made within our fathers' recollection

Cimbrīs^{IV} et Teutonīs^V ā C[aiō] Mariō^{VI} ^{VII} pulsīs^{VIII}

=with the Cimbri and the Teutones <having been> repulsed by C[aius] Marius ~when, on the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutones by Caius Marius

cum non minōrem laudem^{IX} exercitus quam ipse imperātor^X meritus^{XI} [esse] vidēbātur^{XII}

=the army was looked upon that it had merited no less praise than the commander himself ~the army was regarded as having deserved no less praise than their commander himself

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II **factum...periculum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

III ABL. OF TIME WITHIN WHICH. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE ABLATIVE OF TIME WITHIN WHICH SOMETIMES TAKES IN, AND THE ACCUSATIVE OF TIME HOW LONG PER, FOR GREATER PRECISION. §424

IV **Cimbrī, -ōrum**, M. PL., *Cimbrians, Cimbri*, a Germanic people that joined with the Teutones in the invasion of Gaul

V **Teutonī, -um**, M. PL., *Teutons, Teutoni*

VI **ā C. Mariō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

VII **Marius, -i**, M., a Roman gentile name—Esp. Gaius Marius, the opponent of Sulla and the champion of the popular against the aristocratic party. He conquered the Cimbri and the Teutones (B.C. 101) and freed Rome from the fear of a Northern invasion

VIII **Cimbrīs et Teutonīs...pulsīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

IX **laus, laudis**, F. (CLV-), *praise, commendation, glory, fame, renown, esteem*

X **imperātor, -ōris**, M. (IMPERO), *a commander-in-chief, general*

XI PPP. OF *mereor*

XII **cum...vidēbātur**, *cum* CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM, WHEN, AND SOME PAST TENSE OF THE INDICATIVE DATES OR DEFINES THE TIME AT WHICH THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB OCCURRED. §545

factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū^I

=(it,) made recently, too, in Italy,
by a tumult of the slaves

~it had been made lately, too, in
Italy, during the rebellion of the
slaves

quōs tamen aliquid^{II} ūsus ac disciplīna^{III}

=(those slaves) whom, however,
the experience and training // in
some way

~whom, however, the experience
and training // somewhat

quæ ā nobīs accēpissent^{IV}

=/the experience and training/
which they had received from us

~which they had received from
us

sublevārent^{V VI}

=assisted /in some way/

~assisted

I **tumultus, -ūs**, an uproar, bustle, commotion, disturbance, disorder, tumult, panic; A national peril, social disturbance, general alarm, civil war, insurrection, rebellion

II **ālīqui**, ADV. (PROP. ABL. = *aliquo modo*), in some way, somehow; THE FORMS *aliqua*, NEUT. PL., AND *aliquam*, ACC., AND *aliquā*, ABL., USED ADVERBIALY, MAY ALSO BE REFERRED TO THE ADJ. *ālī-qui, ālīqua, ālīquod*; **aliquamdiū** (= *aliquam + diū*), ADV., somewhat long, for a while

III **disciplīna, -æ**, F. (DISCIPULUS), instruction, tuition, teaching, training, education; Meton. (*causa pro effectu*), all that is taught in the way of instruction, whether with reference to single circumstances of life, or to science, art, morals, politics, etc., learning, knowledge, science, discipline

IV **quæ...accēpissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V **sublevō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SUB + LEVO), to lift from beneath, raise up, hold up, support; To sustain, support, assist, encourage, console, relieve

VI **quōs...sublevārent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

I.XL.VI.

EX QUŌ IUDICĀRĪ POSSE QUANTUM HABĒRET IN SĒ
BONĪ CŌNSTANTIA; PROPTEREĀ QUOD QUŌS
ALIQUAMDIŪ ÎNERMĒS SÎNE CAUSĀ TIMUISSĒNT HŌS
POSTEĀ ARMĀTŌS AC VICTŌRĒS SUPERĀSSĒNT.

"EX QUŌ IUDICARI POTEST QUANTUM HABEAT IN SE
BONI CŌNSTANTIA, PROPTEREA QUOD, QUOS ... ÎNERMĪS
SÎNE CAUSA TIMUISTIS (TIMUERITIS), HOS POSTEA
ARMATOS SUPERAVISTIS."

Ex quō iudicārī posse^I

=out from which it is able to be judged ~from which a judgment might be formed

quantum habēret^{II} in sē bonī cōstantia^{III} IV

=how much of good (that) constancy might have in itself ~of the advantages which resolution carries with it

proptereā quod

=on that account because ~because

quōs aliquamdiū inermēs^V sine causā timuissent^{VI}

=(those men) whom, (when) unarmed, they had feared for some time without cause ~those whom for some time they had groundlessly dreaded when unarmed

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II **quantum habēret**, INDIR. QUESTION, §573

III NOM. SG., SUBJ. OF **habēret**

IV **cōstantia**, -æ, F. (CONSTANS), *steadiness, firmness, constancy, perseverance*

V **inermis**, e, ADJ. (IN + ARMA), *unarmed, without weapons, defenceless*

VI **quōs...timuissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

hōs postea armātōs^I ac victōrēs superāssent^{II}

=*afterward, <having been> ~they had afterward overcome, armed and victorious, they (the Romans) had surmounted when well armed and flushed with success*

I. XL. VII.

DĒNIQUE HŌS ESSE EŌSDEM QUIBUSCUM SÆPE NÚMERŌ HELVĒTIŪ CONGRESSŪ NŌN SŌLUM IN SUIS SED ETIAM IN ILLŌRUM FĪNIBUS PLĒRUMQUE SUPERĀRINT, QUI TAMĒN PARĒS ESSE NOSTRŌ EXERCITŪI NŌN POTUERINT.

"DĒNIQUE HI SUNT IDEM GERMANI QUIBUSCUM SÆPENÚMERO HELVETII CONGRESSI, NŌN SOLUM IN SUIS SED ETIAM IN ILLORUM FĪNIBUS, PLERÚMQUE SUPĒAVERUNT; QUI TAMĒN PARES ESSE NOSTRO EXERCITŪI NŌN POTUERUNT."

Dēnique^{III} hōs esse^{IV} eōsdem

=*at length, that these men are ~to sum up, that these were the same men*

quibuscum sæpe numerō Helvētīi congressī nōn solum in suis

=*(the same men) with whom the ~whom the Helvetii, in frequent Helvetii, often in <respect to> a strifes, not only in their own number, <having> come territories together, not only in their own (territories)*

I **armō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (ARMA), to furnish with weapons, arm, equip

II **protēreā quod...superāssent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **dēnique**, ADV., and thenceforward, and thereafter, at last, at length, finally, lastly, only, not until; In a summary or climax, in a word, in short, in fact, briefly, to sum up, in fine, even, I may say

IV **hōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

sed etiam in illōrum finibus plērumque^I superārint^{II}

=but also in their territories (the Germans) and had mostly have generally vanquished overcome (them)

quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī^{III} nōn potuerint^{IV}

=(and) (those men) whom, ~and yet can not have been a nonetheless, are not able to be match for our army equals to our army

I.XL.VIII.

SĪ QUŌS ADVERSUM PRĒLIUM ET FUGA GALLŌRUM
COMMOVĒRET, HŌS, SĪ QUĀERERĒNT, REPERĪRE POSSE
DIŪTURNITĀTE BELLĪ DĒFATĪGĀTĪS GALLĪS ARIOVISTUM,
CUM MULTŌS MĒNSĒS CASTRĪS SĒ AC PALŪDIBUS
TĒNUISSET NEQUE SUĪ POTESTĀTEM FĒCISSET,
DĒSPĒRĀNTĒS IAM DE PUGNĀ ET DISPERSŌS SUBITŌ
ADORTUM MAGIS RATIONĒ ET CŌNSILIŌ QUAM
VIRTŪTE VĪCISSE.

"SI QUOS ADVERSUM PRĒLIUM ... COMMOVET, HI, SI
QUĀERĒNT (QUĀERĀNT), REPERIRE POSSUNT ...
ARIOVISTUM ... DISPERSOS SUBITO ADORTUM, MAGIS
RATIONĒ ... QUAM VIRTŪTE VICISSE."

I **plērus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PLE-), *very many, a very great part, most*; NEUT. ADV., *plerum* (like *plerumque*, v. *plerusque*), *for the most part, mostly, commonly*

II **quibuscum...superārint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **nostrō exercituī**, DAT. WITH ADJ. **parēs**. VERBS OF NAMING, CHOOSING, APPOINTING, MAKING, ESTEEMING, SHOWING, AND THE LIKE, MAY TAKE A PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE ALONG WITH THE DIRECT OBJECT. §383

IV **quī...potuerint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIRECT DISC. §583

Sī quōs adversum^I prœlium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret^{II III}

=if an unfavorable battle and the flight of the Gauls should stir up anyone *~if the unsuccessful battle and flight of the Gauls disquieted any*

hōs

=these men

~these

sī quærerent^{IV}

=if they should inquire

~if they made inquiries

reperīre posse^V

=(they) would be able to discover *~might discover*

diūturnitāte^{VI VII} bellī

=that // because of a long duration of war *~by the long duration of the war*

dēfatīgātīs^{VIII} Gallīs^{IX}

=with the Gauls <having been> wearied out

~when the Gauls had been tired out

I **adversum, -ī**, N., the opposite direction; Fig., opposed, contrary, hostile, adverse, unfavorable, unpropitious

II **sī...commovēret**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

III **commoveō, -mōvī, -mōtus, -ēre** (COM + MOVEO), To put in violent motion, move, shake, stir; To throw into disorder, physical or mental; to unbalance, unsettle, shake, disturb—WITH ABL. OR ABSOL.

IV **sī quærerent**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **hōs...posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §589

VI ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

VII **diūturnitās, -ātis**, F. (DIUTURNUS), length of time, long duration, durability

VIII **dēfatīgō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DE + FATIGO), to weary out, tire, fatigue, exhaust

IX **dēfatīgātīs Gallīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

Ariovistum

=Ariovistus

~Ariovistus

cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus^I tenuisset

=after he had for many months held himself in camp and in marshes
 ~after he had many months kept himself in his camp and in the marshes

neque suī potestātem fēcisset^{II}

=and had made no opportunity of himself
 ~and had given no opportunity of fighting with one

dēspērāntēs iam de pugnā^{III} et [eōs] dispersōs^{IV} subitō adortum^V

=he (Ariovistus) suddenly attacked the despairing (Gauls) <by reason> of the battle at this time and [those men] <having> scattered
 ~fell suddenly upon them, by this time despairing of a battle and scattered in all directions

magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse^{VI VII}

=and (he) (Ariovistus) had conquered more because of stratagem and cunning than because of valor
 ~and was victorious more through stratagem and cunning than valor

I **palūs, -ūdis**, F. a swamp, marsh, morass, bog, fen, pool

II **cum...tenuisset...fēcisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III **pūgna, -æ**, F. (PAC-), a hand-to-hand fight, fight at close quarters, battle, combat, action, engagement

IV **dispergo, -si, -sum, -ere** (DI + SPERGO), to scatter on all sides, to scatter about, disperse

V PERF. DEP. PART. MODIFYING **Ariovistum**

VI PERF. ACT. INF OF **vincō**

VII **Ariovistum...adortum...vīcisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **reperire**. §580

I.XL.IX.

CUI RATIONĪ CONTRĀ HOMĪNĒS BARBARŌS ATQUE
IMPERĪTŌS LOCUS FUISSET, HAC NĒ IPSUM QUIDEM
SPĒRĀRE NOSTRŌS EXERCITŪS CAPI POSSE.

"CUI RATIONI CONTRA HOMĪNES BARBAROS ... LOCUS
FUIT, HAC NĒ IPSE QUIDEM SPERAT NOSTROS EXERCITUS
CAPI POSSE."

Cui rationī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs^I locus
fuisset

=(but though) for which strategy there might have been room
against barbaric and unskilled men ~but though there had been
room for such stratagem against
savage and unskilled men

hāc^{II} nē [Ariovistus] ipsum quidem spērāre^{III}

=not even (by this strategy) [Ariovistus] himself was expecting
~not even [Ariovistus] himself
expected

nostrōs exercitūs capī posse^{IV}

=that our armies were able to be captured ~that thereby our armies could
be entrapped

I **imperītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (IN + PERĪTUS), *inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with, unskilled, ignorant*

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III **ipsum...spērāre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

IV **nostrōs exercitūs...posse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **spērāre**. §580

I.XL.X.

QUĪ SUUM TIMŌREM IN REĪ FRŪMENTĀRIÆ
SIMULĀTIŌNEM ANĠUSTIĀSQUE ITĪNERIS CŌNFERRENT,
FACERE ARROGANter, CUM AUT DĒ OFFICIŌ
IMPERĀTŌRIS DĒSPĒRĀRE AUT PRÆSCRĪBERE
VIDĒRENTUR.

"QUI SUUM TIMOREM IN REI FRUMENTARIAE
SIMULATIONEM ... CONFERUNT FACIUNT ADROGANter,
CUM ... DE OFFICIO IMPERATORIS DESPERARE ...
VIDEANTUR (VIDENTUR)."

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriæ simulātiōnem^I
angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent^{II}

=that (those men) who were attributing their own fear in a
pretense about the (deficiency of) supplies and the narrowness
of the path ~that those who ascribed their
fear to a pretense about the [deficiency of] supplies and the
narrowness of the roads

facere^{III} arroganter^{IV}

=are arrogantly doing

~acted presumptuously

I **simulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (SIMULO), *an assumption, false show, feigning, shamming, pretence, feint, insincerity, deceit, hypocrisy, simulation*

II **quī...cōnferrent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

III INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

IV **arrōgo, -āvi, -ātum, -āre** (AR + ROGO), *To ask or inquire of one, to question*; Adv., **arrōganter**, *with assumption, arrogantly, haughtily, proudly, insolently*

cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut præscribere
vidērentur^I

=as they were seeming either to distrust concerning the office of (their) generals, or to dictate (in place of the general) ~as they seemed either to distrust their general's discharge of his duty, or to dictate to him

I.XL.XI.

HÆC SIBI ESSE CURÆ; FRUMENTUM SĒQUANŌS, LEUCŌS,
LĪNGONĒS SUMMĪNISTRĀRE, IAMQUE ESSE IN AGRIS
FRUMENTA MĀTŪRA; DĒ ITĪNERE IPSŌS BREVI TEMPORE
IŪDICĀTŪRŌS.

"HÆC MIHI SUNT CURÆ; FRUMENTUM SEQUANI, ...
SUBMĪNISTRANT, IAMQUE SUNT ... FRUMENTA MATŪRA;
DE ITĪNERE (VOS) IPSI ... IŪDICABITIS."

Hæc sibi esse^{II} curæ^{III IV}

=that these things are a <source of> concern to him (Cæsar) ~that these things were his concern

I **cum...vidērentur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **hæc...esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **cūra, -æ**, F. (CAV-), trouble, care, attention, pains, industry, diligence, exertion; Anxiety, solicitude, concern, disquiet, trouble, grief, sorrow

IV **sibi...cūræ**, DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

frumentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs^I, Lingonēs sumministrāre^{II} ^{III}

=that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn ~that the Sequani, the Leuci, and the Lingones were to furnish the corn

iamque esse^{IV} in agris frumenta mātūra

=and that the corn was already ripe in the fields ~and that it was already ripe in the fields

dē itinere ipsōs brevī^V tempore^{VI} iūdicātūrōs [esse]^{VII}

=that (those men) would, in a brief time, judge about the path (for) themselves ~that as to the road they would soon be able to judge for themselves

I. XL. XII.

QUOD NŌN FORE DICTŌ AUDIENTĒS NEQUE SIGNA LĀTŪRĪ DĪCANTUR, NIHIL SĒ EĀ RĒ COMMOVĒRĪ; SCĪRE ENIM, QUIBŪSCUMQUE EXERCITŪS DICTŌ AUDIĒNS NŌN FUERIT, AUT MALE RĒ GESTĀ FORTŪNAM DĒFŪISSE AUT ALIQUŌ FACINORE COMPERTŌ AVĀRITIAM ESSE CONVICTAM.

I **Leuci, -ōrum**, M. PL., a Gallic tribe on the Moselle

II **sumministrō, -āvī, -trātum, -āre**, give; furnish; afford; supply

III **frumentum...sumministrāre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV INDI DISC. §580

V **brevis, -e**, adj. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (BREG-), In space and time, little, of small extent

VI **brevī tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

VII **ipsōs...iūdicātūrōs**, INDIR. DISC. §580

"QUOD NON FORE DICTO AUDIENTES ... DICIMINI (MORE PROBABLY DICUNTUR MILITES), NIHIL (EGO) EA RE COMMOVEOR; SCIO ENIM, QUIBUSCUMQUE EXERCITUS DICTO AUDIENS NON FUERIT, ... AVARITIAM ESSE CONVICTAM."

Quod

=as

~as to

nōn fore^I dictō^{II} ^{III} audientēs

=that the (soldiers) would not be listening to the command

~that the soldiers would not be obedient to command

neque signa^{IV} lātūrī [esse]^V ^{VI}

=nor would they bear the standards

~or advance

dīcantur^{VII}

=(these things) were being said

~its being reported

nihil^{VIII} sē eā rē^{IX} commovērī^X

=that he was moved nothing (not at all) by this thing

~he was not at all disturbed at that

I INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dīcantur**. §580

II **audiō**, **-īvi** or **-īi**, **-ītus**, **-īre** (AV-), to hear; To hear, to listen to, to obey, heed—ONLY WITH ACC., BUT ALSO WITH DAT.

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **audientēs**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. §367

IV PL. ACC., DIR. OBJ. OF **lātūrī [esse]**

V INDIR. DISC. §580

VI **lātūrī [esse]**, NOM. PL. FUT. ACT. INF. OF **ferō**

VII **quod...dīcantur**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

scīre^I [se]^{II} enim

=for [he] knew

~for he knew

quibuscumque exercitus dictō^{III} audiēns nōn fuerit^{IV}

=to whomsoever the army has
not been listening to command

~that in the case of all those
whose army had not been
obedient to command

aut

=either

~either

male rē gestā^{V VI} fortūnam dēfuisse^{VII VIII}

=fortune had failed (them)
because of a thing done badly
(military operation)

~upon some mismanagement of
an affair, fortune had deserted
them

VIII Extent is expressed by the Accusative of *nihil*, and also by *partem* (Accusative of *pars*) used indefinitely, a construction often called Adverbial Accusative; as, *nihil Cæsaris imperium expectabant*, were not waiting at all for Cæsaris orders, Lit. to extent of nothing, to no extent (II.XX); *maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt*, they live mostly on milk and meat, where *partem* is used indefinitely, not being limited to a definite idea, as it is when a Genitive is dependent upon it (IV.I)

IX **eā rē**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

X **sē...commovērī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **incūsāvit**. §580

I INDIR. DISC. §580

II The Subject Accusative in Indirect Discourse is sometimes omitted when it is easily understood from the Context, especially when it refers to the same person as the Subject of the Verb on which the Indirect Discourse depends; as, *scire*, for *se scire*, that he knew (I.XLI); *prohibiturum ostendit*, for *se prohibiturum esse ostendit* (Historical Present), he showed that he would prevent them (I.VIII)

III DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **audiēns**. §367

IV **quibuscumque...fuerit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V PPP. OF *gerō*

VI **rē gestā**, ABL. ABS. §420

VII **dēsum**, -fui, -esse (DE + SUM), to be away, be absent, fail, be wanting, be missing; To fail, be wanting, abandon, desert, neglect

VIII **fortūnam dēfuisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **scīre**. §580

aut

=or

~or

aliquō facinore^I compertō^{II}=with some deed <having been>
found out~that upon some crime being
discoveredavāritiam^{III} esse^{IV} convictam^V=greed had been exposed
(against them)~covetousness had been clearly
proved [against them]

I.XL.XIII.

SUAM INNOCENTIAM PERPETUĀ VITĀ, FĒLĪCITĀTEM
HELVĒTIŌRŪM BELLŌ ESSE PERSPECTAM."MEA INNOCENTIA PERPETUA VITA, FELICITAS ... BELLO
EST PERSPECTA."

I **facinus, -oris**, N. (FAC-), a deed, act, action, achievement; A bad deed, misdeed, outrage, villainy, crime

II **aliquō facinore compertō**, ABL., ABS. §420

III **avāritia, -æ**, F. (AVARUS), inordinate desire, greed, avarice, covetousness

IV **avāritiam esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **convincō, -vīcī, -vīctus, -ere** (CON + VINCŌ), to overcome, convict, refute, expose; To prove incontestably, show clearly, demonstrate, expose

Suam innocentiam^I perpetuā vitā^{II}, felicitatem^{III} Helvētiōrum bellō esse^{IV} perspectam

=his own innocence, in (his) ~his integrity had been seen
whole life, (and) (his) good throughout his whole life, his
fortune was seen through in the good fortune in the war with the
war of (with) the Helveti Helvetii

I.XL.XIV.

ITAQUE SĒ QUOD IN LONGIŌREM DIEM COLLĀTŪRUS
FUISSET REPRĀSENTĀTŪRUM ET PROXIMA NOCTE DE
QUĀRTĀ VIGILIĀ CASTRA MŌTŪRUM, UT QUAM PRĪMUM
İNTELLEGERE POSSET UTRUM APUD EŌS PŪDOR ATQUE
OFFICIUM AN TIMOR PLŪS VALĒRET.

"ITAQUE (EGO) QUOD ... CONLATŪRUS FUI
REPRĀSENTABO, ET ... CASTRA MOVEBO, UT ...
İNTELLEGERE POSSIM UTRUM APUD VOS PŪDOR ... AN
TIMOR PLŪS VALEAT."

Itaque sē

=thus, that he himself

~that he, therefore

quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset^V

=(the plan) what he would have
deferred into a far off day

~what he had intended to put off
till a more distant day

I **innocentia, -æ, f.** (IN + NOCENTIA), *blamelessness, innocence*

II **perpetuā vitā, ABL. OF TIME.** SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING:
DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424II

III **fēlicitās, -ātis, f.** (FELIX), *fertility, happiness, felicity, good-fortune, luck; Person., Good Fortune*

IV **fēlicitātem...esse, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON incūsāvit. §580**

V **quod...collātūrus fuisset, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583**

repræsentâtûrum [esse]^I

=*(he) would accomplish ~would instantly set about instantly*

et proxima nocte^{II} de quârtâ vigiliâ castra môtûrum [esse]^{III IV}

=*and (he,) on the next night ~and would break up his camp during the forth watching, the next night, in the fourth would move (his) camp watch*

ut quam primum intellegere posset^V utrum apud eôs pudor atque officium an timor plûs valeret^{VI VII}

=*<in order> that, how first he ~so that, as soon as possible, he might be able to know, whether, might ascertain, whether a with these men, honor and duty, sense of honor and duty, or or (whether) fear, would have whether fear had more influence more strength with them*

I. XL. XV.

QUOD SĪ PRÆTEREĀ NĒMŌ SEQUĀTUR, TAMEN SĒ CUM SOLĀ DECIMĀ LEGIŌNE ITŪRUM, DĒ QUĀ NŌN DUBITET, SIBIQUE EAM PRÆTŌRIAM COHORTEM FUTŪRAM.

I **repræsentō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (RE + PRÆSENTŌ), *to make present, set in view, show, exhibit, display, manifest, represent, depict; To make present, perform immediately, realize, do now, accomplish instantly, hasten*

II **proximā nocte**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

III **sē...repræsentâtûrum...môtûrum**, INDIC. DISC. §580

IV PPP. OF *moveō*

V **ut + posset** = *so that*, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UT) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

VI **valeō, -uī, -itûrus, -ēre** (VAL-), *to be strong, be vigorous, have strength, be able; To have power, be valid, be effective, have influence, avail, prevail, be strong, succeed*

VII **utrum...valeret**, INDIC. QUESTION. §573

"QUOD SI PRÆTEREA NEMO SEQUETUR, TAMEN (EGO) CUM SOLA DECIMA LEGIONE IBO, DE QUÀ NON DUBITO, MIHIQUE EA PRÆTORIA COHORS ERIT."

Quod sī prætereā nēmō sequātur^I

=which, if beyond this, no one should follow ~if however, no one else should follow

tamen sē cum solā decimā legiōne itūrum [esse]^{II}

=nevertheless, he would go with only the tenth legion ~yet he would go with only the tenth legion

dē quā nōn dubitet^{III}

=concerning which (legion) he did not doubt ~of which he had full confidence

sibique eam [legiōnem] prætōriam^{IV} cohortem^V futūram [esse]^{VI}

=and that [legion] would be a prætorian cohort for him ~and it should be his prætorian cohort

I.XL.XVI.

HUIC LEGIŌNĪ CÆSAR ET ÎNDULSERAT PRÆCIPUË ET PROPTER VIRTÛTEM CŌNFIDĒBAT MAXIMĒ.

I **sī...sequātur**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II **sē...itūrum [esse]**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **dē quā...dubitet**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **prætōrius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRÆTOR), of the prætor, of prætors, prætorian; Of or belonging to a general—"prætoria cohors," the cohort or bodyguard attached to every general, a prætorian cohort (I.XL.XV)

V **cohors, -rtis**, F. (COM- + HER-), Lit., the multitude enclosed, fenced in; hence, IN MILIT. LANG., a company of soldiers, a division of an army, a cohort, the tenth part of a legion, comprising three manipuli or six centuriæ (ALWAYS WRITTEN cohors); prætoria, the prætorian or bodyguard of the general

VI **eam...futūram**, INDIR. DISC. §580

Huic legiōnī^I Cæsar et indulserat^{II} præcipuē^{III}

=to this legion, Cæsar, both, had ~this legion Cæsar had both
been chiefly indulgent greatly favored

et propter virtutem cōfidēbat maximē

=and, on account of (this ~and in it, on account of its
legion's) valor, he trusted in the valor, placed the greatest
highest degree confidence

I **huic legiōnī**, DAT. WITH COMP. V. **indulserat & cōfidēbat**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRO, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **indulgeō, -ulsi, -ultus, -ēre** (IN + DULGEŌ), *to be complaisant, be kind, be tender, exercise forbearance, incline, yield, indulge, concede, grant, allow*

III **præcipuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PRÆ + CAP-), *taken before others, particular, peculiar, especial*; Hence, ADV., **præcipuē**, *chiefly, principally, eminently*

I.XLI



THE ARMY REINVIGORATED, CÆSAR ADVANCES.



I.XLII.



AC ORATIONE HABITA, MIRUM IN MODUM
CONVERSÆ SUNT OMNIUM MENTĒS,
SUMMAQUE ALACRITAS ET CUPIDITAS BELLĪ
GERENDI INNATA EST, PRINCEPSQUE DECIMA
LEGIŌ PER TRIBUNŌS MILITUM EĪ GRATIAS EGIT QUOD
DE SĒ OPTIMUM IUDICIUM FECISSET, SEQUE ESSE AD
BELLUM GERENDUM PARATISSIMAM CONFIRMAVIT.

Hāc oratione habitā¹

=with this speech <having been> ~upon the delivery of this speech
held

mīrum in modum conversæ sunt omnium mentēs

=the minds of all men were ~the minds of all were changed
changed in an astonishing in a surprising manner
manner

I ***hāc oratione habitā***, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī^I innāta est^{II}

=and the highest alacrity and ~and the highest ardor and
passion of waging war was eagerness for prosecuting the
borne war were arisen in

prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit

=and first, the tenth legion, ~and the tenth legion was the
through the tribunes of the first to return thanks to him,
soldiers gave thanks to him through their military tribunes

quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset^{III}

=because he had made an ~for his having expressed this
optimal judgement about those most favorable opinion of them
men (the 10th legion)

sēque esse^{IV} ad bellum gerendum^V parātissimam^{VI}

=and // that they were very ~and // that they were quite
prepared for <the purpose of> ready to wage war
waging war

I **bellī gerendī**, OBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

II **innāscor, -nātus, -ī**, DEP. (IN + NĀSCOR), to be born in, grow upon, spring up in; Fig., to arise in, originate in, be produced in

III **quod...fēcisset, quod** CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH THE REASON GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. NOTE 1. QUOD INTRODUCES EITHER A FACT OR A STATEMENT, AND ACCORDINGLY TAKES EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUIA REGULARLY INTRODUCES A FACT; HENCE IT RARELY TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. QUONIAM, INASMUCH AS, SINCE, WHEN NOW, NOW THAT, HAS REFERENCE TO MOTIVES, EXCUSES, JUSTIFICATIONS, AND THE LIKE AND TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §540

IV **sēque esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **cōfirmāvit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

V **ad bellum gerendum**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

VI NOUN, SG. FEM. ACC. SUPERL

cōfirmāvit

=he confirmed

~assured

I.XLI.II.

DEINDE RELIQUÆ LEGIŌNĒS CŪM TRIBŪNĪS MĪLITUM ET
PRĪMŌRUM ŌRDĪNUM CENTURIŌNIBUS ĒGĒRUNT UTĪ
CÆSARĪ SATISFACERĒNT: SĒ NEC UMQUAM DUBITASSE
NEQUE TIMUISSE NEQUE DĒ SUMMĀ BELLĪ SUUM
IŪDICĪUM SED IMPERĀTŌRIS ESSE EXĪSTIMĀVISSE.

Deinde reliquæ legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum
ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt

=thereafter, the remaining
legions with the tribunes of the
soldiers and (with) centurions of
the principal orders pursued

~then, the other legions
endeavored, through their
military tribunes and the
centurions of the principal
companies

utī Cæsarī satisfacerent¹

=to make satisfaction for Cæsar

~to apologize to Cæsar

sē nec umquam dubitā[vi]sse

=(saying) that they had never
either doubted

~[saying] that they had never
either doubted

neque timuisse

=nor had (they) feared

~or feared

neque

=nor

~or

I **utī...satisfecerent**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

dē summā bellī suum iūdicium sed imperātōris^I esse^{II}

=that the judgement concerning the leadership of war was their own but (was) of the commander ~that the determination of the conduct of the war was theirs and not their general's

exīstimāvisse^{III}

=had estimated

~supposed

I.XLI.III.

EŌRŪM SATISFACTIŌNE ACCEPTĀ ET ITĪNERE EXQUISITŌ PER DĪVICIĀCUM, QUOD EX ALIIS EĪ MAXIMAM FIDEM HABĒBAT, UT MĪLIUM AMPLIUS QUĪNQUĀGINTĀ CIRCUITŪ LOCĪS APERTĪS EXERCITUM DŪCERET, DĒ QUĀRTĀ VIGILIĀ, UT DIXERAT, PROPECTUS EST. SEPTIMŌ DIĒ, CŪM ITER NŌN ĪNTERMITTERET, AB EXPLŌRĀTŌRIBUS CERTIOR FACTUS EST ARIOVISTĪ COPIĀS Ā NOSTRĪS MĪLIBUS PASSUUM QUATTUOR ET VĪGINTĪ ABESSE.

I POSSESSIVE GEN. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE DENOTES THE PERSON OR THING TO WHICH AN OBJECT, QUALITY, FEELING, OR ACTION BELONGS. §343

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *exīstimāvisse*. §580

III *sē...dubitāsse...timuisse...existimāvisse, satisfacerent*. §580 INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON

Eōrum satisfactiōne^I acceptā^{II} et itinere exquisitō^{III} ^{IV} ^V per
Dīviciācum

=with their apology <having been> accepted, and with the road <having been> examined through (the the hands of) Divitiacus
~having accepted their excuse, and having had the road investigated by Divitiacus

quod ex aliīs ei^{VI} maximam fidem habēbat

=because, for him, out from (all) others, he (Cæsar) was having the most faith
~because in him of all others he had the greatest faith

I **sātis faciō** (or **satisfaciō**), to give satisfaction, to satisfy, content; To give satisfaction, make amends, make reparation, make excuse, apologize

II **satisfactiōne acceptā**, ABL. ABS. §420

III **itinere exquisitō**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **exquirō, -uī, -itum, -ere** (EX + QUÆRO), to ask about, to inquire into; to search, to examine

V PPP. OF THE V. **exquirō**

VI DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **fidem habēbat**. MANY VERBS SIGNIFYING TO FAVOR, HELP, PLEASE, TRUST, AND THEIR CONTRARIES; ALSO TO BELIEVE, PERSUADE, COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE, RESIST, ENVY, THREATEN, PARDON, AND SPARE, TAKE THE DATIVE. I. SOME VERBS APPARENTLY OF THE SAME MEANINGS TAKE THE ACCUSATIVE. SUCH ARE IUVŌ, ADIUVŌ, HELP; LĒDŌ, INIURE; IUBEŌ, ORDER; DÉFICIŌ, FAIL; DÉLECTŌ, PLEASE. NOTE. II. SOME COMMON PHRASES REGULARLY TAKE THE DATIVE PRECISELY LIKE VERBS OF SIMILAR MEANING. SUCH ARE—PRÆSTŌ ESSE, BE ON HAND (CF. ADESSE); MŌREM GERERE, HUMOR (CF. MŌRIGERĀRĪ); GRĀTUM FACERE, DO A FAVOR (CF. GRĀTIFICĀRĪ); DICTŌ AUDIĒNS ESSE, BE OBEDIENT (CF. OBEDĪRE); “CUI FIDEM HABĒBAT” (B. G. 1.19), IN WHOM HE HAD CONFIDENCE (CF. CONFIDĒBAT). §367I, N. II

ut milium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū^I locīs apertis^{II} ^{III}
exercitum dūceret^{IV}

=(he found,) that by a going ~[he found] that by a way
around of more than fifty around of more than fifty miles
thousand (of paces), he might he might lead his army through
lead (his) army in open places open parts

dē quārtā vigiliā

=during the fourth watch ~during fourth watch

ut dixerat

=as he said ~as he had said [he would]

profectus est

=he departed ~he set out

septimō diē^V

=on the seventh day ~on the seventh day

cum iter nōn intermitteret^{VI}

=as he did not interrupt the ~as he did not suspend his
journey march

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **apertus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (PART. of aperio), without covering, uncovered; Fig., open, avowed, plain, clear, manifest

III **locīs apertīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **ut...dūceret** CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. §531

V **septimō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

VI **cum...intermitteret, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

ab explōrātōribus^I certior factus est

=by explorers, he was made ~he was informed by scouts
more certain

Ariovistī copiās ā nostrīs^{II} mīlibus passuum^{III} quattuor et vīgintī
abesse^{IV V}

=that the troops of Ariovistus ~that the forces of Ariovistus
was (only) twenty-four were only four and twenty miles
thousands of paces away from distant from ours
our men

I **ab explōrātōribus**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. §405

II **ā nostrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

III PARTITIVE GEN. WORDS DENOTING A PART ARE FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE TO WHICH THE PART BELONGS. I. PARTITIVE WORDS, FOLLOWED BY THE GENITIVE, ARE: NUMERALS, COMPARATIVES, SUPERLATIVES, AND PRONOMINAL WORDS LIKE **alius**, **alter**, **nūllus**, ETC. §346

IV **cōpiās...abesse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **certior factus est**. §580

V PRES. INF. OF THE V. **absum**

I.XLII

ARIOVISTUS SUGGESTS A CONFERENCE.

I.XLII.I.



COGNITŌ CÆSARIS ADVENTŪ, ARIOVISTUS
LĒGĀTŌS AD EUM MITTIT: QUOD ANTEĀ DĒ
COLLOQUIŌ POSTULĀSSET, ID PER SĒ FIERĪ
LICĒRE, QUONIAM PROPIUS ACCESSISSET,
SĒQUĒ ID SĪNE PERĪCULŌ FACERE POSSE EXĪSTIMĀRET.

Cognitō Cæsaris adventū¹

=with the arrival of Cæsar
<having been> learned

~upon being apprized of Cæsar's
arrival

Ariovistus lĕgātōs ad eum mittit

=Ariovistus sends ambassadors
to him

~Ariovistus sent ambassadors to
him

quod antea dē colloquiō postulāset^{II}

=(saying) what he had
demanded previously
concerning the conference

~[saying] that what he had
before requested as to a
conference

I **cognitō...adventū** ABL. ABS. §420

II **quod...postulāset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

id^I per sē fieri^{II} licēre^{III IV}

=that it be allowed to be done ~might now, as far as his
through himself permission went, take place

quoniam propius accessisset

=since he (Cæsar) had ~since he [Cæsar] had
approached nearer approached nearer

sēque id sine periculō facere posse^V

=and // that he is able to do it ~and // that he might now do it
without danger without danger

exīstimāret^{VI}

=he thought ~he considered

I.XLII.II.

NŌN RESPUIT CŌNDICIŌNEM CÆSAR, IAMQUE EUM AD
SĀNITĀTEM REVERTĪ ARBITRĀBĀTUR, CŪM ID QUOD
ĀNTEĀ PETĒNTĪ DĒNEGĀSSET ULTRŌ POLLICĒRĒTUR;
MAGNAMQUE IN SPĒM VENIĒBAT PRŌ SUĪS TĀNTĪS
POPULĪQUE ROMĀNĪ IN EUM BENEFICIĪS, COGNITĪS SUĪS
POSTULĀTĪS FORE UTĪ PERTĪNĀCIĀ DĒSISTERET.

I ACC. SG. NOUN., SUBJ. ACC. OF *fieri*

II V.. PRES. INF. PASS. *fiō, fieri* (USED AS PASS. OF *facio, to do*), *to be done*

III *licet, -cuit, -citum est, -ēre*, IMPERS. (LIC-), WITH OR WITHOUT DAT. OF PERSON,
it is lawful, is allowed, is permitted

IV *id...licēre*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *lēgātōs...misit*. §580

V *sēque...posse*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *exīstimāret*. §580

VI *quoniam...accessisset...exīstimāret*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC.
CAUSAL CLAUSES TAKE EITHER THE INDICATIVE OR THE SUBJUNCTIVE, ACCORDING TO THEIR
CONSTRUCTION; THE IDEA OF CAUSE BEING CONTAINED, NOT IN THE MOOD ITSELF, BUT IN THE
FORM OF THE ARGUMENT (BY IMPLICATION), IN AN ANTECEDENT OF CAUSAL MEANING (LIKE
PROPTEREA), OR IN THE CONNECTING PARTICLES. §539 & §583

Nōn respuit^I condiōnem Cæsar

=*Cæsar did not reject the condition*

~*Cæsar did not reject the proposal*

iamque

=*and now*

~*and began*

eum ad sãnitãtem^{II} reverti^{III}

=*that he (Ariovistus) returned to soundness of body*

~*that he was now returning to sanity*

arbitrãbãtur

=*he was thinking*

~*to think*

cum id

=*when // it*

~*as // the issue*

quod antea petenti^{IV} v [sibi] dēnegasset^{VI} VII

=*that which he (Ariovistus) had previously denied [to him] (to Cæsar), with his requesting*

~*that which he had previously refused to him when requesting it*

I **respuō, -uī, -us, -ere** (RE + SPUŌ), *to spit back, discharge by spitting, cast out, cast off, eject, expel*; Fig., *to reject, repel, refuse, spurn, dislike, disapprove*

II **sãnitãs, -ãtis**, F. (SANUS), *soundness of body, health*; Fig., *soundness, right reason, good sense, discretion, sanity*

III **eum...reverti**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **arbitrãbãtur**. §580

IV ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

V DAT. SG. PRES. PART. OF THE V. *petō*

VI **quod...dēnegasset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VII **dēnegō, -ãvī, -ãtus, -ãre** (DE + NEGŌ), *to reject, refuse, deny*

ultrō^I pollicērētur^{II}

=he spontaneously offered

~he spontaneously proffered

magnamque in spem veniēbat

=and he was coming into great hope

~and was in great hopes that

prō suis tantis populique Romāni in eum beneficiis

=on account of his own great kindnesses and (the kindnesses) of the Roman people toward him

~in consideration of his own and the Roman people's great favors toward him

cognitis suis postulātis^{III}

=with his demands <having been> learned

~upon his demands being made known

fore uti

=that (it) would be that

~that

pertinācia^{IV V} dēsisteret^{VI}

=he would desist from (his) obstinacy

~he would desist from his obstinacy

I **ultrō**, ADV. (ABL. OF ULTER), *From beyond, from the other side, i.e. without influence or assistance from this side, on his part, on their part, of himself, of themselves, etc.; of one's own accord, without being asked, spontaneously, voluntarily*

II **cum...pollicērētur**, **cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

III **cognitis suis postulātis**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

V **pertinācia**, -æ, F. (PERTINAX), *perseverance, persistence, stubbornness, obstinacy, pertinacity*

VI **fore uti...dēsisteret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. IN INDIC., DISC. DEPENDENT ON **magnam in spem veniebat** STANDING IN FOR FUT. INF. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT ARE USED AS THE SUBJECT OF THE FOLLOWING; FORE (OR FUTURUM ESSE) UT WITH A CLAUSE OF RESULT AS SUBJECT IS OFTEN USED INSTEAD OF THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE OR PASSIVE; SO NECESSARILY IN VERBS WHICH HAVE NO SUPINE STEM. §569i & §583

I.XLII.III.

DIĒS COLLOQUIŌ DICTUS EST EX EŌ DIĒ QUĪNTUS.
 ÎNTERIM SÆPE ULTRŌ CITROQUE CUM LĒGĀTĪ ÎNTER
 EŌS MITTERENTUR, ARIOVISTUS POSTULĀVIT NĒ QUEM
 PEDITEM AD COLLOQUIUM CÆSAR ADDŪCERET: VERĒRĪ
 SĒ NĒ PER ÎNSIDIĀS AB EŌ CIRCUMVENĪRĒTUR: UTERQUE
 CUM EQUITĀTŪ VENĪRET: ALIĀ RATIŌNE SĒSĒ NŌN ESSE
 VENTŪRUM.

Diēs colloquiō^I ^{II} dictus est ex eō diē quīntus

=the fifth day out from this day
 was set for the conference

~the fifth day after that was
 appointed as the day of
 conference

Interim

=in the meantime

~meanwhile

sæpe ultrō citroque^{III} cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur^{IV}

=as the ambassadors were often
 being sent to beyond and to this
 side between them

~as ambassadors were being
 often sent to and fro between
 them

Ariovistus postulāvit

=Ariovistus demanded

~Ariovistus demanded

I DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE IS OFTEN USED TO QUALIFY A WHOLE IDEA, INSTEAD OF THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE MODIFYING A SINGLE WORD. §377

II **collōquiūm, -ii**, N. a conversation, conference, discourse

III **citrō**, ADV. (DAT. OF CITER), to this side; only in the phrase *ultrō citroque*, *ultrō et citro*, or, *ultrō citro*, hither and thither, this way and that, here and there, to and fro, backwards and forwards, reciprocally

IV **cum...mitterentur**, cum CLAUSE. §546

nē quem peditem ad colloquium Cæsar addūceret^V

=*that Cæsar should not lead any foot-soldier to the conference* ~*that Cæsar not bring any foot-soldier with him to the conference*

verērī sē^{II}

=*(saying) that he feared* ~*[saying] that he feared*

nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur^{III}

=*lest, through a trap, he should be circumvented by him* ~*being ensnared by him insidiously*

uterque cum equitātū venīret^{IV}

=*and that both should come with cavalry* ~*that both should come accompanied by cavalry*

aliā ratiōne^V *sēsē nōn esse ventūrum*^{VI}

=*(and) that, in another circumstance, he would not come* ~*that he would not come on any other condition*

V *nē...addūceret*, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. PROHIBITION IS REGULARLY EXPRESSED IN CLASSIC PROSE (1) BY *NŌLI* WITH THE INFINITIVE, (2) BY *CAVE* WITH THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, OR (3) BY *NĒ* WITH THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. §450 & ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

II *verērī sē*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *postulāvit*. §580

III *nē...circumvenīrētur*, FEAR CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. VERBS OF FEARING TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WITH *NĒ* AFFIRMATIVE AND *NĒ NŌN* OR *UT* NEGATIVE. §564 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

IV *uterque...venīret*, HORTATORY SUBJ. IN INDIR. DISC. THE HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN THE PRESENT TENSE TO EXPRESS AN EXHORTATION OR A COMMAND. THE NEGATIVE IS *NĒ*. §439 & §588

V *aliā ratiōne*, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

VI *sēsē nōn esse ventūrum*, INDIR. DISC. §580

I.XLII.IV.

CÆSAR, QUOD NEQUE COLLOQUIUM INTERPOSITĀ CAUSĀ TOLLĪ VOLĒBAT NEQUE SALŪTEM SUAM GALLORUM EQUITĀTUĪ COMMITTERE AUDĒBAT, COMMODISSIMUM ESSE STATUIT, OMNIBUS EQUĪS GALLĪS EQUITIBUS DĒTRACTĪS, EŌ LEGIŌNĀRIŌS MĪLĪTĒS LEGIŌNIS DECIMÆ, CUI QUĀM MAXIMĒ CŌNFĪDĒBAT, IMPŌNERE, UT PRÆSIDIUM QUĀM AMĪCISSIMUM, SĪ QUID OPUS FACTŌ ESSET, HABĒRET.

Cæsar

=Cæsar

~Cæsar

quod neque colloquium

=as neither /he wished/ the ~as neither // that the conference conference /to be removed/

interpositā^I causā^{II}

=by an excuse <having been> ~because an excuse was made thrown in the way

tollī volēbat

=he wished // to be removed

~he wished // to be set aside

I **interpōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (INTER + PONŌ), to put between, place among, interpose, insert, intersperse; Trop., to interpose, introduce, put in the way, put forward

II **interpositā causā**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

neque salūtem^I suam Gallorum equitātū^{II} committere audēbat
 =nor did he dare to trust his ~nor durst trust his life to the
 own safety to the cavalry of the cavalry of the Gauls
 Gauls

commodissimum esse^{III}
 =that (it) was most commodious ~that it would be most expedient

statuit
 =he decided ~decided

omnibus equīs Gallis equitibus^{IV} dētractīs^{V VI}
 =with all the horses <having ~to take away from the Gallic
 been> drawn away from the cavalry all their horses
 Gallic cavalry

eō legiōnariōs milītēs legiōnis decimæ
 =/(and) to mount/ thither the ~and thereon // the legionary
 legionary soldiers of the tenth soldiers of the tenth legion
 legion

cui^{VII} quam maximē cōfīdēbat
 =to whom he was having the ~in which he placed the greatest
 most confidence confidence

I **salūs, -ūtis**, F. (SALVUS), soundness, health, good health, vigor; Fig., health, welfare, prosperity, safety, soundness, preservation, deliverance

II DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **committere**. §367

III **commodissimum esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **statuit**. §580

IV **Gallis equitibus**, DAT. OF SEPAR. MANY VERBS OF TAKING AWAY AND THE LIKE TAKE THE DATIVE (ESPECIALLY OF A PERSON) INSTEAD OF THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (§401). §381

V **omnibus equīs...dētractīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

VI **dētrahō, -trāxī, -trāctus, -ere** (DE + TRAHŌ), to draw off, take down, pull down, take away, remove, withdraw, drag, bring

VII DAT. WITH SPECIAL V. **cōfīdēbat**. §367

impōnere^I

=*(and) to mount*

~*to mount*

ut præsidium quam amīcissimum^{II III}

=*<in order> that // a most trustworthy defence as possible*

~*in order that // a garrison as trustworthy as possible*

sī quid opus factō^{IV} esset^V

=*if there were any need for a deed*

~*should there be any need for action*

habēret^{VI}

=*he might have*

~*he might have*

I.XLII.VI.

QUOD CUM FIERET, NON IRRIDICULĒ QUĪDAM EX
MĪLITIBUS DECIMÆ LEGIŌNIS DĪXIT: PLŪS QUAM
POLLICITUS ESSET CÆSAREM FACERE; POLLICITUM SĒ IN
COHORTIS PRÆTŌRIÆ LOCŌ DECIMAM LEGIŌNEM
HABITŪRUM, AD EQUUM RESCRĪBERE.

I **impōnō, -posuī, -positus** (IN + PŌNŌ), ere, *to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place*

II **quam amīcissimum, quam** + SUPER. = THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEG. BESIDES THEIR REGULAR SIGNIFICATION (AS IN ENGLISH), THE FORMS OF COMPARISON ARE USED AS FOLLOWS: WITH QUAM, VEL, OR ŪNUS THE SUPERLATIVE DENOTES THE HIGHEST POSSIBLE DEGREE. §291^{III}

III **factum, -ī, N.** (PART. NEUT. OF facio), *a deed, act, exploit, achievement*

IV **opus**, INDICATING NEED REQUIRES THE ABL. OPUS AND ŪSUS, SIGNIFYING NEED, TAKE THE ABLATIVE. I. WITH OPUS THE ABLATIVE OF A PERFECT PARTICIPLE IS OFTEN FOUND, EITHER AGREEING WITH A NOUN OR USED AS A NEUTER ABSTRACT NOUN. §411^I

V **sī...esset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

VI **ut...habēret**, CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

Quod cum fieret^I

=*which when (it) was done*

~*and when this was done*

nōn irrīdiculē^{II} quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dīxit

=*a certain one, out from the soldiers of the tenth legion, not unwittingly, said*

~*one of the soldiers of the tenth legion said, not without a touch of humor*

plūs quam pollicitus esset

=*more than he had promised*

~*more for them than he had promised*

Cæsarem facere^{III}

=*that Cæsar was doing*

~*that Cæsar did*

[eum] pollicitum [esse]^{IV}

=*that [he] (Cæsar) promised*

~*he had promised*

sē^V in cohortis prætōriæ locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum [esse]^{VI}

=*that he would have the tenth legion in place of (his) prætorian cohort*

~*to have the tenth legion in place of his prætorian cohort*

I *cum fieret*, *cum* CLAUSE. §546

II *irrīdiculē*, ADV. (IN-RIDICULE), *unwittily*

III *Cæsarem facere*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *dīxit*. §580

IV *plūs quam pollicitus esset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

V *pollicitum sē*, INDIR. DISC. §580

VI INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *pollicitum*. §580

[eum] ad equum rescribere^{I II}

=(and) that [he] (Cæsar) was re-
enlisting [those men] to cavalry

~but he now re-enlisted them
into horse

I INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *dixit*. §580.

II **rescribō, -scripsi, -scriptus, -ere** (RE + SCRIBŌ), to write back, write in return, reply in writing; To write again, write anew, enroll anew, re-enlist; In partic., in milit. lang., to enroll anew, to re-enlist

I.XLIII

CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS MEET.

I.XLIII.I.

PLĀNITIĒS ERAT MAGNA ET ĪN EĀ TUMULUS
TERRĒNUS SATIS GRANDIS.

Plānitiēs^I erat magna et in eā tumulus^{II} terrēnus^{III} satis grandis^{IV}
=there was a great plain and in ~there was a large plain, and in
it an earthly mound of it a mound of earth of
considerable size considerable size

I.XLIII.II.

HIC LOCUS ÆQUŌ FERĒ SPATIŌ AB CASTRĪS^V ARIOVISTI
ET CAESARIS ABERAT.

-
- I **plānitiēs, -ēi**, F., a flat or even surface, level ground, a plain
II **tumulus, -ī**, M. (TV-), a heap of earth, mound, hill, hillock
III **terrēnus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (TERRA), of the globe, on the earth, earthly, terrestrial, terren
IV **grandis, -e**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (GAR-), Of things, full-grown, large, great, full, abundant
V **ā castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

Hic locus æquō ferē spatiō^I ab castrīs Ariovisti et Cæsaris aberat
 =this place was nearly by (at) an ~this spot was at nearly an
 equal interval away from the equal distance from both camps
 the camp of Ariovistus and (the
 camp) of Cæsar

I.XLIII.III.

EŌ, UT ERAT DICTUM, AD COLLOQUIUM VĒNĒRUNT.

EŌ

=to that place

~thither

ut erat dictum

=as it was said

~as had been appointed

ad colloquium vĕnĕrunt

=they came to the conference

~they came for the conference

I.XLIII.IV.

LEGIŌNEM CÆSAR QUAM EQUĪS VEXERAT PASSIBUS
 DUCENTĪS AB EŌ TUMULŌ CŌSTITUIT.

Legiōnem Cæsar

=Cæsar // the legion

~Cæsar // the legion

quam equīs^{II} vexerat

=which he had conveyed by the
 horses

~which he had brought [with
 him] on horseback

I **æquō spatiō**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

II ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

passibus ducentis^I ab eō tumulō^{II} cōstituit

=stationed // 200 paces away ~stationed // 200 paces from this mound

I.XLIII.V.

ITEM EQUITĒS ARIOVISTĪ PARĪ ÎNTERVĀLLŌ
CŌSTITĒRŪNT.

Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō^{III} constitērunt

=the cavalry of Ariovistus also ~the cavalry of Ariovistus also
stationed at an equal interval took their stand at an equal
distance

I.XLIII.VI.

ARIOVISTUS EX EQUIS UT COLLOQUERENTUR ET
PRÆTER SĒ DĒNŌS AD COLLOQUIUM ADDŪCERENT
POSTULĀVIT.

Ariovistus

=Ariovistus

~Ariovistus

ex equis ut colloquerentur

=that they should converse from ~that they should confer on
(their) horses horseback

I **passibus ducentis**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

II **ab eō tumulō**, ABL. OF SEPAR. §401

III **parī intervāllō**, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. §414

et præter sē dēnōs^I ad colloquium addūcerent^{II}

=and that, in addition to ~and that, besides themselves,
themselves, they should bring they should bring with them ten
ten men each to the conference men each to the conference

postulāvit

=demanded

~then demanded

I.XLIII.VII.

VBI EŌ VENTUM EST, CÆSAR INITIŌ ŌRĀTIONIS SUA
SENĀTŪSQUE IN EUM BENEFICIA COMMÉMORĀVIT,
QUOD RĒX APPELLĀTUS ESSET Ā SENĀTŪ, QUOD AMĪCUS,
QUOD MŪNERA AMPLISSIME MISSA; QUĀM REM ET
PAUCĪS CONTIGISSE, ET PRŌ MAGNĪS HOMĪNŪ OFFICIĪS
CŌNSUĒSSE TRIBUĪ DOCĒBAT.

Vbi eō [ab eīs] ventum est^{III}

=when it was come [by them] to
that place

~when they were come to the
place

Cæsar initiō ōrātionis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia
commémorāvit

=Cæsar, in the beginning of (his)
speech, recalled his own and the
favors and (he recalled the
favors) of senate toward him
(Ariovistus)

~Cæsar, in the opening of his
speech, detailed his own and the
senate's favors toward him
[Ariovistus]

I **dēnī, -æ, -a**, ADJ. (DECEM), *ten each, ten at a time, by tens*

II **ut colloquerentur...addūcerent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH...§563

III IMPERS. PASS. OF THE V. *veniō*

quod rēx appellātus esset^I ā senātū^{II}

=<as to the fact> that he had ~in that he had been styled king
been called a king by the senate

quod amīcus [appellātus esset]

=<as to the fact> that [he had ~in that [he had been styled]
been called] a friend friend, by the senate

quod mūnera^{III} amplissime missa [essent]

=<as to the fact> that the most ~in that very considerable
magnificent presents had been presents had been sent him
sent (to him)

quam rem et paucīs^{IV} contigisse

=which (thing) (i.e. obtaining so ~which circumstance // him had
many favors) // and had both fallen to the lot of few
happened to few men

et prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse^V tribuī

=and had been wont to be ~and had usually been bestowed
bestowed in return for the great in consideration of important
services of men personal services

I **quod...appellātus esset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

II **ā senātū**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

III **mūnus, -eris**, N. (MV-), a service, office, post, employment, function, duty; TRANSF., a present, gift

IV DAT. WITH COMP. V. **contigisse**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

V **quam rem...contigisse...cōnsuēsse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **docēbat**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

docēbat

=he was informing

~he informed

I.XLIII.VIII.

ILLUM, CUM NEQUE ADITUM NEQUE CAUSAM
POSTULANDĪ IŪSTAM HABĒRET, BENEFICIŌ AC
LĪBERĀLITĀTE SUĀ AC SENĀTŪS EA PRÆMIA
CŌNSECŪTUM.

Illum

=that that (man)

~that he

cum neque aditum^I neque causam postulandī^{II} iūstam habēret^{III}

=although he was neither having ~although he had neither an
access, nor a just cause of introduction, nor a just ground
requesting for the request

beneficiō ac liberālitate suā^{IV} ac senātūs ea præmia^V cōnsecūtum
[esse]

=he had obtained those ~had obtained these honors
privileges by his own through the kindness and
beneficence and liberality and munificence of himself [Cæsar]
(that beneficence and liberty) of and the senate
the senate

I **ādītus, -ūs**, M. (ADEO), a going to, approach, access

II GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

III **cum...habēret, cum** CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBIUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

IV **beneficiō ac liberālitate suā**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **præmium, -ī**, N. (PRÆ + EM-), an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege

I.XLIII.IX.

DOCĒBAT ETIAM QUAM VETERĒS QUAMQUE IŪSTÆ
CAUSÆ NECESSITUDĪNIS IPSĪS CUM ÆDUĪS
INTERCĒDERENT; QUÆ SENĀTŪS CŌNSULTA QUOTIĒNS
QUAMQUE HONŌRIFICA IN EŌS FACTA ESSENT; UT OMNĪ
TEMPORE TOTĪUS GALLIÆ PRĪNCIPĀTUM ÆDUĪ
TENUISENT, PRIUS ETIAM QUAM NOSTRAM AMĪCITIAM
APPETĪSSENT.

Docēbat etiam

=he, too, was informing

~he informed him too

quam veterēs

=how old

~how old

quamque iŭstæ causæ necessitudinis^I ipsīs cum Æduīs
intercēderent^{II}

=and how just causes of the
relationship were coming
between themselves (the
Romans) with the Ædui

~and how just were the grounds
of connection that existed
between themselves [the
Romans] and the Ædui

quæ senātūs cōnsulta^{III}

=which decrees of the senate

~what decrees of the senate

I **necessitūdō, -inis**, F. (NECESSE), *necessity, compulsion, inevitableness, want, need, distress*; A close connection, personal union, relationship, friendship, intimacy, bond

II **quam...intercēderent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III **cōnsultum, ī**, N. (CONSULTUS), *deliberation, consideration*; A decree, decision, resolution, plan; *senātūs*, a decree of the senate

quotiēns^I quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent^{II}

=how often and how honorable, ~had been passed in their favor,
they (the decrees) had been and how frequent and how
made on them honorable

ut omni tempore^{III} totius Galliae principātum Aedui tenuissent^{IV}

=how from all time the Aedui ~how from time immemorial the
had held the supremacy of all of Aedui had held the supremacy of
Gaul the whole of Gaul

prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent^V

=even (said Cæsar) before our ~even [said Cæsar] before they
friendship which they had had sought our friendship
sought

I. XLIII. X.

POPULI RŌMĀNĪ HANC ESSE CŌNSUĒTUDĪNEM, UT
SOCIŌS ATQUE AMICŌS NŌN MODO SUĪ NIHIL
DĒPERDERE SED GRĀTIĀ, DIGNITĀTE, HONŌRE
AUCTIŌRĒS VELIT ESSE: QUOD VĒRŌ AD AMĪCITIAM
POPULI RŌMĀNĪ ATTULISSENT, ID EĪS ĒRIPĪ QUIS PATĪ
POSSET?

I **quotiēns**, ADV. (QUOT), *how often? how many times*

II **quæ...facta essent**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

III **omni tempore**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV **ut...tenuissent**, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

V **prius...quam...appetissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

"POPULI ROMANI HÆC EST CONSÜETÜDO UT SOCIOS ATQUE AMICOS NON MODO SUI NIHIL DEPENDERE, SED GRATIA ... AUCTIONES VELIT ESSE; QUOD VERO AD AMICITIAM POPULI ROMANI ADTULERUNT, ID EIS ERIPI QUIS PATI POSSIT?"

Populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētudinem^I

=that it was this custom of the Roman people

~that it was the custom of the Roman people

ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere^{II}

=that (their) allies and (their) friends not only are losing nothing of their (own)

~to desire not only that its allies and friends should lose none of their property

sed grātiā, dignitāte^{III}, honōre^{IV} auctiōrēs velit^V esse

=but he (also) desires that (they) (the allies and friends) are more increased in <respect to> gratitude, dignity, (and) honor

~but be advanced in influence, dignity, and honor

quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent^{VI}

=but in fact, that which they had brought towards the friendship of the Roman people

~that what they had brought with them to the friendship of the Roman people

I **hanc esse cōsuētudinem**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **docēbat**. §580

II **dēperdō, -didī, -ditus, -ere** (DE + PERDO), to destroy, ruin; To lose

III **dignitās, -ātis**, F. (DIGNUS), worth, merit, desert, a character

IV **grātiā, dignitāte, honōre**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

V **ut...velit**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT MAY BE USED SUBSTANTIVELY: AS THE OBJECT OF FACIŌ ETC. (§568) §567

VI **quod...attulissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

id eīs eripī

=that it is being torn away from ~should be torn from them?

quis patī posset^I

=who was able to endure? ~who then could endure?

I.XLIII.XI.

POSTULĀVIT DEINDE EADEM QUÆ LĒGĀTĪS IN
MANDĀTĪS DEDERAT: NĒ AUT ÆDUĪS AUT EŌRUM SOCIĪS
BELLUM ĪNFERRET; OBSIDĒS REDDERET; SĪ NŪLLAM
PARTEM GERMĀNŌRUM DOMUM REMITTERE POSSET, AT
NĒ QUŌS AMPLIUS RHĒNUM TRĀNSĪRE PATERĒTUR.

Postulāvit deinde eadem

=he then demanded the same ~he then made the same
(things) demands

quæ lĕgātīs in mandātīs dederat

=(the same things) which he had ~which he had commissioned
given to the ambassadors in the the ambassadors to make
orders

nē aut Æduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret

=(namely,) that he (Ariovistus) ~that [Ariovistus] should not
should not bear war to the Ædui make war either upon the Ædui
or their allies or their allies

obsidēs redderet^{II}

=(and) that he should give back ~that he should restore the
the hostages hostages

I **quis...posset**, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE
EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §586

sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset^{III}

=(and) if he is able to send back ~that if he could not send back
no part of Germans home to their country any part of the
Germans

at^I nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur^{III}

=that he, at any rate, should not ~he should at all events suffer
allow anyone more men to cross none of them any more to cross
the Rhine the Rhine

II ***nē...inferret...redderet***, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. PROHIBITION IS REGULARLY EXPRESSED IN CLASSIC PROSE (1) BY NŌLĪ WITH THE INFINITIVE, (2) BY CAVĒ WITH THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE, OR (3) BY NĒ WITH THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. §450 & ALL IMPERATIVE FORMS OF SPEECH TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE. THIS RULE APPLIES NOT ONLY TO THE IMPERATIVE OF THE DIRECT DISCOURSE, BUT TO THE HORTATORY AND THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AS WELL. §588

III ***sī...posset***, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

II Of the Adversative Conjunctions *at*, as *but* or *at any rate*, are often used to express Contrast or Restriction; *autem*, as *however*, *on the other hand*, or *moreover*, to express Contrast or Addition; *sed*, as *but*, to correct or limit a Preceding Statement; *tamen*, as *nevertheless*, *yet*, to emphasize the importance of something that follows in opposition to a Preceding Statement; and *vero*, as *in fact*, *but in truth*, to emphasize a contrast with a Preceding Statement

III ***nē...paterētur***, PROHIBITION IN INDIR. DISC. §450 & §588

I.XLIV



ARIOVISTUS IS UNCOMPROMISING AND DEFIANT.



I.XLIV.I



ARIOVISTUS AD POSTULATA CÆSARIS PAUCA RESPONDIT, DE SUIS VIRTUTIBUS MULTA PRÆDICAVIT: TRANSISSE RHĒNUM SĒSĒ NŌN SUĀ SPŌNTE SED ROGĀTUM ET ACCERSĪTUM Ā GALLĪS; NŌN SĪNE MAGNĀ SPĒ MAGNĪSQUE PRÆMIĪS DOMUM PROPĪNQUŌSQUE RELĪQUISSĒ; SĒDĒS HABĒRE ĪN GALLĪĀ AB IPSĪS CŌNCESSĀS, OBSIDĒS IPSŌRUM VOLUNTĀTE DATŌS; STĪPĒNDĪUM CAPERE ĪURE BELLĪ QUOD VICTŌRĒS VICTĪS IMPŌNERE CŌNSUĒRĪNT.

"TRANSII RHĒNUM (EGO) NŌN MEĀ SPŌNTE, SED ROGĀTUS ET ARCESSITUS A GALLĪS; NŌN SĪNE MAGNĀ SPE ... DOMUM ... RELLIQUI; SEDĪS HABEO ĪN GALLĪĀ AB IPSĪS CŌNCESSAS, OBSIDES IPSORUM VOLUNTATE DATOS; STIPĒNDĪUM CAPIO ĪURE BELLĪ QUOD VICTORES VICTIS IMPŌNERE CŌNSUERUNT."

Ariovistus ad postulata¹ Cæsaris pauca respondit

=Ariovistus responds (with) a ~Ariovistus briefly replied to the few (words) to the demands of demands of Cæsar Cæsar

I **postulatum, -i, n.** (P. N. OF *postulo*), a demand, request, claim

dē suīs virtūtibus multa prædicāvit

=(but) he announced many ~but expatiated largely on his things about his own merits own virtues

transisse^I Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte^{II} ^{III}

=(namely,) that he crossed the ~that he had crossed the Rhine Rhine not by his own will not of his own accord

sed rogātum^{IV} et accersitum^V ā Gallīs^{VI}

=but <having been> invited and ~but on being invited and sent <having been> sent for by the for by the Gauls Gauls

nōn sine magnā spē magnisque præmiis^{VII} domum propinquōsque reliquisse^{VIII}

=that (he,) not without great ~that he had not left home and hope and great rewards, had left kindred without great behind (his) home and relatives expectations and great rewards

I **trānsisse...sēsē**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **sponte**, ABL., and **spontis**, F. (SPONDEO), PROP. **sponte**, IN GOOD PROSE ALWAYS JOINED WITH **meā, tuā, suā**—of free will, of one's own accord, of one's self, freely, willingly, voluntarily, spontaneously

III **suā sponte**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **rogō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre**, to ask, question, interrogate; To invite, ask a visit from

V **arcessō, -īvi, -ītus, -ere**, INTENS. (ACCEDO), to cause to come, call, send for, invite, summon, fetch

VI **ā Gallīs**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH **ā** OR **ab**. §405

VII **præmium, -ī**, N. (PRÆ + EM-), an advantage, prerogative, favor, license, privilege; A reward, recompense

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

sēdēs^I habēre^{II} in Galliā ab ipsīs^{III} concessās^{IV V VI}

=that (he) is holding residences
in Gaul, <having been> yielded
by (the Gauls) themselves

~that he had settlements in
Gaul, which were granted by the
Gauls themselves

obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte^{VII} datōs

=that the hostages, <having
been> given by the volition of
themselves

~that those hostages had been
given by their goodwill

stīpendium capere^{VIII} iūre^{IX} bellī

=that (he) is seizing the tribute
by right of war

~that he took by right of war,
the tribute

I sēdēs, sēdis, F. (SED-), a seat, bench, chair, throne; A seat, dwelling-place, residence, habitation, abode, temple

II sēdēs habēre, INDIR. DISC. §580

III ab ipsīs, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

IV PPP. MODIFIES *sedēs*

V A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description. Thus—Expressing Characterization or Description: *victis, venientes, those beaten, those coming up, meaning, those who had been beaten, those who were coming up* (I.XXV)

VI concēdō cessī, cessus, -ere (CON + CĒDŌ), INTRANS, to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove; TRANS, to grant, concede, allow, consign, resign, yield, vouchsafe, confirm

VII ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

VIII INDIR. DISC. §580

IX ABL. OF SPEC. §418

quod victōrēs victīs^I impōnere^{II} cōnsuē[ve]rint^{III IV}

=(the tribute) which conquerors ~which conquerors are
were wont to impose on the conquered to impose on the
conquered conquered

I.XLIV.II.

NŌN SĒSĒ GALLĪS SED GALLŌS SIBI BELLŪM ĪNTULISSE;
OMNĒS GALLIÆ CĪVITĀTĒS AD SĒ OPPUGNANDŪM
VĒNISSE AC CONTRĀ SĒ CASTRA HABUISSE; EĀS OMNĒS
CŌPIĀS Ā SĒ ŪNŌ PRĒLIŌ PŪLSĀS AC SŪPERĀTĀS ESSE.

"NŌN EGO GALLIS, SED GALLI MIHI BELLŪM
ĪNTULERŪNT; OMNES GALLIÆ CIVITATES AD ME
OPPUGNANDŪM VENERŪNT AC CONTRA ME CASTRA
HABUERŪNT; EÆ OMNES COPIÆ A ME ŪNO PRĒLIO
PŪLSÆ AC SŪPERATÆ SŪNT."

Nōn sēsē Gallīs^V sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse^{VI}

=that he (had not borne war) on ~that he had not made war upon
the Gauls, but that the Gauls had the Gauls, but the Gauls upon
borne war upon him him

I DAT. WITH COMP. V. **impōnere**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **impōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (IN + PONO), to place upon, set on, impose, establish, introduce, set, place

III **consuēscō, -suēvī, -suētus, -ere** (FROM suus), to become used, accustom oneself; Hence, PERF, to be wont, be accustomed

IV **quod...cōnsuērint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIC. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V DAT. WITH COMP. V. **intulisse**. §370

VI **sēsē...intulisse**, INDIC. DISC. §580

omnes Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum^{VII} vēnisse

=that all the states of Gaul had ~that all the states of Gaul came
came to him for <the purpose to attack him
of> attacking him

ac^{II} contrā sē castra habuisse^{III}

=and that (all the states of Gaul) ~and had encamped against him
had held a camp across from
him

eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē^{IV} ūnō proeliō pulsās [esse] ac superātās
esse^V

=that all these troops by him ~that all their forces had been
had been repulsed and had been routed and beaten by him in a
overcome in a single battle single battle

I.XLIV.III.

SĪ ITERŪM EXPERĪRĪ VELĪNT, SĒ ITERŪM PARĀTŪM ESSE
DĒCERTĀRE; SĪ PĀCE ŪTĪ VELĪNT, ĪNĪQUŪM ESSE DĒ
STĪPĒNDIŌ RECŪSĀRE QUOD SUĀ VOLŪNTĀTE AD ID
TEMPŪS PEPĒNDERĪNT.

"SĪ ITERŪM EXPERIRI VOLŪNT, (EGO) ITERŪM PARĀTŪS
SŪM DECERTARE; SI PACE ŪTI VOLŪNT, ĪNĪQUŪM EST DE
STIPĒNDIO RECŪSARE QUOD SUA VOLŪNTATE AD HOC
TEMPŪS PEPĒNDERŪNT."

VII **ad sē oppugnandum**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURPOSE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

II **atque** (OR **ac**—ONLY BEFORE CONSONANTS), CONJ. (AD + QUE), *and* (like *-que*, it connects words or thoughts which form a whole, but unlike *-que* gives prominence rather to what follows, and is rarely repeated)

III **omnēs...vēnisse...habuisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **ā sē**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V **cōpiās...pulsās ac superātās esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

Sī iterum experīrī^I velint^{II III}

=(that) if they wish to try again ~that if they choose to make a second trial

sē iterum parātum esse^{IV} dēcertāre^V

=that he had been prepared to go through a contest again ~he was ready to encounter them again

sī pāce^{VI} ūtī velint^{VII}

=(but) if they wish to employ peace ~but if they chose to enjoy peace

inīquum^{VIII} esse^{IX} dē stīpendiō recūsāre^X

=that it is unfair to make an objection against the tribute ~it was unfair to refuse the tribute

-
- I **experior, -pertus, -īrī**, DEP. (PAR-), to try, prove, test, experience, endure; To try, undertake, attempt, make trial, undergo, experience
- II **volui, velle** (VOL-), to will, wish, want, purpose, be minded, determine
- III **sī...velint**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: §589
- IV **sē...parātum esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. §580
- V **dēcertō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (DE + CERTO), In battle, to go through a contest, fight out
- VI ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtī**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410
- VII **sī...velint**, SIMPLE PRES. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589
- VIII **inīquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (IN+ ÆQUUS), uneven, slanting, steep; Unfair, unjust
- IX **inīquum esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580
- X **recūsō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (RE+ CAUSA), to make an objection against, decline, refuse, be reluctant to do

quod suā voluntātē^I ad id tempus pependerint^{II III}

=(the tribute) which by their ~which of their own free-will
own free-will, they weighed out they had paid up to that time
till that time

I.XLIV.IV.

AMĪCITIAM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ SIBI ŌRNĀMENTŌ ET
PRÆSIDIŌ, NŌN DĒTRĪMENTŌ, ESSE OPORTĒRE, IDQUE
SĒ EĀ SPĒ PETISSE.

"AMICITIAM POPULI ROMANI MIHI ORNAMENTO ET
PRÆSIDIO, NŌN DETRIMENTO ESSE OPORTET, IDQUE ...
HAC SPE PETIT."

Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō^{IV} et præsidiō^V nōn
dētrīmentō^{VI VII}, esse oportēre^{VIII}

=that the friendship of the ~that it is fitting that the
Roman people ought to be <a friendship of the Roman people
source of> an ornament and <a serve for himself as a ornament
source of> safeguard, not <a and safeguard, not a harm
source of> a detriment to him

I **suā voluntātē**, ABL. OF SPEC. §418

II **pendō, pependī, pēnsus, -ere** (PAND-), to suspend, weigh, weigh out; To weigh out in payment, pay, pay out

III **quod...pependerint**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **ōrnāmentum, -ī**, N. (ORNO), apparatus, accoutrement; Fig., an ornament, distinction

V **præsidium, ī**, N. (PRÆSES), defence, protection, guardianship, help, aid, assistance

VI **dētrīmentum, -ī**, N. (DE + TER-), that which is worn away; Wear and tear, loss, damage, detriment

VII **sibi ōrnāmentō et præsidiō, nōn dētrīmentō**, DAT. OF PURPOSE. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: §382

VIII **amīcitiam...oportēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

idque sē eā spē^I petisse^{II}

=and that he had sought it with that hope ~and that he sought it with that expectation

I.XLIV.V.

SĪ PER POPŪLUM RŌMĀNŪM STĪPĒNDIUM REMITTĀTUR
ET DĒDITICIĪ SUBTRAHANTŪR, NŌN MĪNUS LIBĒNTER
SĒSĒ RECŪSĀTŪRŪM POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ AMĪCITIAM, QUAM
ADPETIERIT.

"SI PER POPŪLUM ROMĀNŪM STIPĒNDIUM REMITTETUR
ET DEDITICII SUBTRAHENTUR, NŌN MĪNUS LIBĒNTER ...
RECŪSABO POPULI ROMĀNI AMICITIAM QUAM ADPETII."

Sĭ per populum Rŏmānum stĭpendium remittātur^{III IV}

=(but) if, through the Roman people, the tribute should be given up ~but if through the Roman people the tribute was to be discontinued

et dēditiciĭ subtrahantur^{V VI VII}

=and (if) the surrendered men should be withdrawn ~and those who surrendered to be seduced from him

I **eā spē**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **sē...petisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III PRES. SUBJ. PASS. IN THE CONDITION AFTER **sĭ**

IV **remittō, mīsī, missus, -ere** (RE + MITTŌ), to let go back, send back, despatch back, drive back, cause to return; With respect to a person, to free one from any thing; to give up, grant, forgive, yield, resign, concede, surrender, sacrifice a thing to any one (= concedere, condonare); WITH ACC. OF THE OFFENCE

V PRES. SUBJ. PASS. IN THE CONDITION AFTER **sĭ**

VI **sĭ...remittātur...subtrahantur**, FUT. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

VII **subtrahō, -trāxī, -trāctus, -ere** (SUB + TRAHŌ), to draw from below, drag out, draw off, carry off, withdraw, take away, remove

nōn minus libenter^I sēsē recūsātūrum [esse]^{II} ^{III} populī Rōmānī
amīcitiām

=*that, no less willingly, he would* ~*he would renounce the*
refuse the friendship of the *friendship of the Roman people*
Roman people *no less heartily*

quam adpetierit^{IV} ^V

=*than he sought (it)* ~*than he had sought it*

I.XLIV.VI.

QUOD MULTITUDINEM GERMĀNORUM IN GALLIAM
TRĀDUCAT, ID SĒ SUĪ MŪNIENDĪ, NŌN GALLIÆ
OPPUGNANDÆ CAUSĀ FACERE: EIUS REĪ TESTIMŌNIUM
ESSE QUOD NISI ROGĀTUS NŌN VĒNERIT, ET QUOD
BELLUM NŌN ÎNTULERIT SED DĒFĒNDERIT.

"QUOD MULTITUDINEM GENĀNANORUM IN GALLIAM
TRADUCO, ID MEI MŪNIENDI, NŌN GALLIÆ
IMPUGNANDÆ CAUSA FACTO: EIUS REI TESTIMŌNIUM
EST QUOD NISI ROGATUS NŌN VENI, ET QUOD BELLUM
NŌN ÎNTULI, SED DEFENDI."

Quod^{VI} multitudinem Germānorum in Galliam trādūcat^{VII}

=*<as for the fact> that he is* ~*as to his leading over a host of*
leading a multitude of Germans *Germans into Gaul*
into Gaul

I **libenter**, ADV. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (LIBENS), *willingly, cheerfully, gladly, with pleasure*

II **recūsō, āvī, ātus, āre** (RE- + CAUSA), *to make an objection against, decline, reject, refuse, be reluctant to do*

III **sēsē...recūsātūrum**, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV **appetō, -īvī** (OR -īī), **-ītus, -ere** (AD + PETO), TRANS, *to strive for, reach after, grasp at; Fig., to strive after, long for, desire, seek, court*

V **quam adpetierit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliæ oppugnandæ^I causā^{II} facere^{III}

=that he is doing it for the sake
of defending himself and (for the
sake) of attacking Gaul

~that he was doing it for the
sake of fortifying himself and
not for the sake of attacking
Gaul

eius rēi testimōnium esse^{IV}

=that there is testimony of this
thing

~that there was evidence of this
thing

quod^V nisi rogātus^{VI} nōn vñerit

=that he, unless asked, would
not come

~the fact that he did not come
without being invited

VI A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning, *as to the fact that*, *as regards the fact that*, may have the force of an Accusative or Ablative of Specification. Thus, *quod...enuntiavit*, *as to the fact that he had reported*, in the direct form, *quod enuntiavi*, *as to the fact that I have reported* (I.XVII)

VII *quod...trādūcat*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

I *suī mūniendī nōn Galliæ impugnandæ*, GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE WITH *causā*. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504 & PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING; THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES *CAUSĀ*, *GRĀTIĀ*, FOR THE SAKE OF; *ERGŌ*, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE *INSTAR*, LIKE; ALSO WITH *PRĪDIĒ*, THE DAY BEFORE; *POSTRĪDIĒ*, THE DAY AFTER; *TENUS*, AS FAR AS. §359II

II ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

III *sē...facere*, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV *testimōnium esse*, INDIR. DISC. §580

V A Substantive Clause introduced by *quod*, meaning, *the fact that*, *that*, has its Verb in the Indicative, and may stand as Subject, or Predicate, or Object of a Verb, or in Apposition. Thus, *magno erat impedimento*, *quod...neque...poterant*, *a great hindrance...was the fact that they were able neither to...*, the *quod*-clause being the Subject of *erat* (I.XXV); *causa mittendi fuit quod...volebat*, *the reason for sending was the fact that he wanted...the quod*-clause being in Predicate (II.I); *multæ res...in primis quod...videbat*, *many circumstances, first of all the fact that he saw...the quod*-clause being in Apposition with *res* (I.XXXIII)

VI *rogō, āvī, ātus, āre*, *to ask, question, interrogate*

et quod bellum nōn intulerit

=and that he did not bring on ~and the fact that he did not
war make war

sed dēfenderit^I

=but he warded (it) off ~but merely warded it off

I.XLIV.VII.

SĒ PRIUS IN GALLIAM VĒNISSE QUAM POPULUM
RŌMĀNUM.

"EGO PRIUS IN GALLIAM VĒNI QUAM POPULUS
ROMĀNUS."

Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse^{II} quam^{III} populum Rōmānum

=that he had come into Gaul ~that he had come into Gaul
earlier than the Roman people before the Roman people

I.XLIV.VIII.

NUMQUAM ANTE HOC TEMPUS EXERCITUM POPULI
RŌMĀNĪ GALLIÆ PRŌVĪNCIÆ FĪNIBUS ĒGRESSUM.

"NUMQUAM ANTE HOC TEMPUS EXERCITUS POPULI
ROMĀNI ... PROVĪNCIÆ FĪNIBUS EGRESSUS (EST)."

I **quod nisi...venerit...intulerit...defenderit**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **sē...vēnisse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **quam**, ADV. (QUI), RELAT., *in what manner, to what degree, how greatly, how, how much*; Implying difference of degree (AFTER A COMP. OR WORD OF COMPARISON), *than*

Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliæ
prōvinciæ finibus^I ēgressum [esse]^{II} III

=that never before this time did the army of the Roman people go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul
~that never before this time did a Roman army go beyond the frontiers of the province of Gaul

I.XLIV.IX.

QUID SIBI VELLET, CŪR ĪN SUĀS POSSESSIŌNĒS VENĪRET?

"QUID TIBI VIS? CUR ĪN MEAS POSSESSIONES VENIS?"

Quid sibi vellet^{IV}

=what (said he) should he (Cæsar) desire for himself? ~what [said he] does [Cæsar] desire?

cŭr in suās possessiōnēs^V venīret^{VI}

=why should he (Cæsar) come into his own (Ariovistus') possessions? ~why come into his [Ariovistus] properties?

I.XLIV.X.

PRŌVĪNCIAM SUAM HĀNC ESSE GALLIAM, SĪCUT ILLAM
NOSTRAM.

I ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

II ēgredior, gressus, -ī, DEP. (EX + GRADIOR) WITH ABL., INTRANS, to go out, come forth, march out, go away; TRANS, to go beyond, pass out of, leave

III exercitum...ēgressum, INDIR, DISC. §580

IV quid sibi vellet, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. A QUESTION IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE MAY BE EITHER IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. §586

V possessiō, -ōnis, F. (SED-), a taking possession of, seizing, occupying, taking; A thing possessed, possession, property, estate

VI cŭr...venīret, QUESTION IN INDIR. DISC. §586

"PROVINCIA MEA HÆC EST GALLIA, SICUT ILLA VESTRA."

Prōvinciam suam hanc esse^I Galliam

=*that this (part of) Gaul is his own province* ~*that this was his province of Gaul*

sicut illam nostram

=*just as that (province) (is) ours* ~*just as that is ours*

I.XLIV.XI.

VT IPSI CONCĒDĪ NŌN OPORTĒRET, SĪ IN NOSTRŌS
FĪNĒS IMPETŪM FACERET, SIC ITEM NŌS ESSE INĪQUŌS
QUOD IN SUŌ IŪRE SĒ ĪTERPELLĀRĒMUS.

"VT MIHI CONCEDI NŌN OPORTET, SI IN VESTROS FĪNĒS
IMPETŪM FACIAM, SIC ITEM VOS ESTIS INĪQUĪ QUOD IN
MEO IŪRE ME ĪTERPELLATIS."

Vt ipsī concēdī^{II} nōn oportēret^{III IV}

=*as it is not proper to be granted for (him) himself (Ariovistus)* ~*no concession ought to be made to him*

sī in nostrōs finēs impetum faceret^{V VI}

=*if he should make an attack on our borders* ~*if he were to make an attack upon our territories*

I **prōvinciam...esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **concēdō -cessī, -cessus, -ere** (CON + CĒDŌ), INTRANS, *to go away, pass, give way, depart, retire, withdraw, remove*; TRANS, *to grant, concede, allow, consign, resign, yield, vouchsafe, confirm*

III **oportet, -uit, -ēre**, IMPERS., *it is necessary, is proper, is becoming, behooves*

IV **ut...oportēret**, APODOSIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V PRES. SUBJ. in the condition after sī

VI **sī...faceret**, PROTASIS OF FUT. LESS VIVID CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

sīc item^I nōs esse^{II} inīquōs

=thus, likewise, that our men are unjust ~so, likewise, that we were unjust

quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus^{III}

=as we were hindering him in his own right ~to obstruct him in his prerogative

I.XLIV.XII.

QUOD FRATRĒS (A SENATU) AEDUŌS APPELLĀTŌS DĪCERET, NŌN SĒ TAM BARBARŪM NEQUE TAM IMPERĪTUM ESSE RĒRUM UT NŌN SCĪRET NEQUE BELLŌ ALLOBROGŪM PROXIMŌ AEDUŌS RŌMĀNĪS AUXILIUM TULISSE NEQUE IPSŌS IN EĪS CONTENTIŌNIBUS QUAS AEDUĪ SĒCUM ET CŪM SĒQUANĪS HABUISSENT AUXILIŌ POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ ŪSŌS ESSE.

"QUOD FRATRES A SENATU HÆDUŌS APPELLĀTOS DICIS, NŌN (EGO) TAM BARBARŪS ... SŪM ... UT NŌN SCIAM NEQUE BELLO ALLOBROGŪM PROXIMO HÆDUŌS ROMĀNIS AUXILIUM TULISSE, NEQUE IPSOS, IN HIS CONTENTIŌNIBUS QUAS HÆDUĪ MECUM ... HABUERUNT (HABUERĪNT), AUXILIO POPULI ROMĀNI USOS ESSE."

Quod

=that

~as to the fact that

I **item**, ADV., *likewise, besides, also, further, moreover, too, as well*

II **nōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **interpellō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (INTER + PELLO), *to interrupt, break in upon; In gen. To hinder, prevent, obstruct*

frātrēs (a senatu) Æduōs appellātōs [esse]

=the Ædui had been called ~the Ædui had been styled
'brothers' (by the senate) 'brethren' by the senate

dīceret

=he (Cæsar) said ~Cæsar's saying

nōn sē tam barbarum^I neque tam imperītum^{II} esse rērum

=that he is not so uncivilized nor ~he was not so uncivilized nor
so inexperienced of things so ignorant of affairs

ut nōn scīret^{III}

=that he did not know ~as not to know

neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Æduōs Rōmānīs auxilium
tulisse^{IV}

=that the Ædui in the last war of the Allobroges had neither borne aid to the Romans ~that the Ædui in the very last war with the Allobroges had neither rendered assistance to the Romans

neque ipsōs in eīs contentiōnibus^V

=nor they themselves (receive any aid from the Roman people), ~nor received any from the Roman people in the contentions in these struggles

I **barbarus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP., of strange speech, speaking jargon, unintelligible; Like a foreigner, rude, uncultivated, ignorant, uncivilized

II **imperītus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., inexperienced, unversed, unfamiliar, not knowing, unacquainted with, unskilled, ignorant

III **ut...scīret**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

IV **Æduōs...tulisse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **scīret**. §580

V **contentiō, -ōnis**, F. (COM- + TA-), a stretching, straining, exertion, tension, effort, struggle; A contest, contention, strife, fight, dispute, controversy

quas Æduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent^I

=which the Ædui had had with himself (i.e. the Germans) and with the Sequani ~which the Ædui had been maintaining with him and with the Sequani

auxiliō^{II} populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse^{III IV}

=that (the Allobroges) had used, (received) the aid of the Roman people (i.e. asked the Romans for help against the Germans and Sequani) ~nor received any from the Roman people in the struggles

I.XLIV.XIII.

DĒBĒRE SĒ SUSPICĀRĪ SIMULĀTĀ CÆSAREM AMĪCITIĀ,
QUOD EXERCITUM ÎN GALLIĀ HABEAT, SUĪ OPPRIMENDĪ
CAUSĀ HABĒRE.

"DEBEO SUSPICARI SIMULATA TE AMICITIA QUĒM
EXERCITUM ÎN GALLIA HABES MEI OPPRIMENDI CAUSA
HABERE."

Dēbēre^V sē suspicārī^{VI}

=that he ought to suspect ~he must feel suspicious

I **quās...habuissent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūsōs esse**. §410

III **ūtor**, **-ūsus**, **-ī**, DEP., to use, make use of, employ, profit by, take advantage of, enjoy, serve oneself with; To experience, undergo, receive, enjoy

IV **ipsōs...ūsōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. §580

VI **suspīcor**, **-ātus**, **-ārī**, DEP. (SPEC-), to mistrust, suspect

simulātā^I Cæsarem amicitia^{II}

=*that Cæsar, with friendship* ~*that Cæsar, though feigning*
 <*having been*> *feigned* *friendship*

quod exercitum in Galliā habeat^{III}

=*because he has an army in* ~*as the reason for his keeping*
Gaul *an army in Gaul*

suī opprimendī^{IV} v causā^{VI} [eum] habēre^{VII}

=*(Caesar) is holding (an army* ~*was keeping it with the view of*
there) for the sake of *crushing him*
overthrowing him

I.XLIV.XIV.

QUI NISI DĒCĒDAT ATQUE EXERCITUM DĒDŪCAT EX HĪS
 REGIONIBUS, SĒSĒ ILLUM NŌN PRŌ AMĪCŌ SED HOSTE
 HABITŪRUM.

"TU NISI DECEDES ATQUE EXERCITUM DEDUCES ... EGO
 TE NŌN PRO AMICO, SED PRO HOSTE HABEBO."

Qui^{VIII} nisi dēcēdat

=*who unless he (Cæsar) departs* ~*and that unless he depart*

I **simulō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (SIMILIS), to make like, imitate, copy, represent; To represent, feign, assume the appearance of, pretend, counterfeit, simulate

II **simulātā...amicitiā**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

III **quod...habeat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV **opprimō, -essī, -essus, -ere** (OB + PREMO), to press against, press together, press down, close; To overthrow, overwhelm, crush, overpower, prostrate, subdue

V **suī opprimendī**, GEN. OF THE GERUNDIVE WITH **causā**. §359^{II} & §504

VI ABL. OF CAUSE. §404

VII **Cæsarem...habēre**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **susplicari**. §580

atque exercitum dēdūcat^I ex hīs regionibus^{II}

=and (unless he) leads away ~and withdraw his army from
(his) army from these regions these regions

sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō sed [pro] hoste habitūrum [esse]^{III}

=that he would consider him, ~he shall regard him not as a
not as a friend, but [as] an friend, but as a foe
enemy

I.XLIV.XV.

QUOD SĪ EUM ĪTERFĒCERIT, MULTĪS SĒ NŌBILIBUS
PRĪNCIPIBUSQUE POPULĪ RŌMĀNĪ GRĀTUM ESSE
FACTŪRUM: ID SĒ AB IPSĪS PER EŌRUM NŪNTIŌS
COMPERTUM HABĒRE, QUŌRUM OMŔIUM GRĀTIAM
ATQUE AMĪCITIAM EIUS MORTE REDIMERE POSSET.

"QUOD SI TE ĪTERFECERO, MULTIS (EGO) NOBILIBUS ...
GRATUM ... FACIAM; ID (EGO) AB IPSIS ... COMPERTUM
HABEO QUORUM OMNIUM GRATIAM ... TUA MORTE
REDIMERE POSSUM."

Quod sī eum interfēcerit^{IV}

=as to which, if he should kill ~but, if he should put him to
him death

VIII A Relative is often used in Latin at the beginning of a Clause or Sentence where English idiom requires a Demonstrative, with or without a connective; as, *qua de causa, and for this reason, for this reason* (I.I); *qui...praelium committunt* (Historical Present), *they (or and they)...*joined battle (I.XV)

I **quī nisi dēcēdat...dēdūcat**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II **regiō, -ōnis**, F. (REG-), *a direction, line; A portion of country, territory, province, district, region*

III **sēsē...habitūrum**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **prædicāvit**. §580

IV **quod sī...interfēcerit**, FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

multis sē nōbilibus^I principibusque populi Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum^{II}

=he would do a favour for many nobles and leaders of the Roman people

~he should do what would please many of the nobles and leading men of the Roman people

id^{III} sē ab ipsis^{IV} per eōrum nūntiōs compertum^V habēre^{VI}

=that he has it, <having been> found out through their messengers from themselves

~he had assurance of that from themselves through their messengers

I **nōbilibus principibusque**, DAT. WITH ADJ. **grātum**. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ADJECTIVES (AND A FEW ADVERBS) OF FITNESS, NEARNESS, LIKENESS, SERVICE, INCLINATION, AND THEIR OPPOSITES. ADJECTIVES OF THIS KIND ARE ACCOMMODATUS, APTUS; INCLINATIO, INCLINATIO, INCLINATIO, INCLINATIO; IDONEUS, OPPORTUNUS, PROPRIUS; UTILIS, INUTILIS; AFFINIS, FINITIMUS, PROPINQUUS, VICINUS; PARS, DISPARS, SIMILIS, DISSIMILIS; IUCUNDUS, GRATUS; NOTUS, IGNOTUS, AND OTHERS. §384

II **sē...factūrum**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III the Neuter Singular and Neuter Plural of *hic, ille*, and *is* is frequently used with the meaning *this (thing), that (thing), it, these things, those things*; a Noun may sometimes be supplied in translation. Thus, *id quod, that which* (I.V); *Id eis persuasit, he persuaded them (to) that course* (I.II); *ilia esse vera, that those statements were true* (I.XX)

IV **ab ipsis**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

V **comperiō, -peri, -pertus, -ire** (COM + PERIO), *to obtain knowledge of, find out, ascertain, learn*

VI **sē...habēre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam eius morte^I redimere^{II} posset^{III}

=that the gratitude and ~and could purchase the favor
friendship of all whom, he was and the friendship of them all by
be able to buy back by his his [Cæsar's] death
(Cæsar's) death

I.XLIV.XVI.

QUOD SĪ DISCESSISSET ET LĪBERAM POSSESIŌNEM
GALLIÆ SIBI TRĀDIDISSET, MAGNŌ SĒ ILLUM PRÆMIŌ
REMŪNERĀTŪRUM ET QUÆCUMQUE BELLA GERĪ VELLE
SĪNE ŪLLŌ EIUS LABŌRE ET PERĪCULŌ CŌNNECTŪRUM.

"QUOD SI DISCESSERIS ET ... POSSESIŌNEM GALLIÆ MIHI
TRADIDERIS, MAGNO EGO TE PRÆMIO REMUNERABO, ET
QUÆCUMQUE BELLA GERI VOLES SĪNE ULLO TUO
LABORE ... CONFICIAM."

Quod sī discessisset

=as to which, if he should have ~but, if he would depart
departed

et liberam possesiōnem Galliæ sibi^{IV} trādidisset^{V VI}

=and (if) he should have handed ~and surrender to him the free
over to him the free possession possession of Gaul
of Gaul

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II **redimō, -ēmī, -ēmtus, -ere** (RED- + EMO), to buy back, repurchase, redeem

III **quōrum...posset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

IV DAT. WITH COMP. V. **trādidisset**. §370

V **trādō, didī, ditus, ere** (TRANS + DO), to give up, hand over, deliver, transmit, surrender, consign

VI **quod sī discessisset...trādidisset**, FUT. CONDITION IN INDIR. DISC. §589

magnō sē illum [Cæsarem] præmiō^I remūnerātūrum [esse]^{II III}

=*that he would remunerate him (Cæsar) with a great reward* ~*he would recompense him with a great reward*

et quæcumque bella gerī vellet^{IV V}

=*and whatever wars he (Cæsar) wished to be waged* ~*and whatever wars he wished to be carried on*

sine ūllō eius labōre^{VI} et perīculō^{VII} cōnfectūrum [esse]^{VIII IX}

=*that he would execute (those wars), without any labor or risk of him (Cæsar)* ~*would bring to a close without any trouble or risk on the part of Cæsar*

I ABL. OF MEANS. §409

II remūneror, -ātus, -ārī, DEP. (RE + MŪNEROR), to repay, reward, recompense, remunerate

III sē...remūnerātūrum, INDIR. DISC. §580

IV IMPERF. SUBJ. ACT. due to ōrātiō obliqua; translate as if in IMPERF. ACT. indic.

V quæcumque...vellet, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI labor, -ōris, M. (LAB-), labor, toil, exertion; Drudgery, hardship, fatigue, distress, trouble, pain, suffering

VII perīculum, -ī, N. (PAR-), a trial, experiment, attempt, test, proof, essay; Risk, hazard, danger, peril

VIII cōficiō, -fēcī, -fectus, -ere (COM- + FACIO), to make ready, make, prepare, bring about, complete, accomplish, execute, consummate, fulfil

IX INDIR. DISC. §580

I.XLV

CÆSAR DECLINES TO MAKE AN CONCESSIONS.

I.XLV.I.



ULTA AB CÆSARE ÌN EAM SENTENTIAM DICTA
SUNT QUARÈ NEGŌTIŌ DĒSISTERE NŌN
POSSET: NEQUE SUAM NEQUE POPULĪ
RŌMĀNĪ CŌNSUĒTUDĪNEM PATĪ UTĪ OPTIMĒ
MERITŌS SOCIŌS DĒSERERET, NEQUE SE IŪDICĀRE
GALLIAM POTIUS ESSE ARIOVISTI QUAM POPULĪ
RŌMĀNĪ.

"... NEQUE MEA NEQUE POPULI ROMANI CŌNSUETUDO
PATITUR UTI OPTIME MERITOS SOCIOS DESERAM, NEQUE
EGO IUDICO GALLIAM POTIUS ESSE ARIOVISTI QUAM
POPULI ROMANI."

Multa ab Cæsare^I in eam sententiam^{II} dicta sunt

=many things were said by Cæsar in this sentiment ~many things were stated by Cæsar to the effect [to show]

quarē^{III} negōtiō^{IV} dēsistere nōn posset

=(namely,) why he was not able to desist from business ~why he could not waive the business

I **ab Cæsare**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

II **sententiā, -ae**, F. (FROM SENTIO), a way of thinking, opinion, judgment, sentiment; a purpose, determination, decision, will, etc.

neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētudinem patī^I

=(and) that neither his own ~and that neither his nor the
(custom) nor the custom of the Roman people's practice would
Roman people permitted (him) suffer him

utī optimē meritōs sociōs dēsereret^{II III}

=that he should abandon (his) ~to abandon most meritorious
most meritorious allies allies

neque se iūdicāre^{IV}

=that nor is he judging ~nor did he deem

Galliam potius esse^V Ariovisti quam populī Rōmānī^{VI}

=that Gaul is of Ariovistus ~that Gaul belonged to
rather than of the Roman people Ariovistus rather than to the
Roman people

III **quārē...posset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

IV ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

I **cōnsuētudinem patī**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicta sunt**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

II **utī...dēsereret**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURPOSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

III **dēsēro, -rūi, -rtum, -ere** (DE + SĒRO), to undo or sever one's connection with another; hence, with esp. reference to the latter, to leave, forsake, abandon, desert, give up

IV **sē iudicāre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **Galliam...esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **iudicāre**. §580

I.XLV.II.

BELLŌ SUPERĀTŌS ESSE ARVERNŌS ET RUTĒNŌS AB Q. FABIO MAXIMŌ, QUIBUS POPULUS RŌMĀNUS IGNŌVISSET NEQUE ÌN PRŌVĪNCIAM REDĒGISSET NEQUE STĪPĒNDIUM IMPOSUISSET.

"BELLO SUPERATI SUNT ARVERNI ET RUTENI AB Q. FABIO MAXIMO, QUIBUS POPULUS ROMANUS IGNOVIT NEQUE ÌN PROVINCIAM REDEGIT NEQUE STIPENDIUM IMPOSUIT."

Bellŏ^I superātōs esse^{II} Arvernōs et Rutēnōs^{III} ab Q[uiñtō]^{IV} Fabiō^V Maximō^{VI VII}

=that the Arverni and the Ruteni ~that the Arverni and the Ruteni
had been overcome by war by had been subdued in war by
Q[uintus] Fabius Maximus Quintus Fabius Maximus

VI **Ariovisti...populī Rōmānī**, PRED. GEN. OF POSSESSION. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE DENOTES THE PERSON OR THING TO WHICH AN OBJECT, QUALITY, FEELING, OR ACTION BELONGS. NOTE 1. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE MAY DENOTE (1) THE ACTUAL OWNER (AS IN ALEXANDER'S DOG) OR AUTHOR (AS IN CICERO'S WRITINGS), OR (2) THE PERSON OR THING THAT POSSESSES SOME FEELING OR QUALITY OR DOES SOME ACT (AS IN CICERO'S ELOQUENCE, THE STRENGTH OF THE BRIDGE, CATILINE'S EVIL DEEDS). IN THE LATTER USE IT IS SOMETIMES CALLED THE 'SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE,' BUT THIS TERM PROPERLY INCLUDES THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE AND SEVERAL OTHER GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS (NEARLY ALL, IN FACT, EXCEPT THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE, §347). II. THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE OFTEN STANDS IN THE PREDICATE, CONNECTED WITH ITS NOUN BY A VERB (PREDICATE GENITIVE). §343^{II}

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **superātōs esse**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **dicta sunt**. §580

III **Rutēnī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a tribe on the borders of the province

IV **Quīntus, -ī**, M., As a Roman praenomen (orig. the fifth-son?)

V **Fabius, -ī**, M., a Roman gentile name—Esp. *Quinus Fabius Maximus* (Allobrogicus), who conquered the Arverni in B.C. 121 on the Rhone; *Gaius Fabius*, a legatus of Caesar in Gaul; *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion

VI **ab Q. Fabiō Maximō**, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

VII **Maximus, -ī**, M. (SUP. OF MAGNUS, AS NOUN), a Roman family name

quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset^{I II}

=(and) to whom (the Arverni ~and that the Roman people had
and the Ruteni) the Roman pardoned them
people had pardoned

neque [eōs] in prōvinciam^{III} redēgisset^{IV V}

=nor had (the Roman people) ~and had not reduced them into
reduced [them] into a province a province

neque stīpendium imposuisset^{VI}

=nor had (the Roman people) ~or imposed a tribute upon
imposed a tribute (upon them) them

I.XLV.III.

QUOD SĪ ANTĪQUISSIMUM QUODQUE TEMPUS SPECTĀRĪ
OPORTĒRET, POPULĪ ROMĀNĪ IŪSTISSIMUM ESSE ĪN
GALLIĀ IMPERIUM: SĪ IŪDICĪUM SENĀTŪS OBSERVĀRĪ
OPORTĒRET, LĪBERAM DĒBĒRE ESSE GALLIAM, QUAM
BELLŌ VICTAM SUĪS LĒGIBUS ŪTĪ VOLUISSET.

I **ignōscō, -nōvī, -nōtus, -ere** (IN + (G)NOSCO), to pardon, forgive, excuse, overlook, allow, indulge, make allowance

II **quibus...ignōvisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE; §583

III Forum Note: This probably just means that their territory had not been annexed by Rome in 121 BC and transformed into another transalpine province like Gallia Narbonensis, but that they had remained independent.

IV **redigō, -ēgī, -āctus, -ere** (RED- + AGO), to drive back, force back, lead back, bring back; To bring down, bring, reduce, force, compel, subdue

V **quibus...imposuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

VI **quibus...imposuisset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

"QUOD SI ANTĪQUISSIMUM QUODQUE TEMPUS SPECTARI OPORTET, POPULI ROMANI IUSTISSIMUM EST IN GALLIA IMPERIUM; SI IUDICIUM SENATUS OBSERVARI OPORTET, LIBERA DEBET ESSE GALLIA, QUAM BELLO VICTAM SUI LEGIBUS UTI VOLUERIT."

Quod sī antīquissimum quodque^I tempus^{II} spectārī oportēret^{III}

=<as to> which (but), if it ~and if the most ancient period
behooved each most ancient was to be regarded
time to be considered

populī Romānī iustissimum esse^{IV} in Galliā imperium

=(then) the empire of the Roman ~then was the sovereignty of the
people was the most just in Gaul Roman people in Gaul most iust

sī iudicium senātūs^V observārī^{VI} oportēret^{VII}

=if the it behooved the ~if the decree of the Senate was
judgement of the Senate to be to be observed
observed

I Sometimes the Indefinite Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, as, *each*, is used with a Superlative to designate a Class, or with a Numeral Ordinal to indicate a Proportion; thus, *nobilissimi cuiusque liberos*, the children of every man of high rank (I.XXXI); *decimum quemque militem*, one soldier in ten, Lit. *each tenth soldier* (V.LII)

II **antīquissimum quodque tempus**, SG. ACC., SUBJ. OF **spectārī**

III **quod sī...oportēret**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

IV APODOSIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

V **iudicium senātūs**, SG. ACC., SUBJ. OF **observārī**

VI **observō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (OB + SERVŌ), *to watch, note, heed, observe, take notice of, attend to*

VII **sī...oportēret**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

liberam dēbēre esse^I Galliam

=(then) Gaul ought to be free

~then ought Gaul to be free

quam bellō^{II} victam^{III} [populus Rōmānus] suīs lēgibus^{IV} ūtī^V
voluisset^{VI}

=(Gaul) which (although),
<having been> conquered by
war, [the Roman people] had
wished to employ its own laws

~which, although it had been
conquered, it had been about to
employ its own laws

I APODOSIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. §589

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III PPP. OF *vincō*

IV *suīs legibus*, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. *ūtī*. THE DEONENTS *ŪTOR*, *FRUOR*, *FUNGOR*, *POTIOR*, *VESCOR*, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

V PRES. INF. PASS. OF THE V. *ūtor*

VI *quam...voluisset*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

I.XLVI



THE CONFERENCE IS DISRUPTED BY AN ATTACK.



I.XLVII.



UM HÆC IN COLLOQUIŌ GERUNTUR, CÆSARĪ
NŪNTIĀTUM EST EQUITĒS ARIOVISTĪ
PROPIUS TUMULUM ACCĒDERE ET AD
NOSTRŌS ADEQUITĀRE, LAPIDĒS TĒLAQUE IN
NOSTRŌS COICERE.

Dum hæc in colloquiō geruntur

=while these things are being
transacted in the conference

~while these things are being
transacted in the conference

Cæsari nūntiātum est

=it was announced to Cæsar

~it was announced to Cæsar

equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum^I accēdere^{II}

=that the cavalry of Ariovistus
was approaching nearer the
mound

~that the cavalry of Ariovistus
were approaching nearer the
mound

I **propius**, TAKING ROLE OF A PRÆP. TO ACC. **tumulum**. CERTAIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES ARE SOMETIMES USED AS PREPOSITIONS; THE ADVERBS PRIDIĒ, POSTRIDIE, PROPIUS, PROXIMĒ, LESS FREQUENTLY THE ADJECTIVES PROPIOR AND PROXIMUS, MAY BE FOLLOWED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §432

II **equitēs...accēdere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum est**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

et ad nostrōs adequitāre^{I II}

=and that (they) were riding ~and were riding up to our men
towards our men

lapidēs^{III} tēlaque in nostros coicere^{IV V VI}

=(and) that (they) were throwing ~and casting stones and
stones and missiles at our men weapons at them

I.XLVII.II.

CÆSAR LOQUENDĪ FĪNEM FACIT SĒQUE AD SUŌS
RECĒPIT SUISQUE IMPERĀVIT NĒ QUOD OMNĪNŌ TĒLUM
IN HOSTĒS REICERENT.

Cæsar loquendī^{VII} finem facit

=Cæsar makes an end of ~Cæsar made an end of his
speaking speaking

sēque ad suōs recēpit

=and he took himself back to his ~and betook himself to his men
own men

suisque imperāvit

=and he ordered his own men ~and commanded them

I **ādēquīto, āvi, ātum, āre** (ĀD + ĒQUĪTO), WITH **ad.**, To ride to or toward a place, to gallop up to

II INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **nūntiātum est.** §580

III **lapis, -idis**, M., a stone

IV **lapidēs tēlaque...coicere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V ALT. FORM OF. **coniācio**

VI **coniācio, -iēci, -iactum, -ere**, To throw, cast, urge, drive, hurl, thrust, put, place

VII GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent^{I II}

=that they should not throw ~that they should by no means
back any projectile at all at the return a weapon upon the
enemy enemy

I.XLVI.III.

NAM ETSĪ SĪNE ŪLLŌ PERĪCULŌ LEGIŌNIS DĒLĒCTÆ
CUM EQUITĀTŪ PRĒLIUM FORE VIDĒBAT, TAMEN
COMMITTENDUM NON PUTĀBAT UT, PULSIS HOSTIBUS,
DĪCĪ POSSET EŌS AB SĒ PER FIDEM IN COLLOQUIŌ
CIRCUMVENTŌS.

Nam etsĭ^{III}

=for though

~for though

-
- I ***nē...reicerent***, NEG. SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563
- II ***rēiciō, -rēiēcī, -iectus, -ere*** (RE- + IACIO), *to throw back, fling back, hurl back*
- III ***etsĭ***, CONJ. (ET + SĪ), *Introducing a concession, though, although, albeit*

sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae^{I II} cum equitatū proelium fore^{III}
 =that there would be a battle ~that an engagement with the
 with the cavalry without any cavalry would be without any
 danger of (to) (his) chosen danger to his chosen legion
 legion

vidēbat

=he saw

~he was seeing

tamen

=nonetheless

~yet

committendum [esse]^{IV}

=that it was <having> to be ~that he ought to fight
 brought together in a contest (by
 him)

non putābat

=he did not think

~he did not think

ut

=that

~lest

pulsis hostibus^V

=with the enemy <having been> ~after the enemy were routed
 repulsed

I SG. GEN. PPP. *dēligō*

II *legiōnis dēlēctae*, OBJ. GEN. NOUNS OF ACTION, AGENCY, AND FEELING GOVERN THE GENITIVE OF THE OBJECT. NOTE. THIS USAGE IS AN EXTENSION OF THE IDEA OF BELONGING TO (POSSESSIVE GENITIVE). THUS IN THE PHRASE *ODIUM CÆSARIS*, HATE OF CÆSAR, THE HATE IN A PASSIVE SENSE BELONGS TO CÆSAR, AS *ODIUM*, THOUGH IN ITS ACTIVE SENSE HE IS THE OBJECT OF IT, AS HATE. THE DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE POSSESSIVE (SUBJECTIVE) AND THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE IS VERY UNSTABLE AND IS OFTEN LOST SIGHT OF. IT IS ILLUSTRATED BY THE FOLLOWING EXAMPLE: THE PHRASE *AMOR PATRIS*, LOVE OF A FATHER, MAY MEAN LOVE FELT BY A FATHER, A FATHER'S LOVE (SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE), OR LOVE TOWARDS A FATHER (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). §348

III *proelium fore*, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON *vidēbat*. §580

IV FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN INDIR. DISC. (SEE CHART §196) & §580

dīcī posset^I

=it might be able to be said

~it might be said

eōs ab sē^{II} per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs [esse]

=that those men were encircled by him (Cæsar) through the (misplaced) faith (in him) in the conference ~that they had been deceived by him under the pretence of faith in a conference

I.XLVI.IV.

POSTEĀQUAM IN VULGUS MĪLITUM ĒLĀTUM EST QUĀ ARROGANTIĀ IN COLLOQUIŌ ARIOVISTUS ŪSUS OMNĪ GALLIĀ RŌMĀNĪS INTERDIXISSET, IMPETUMQUE IN NOSTRŌS EIUS EQUITĒS FĒCISSENT, EAQUE RES COLLOQUIUM UT DIRĒMISSET, MULTŌ MAIOR ALACRITĀS STUDIUMQUE PUGNANDĪ MAIUS EXERCITUĪ INIECTUM EST.

Posteā^{III} quam in vulgus militum ēlātum est

=after that, it was carried out among the multitude of soldiers

~when it was spread abroad among the common soldiery

V **pulsis hostibus**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

I **ut...posset**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NE) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

II **ab sē**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

III **posteā** (OR **post eā**) ADV., after this, after that, hereafter, thereafter, afterwards, later; WITH **quam**, after that

quā arrogantia^{IV} in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omni Gallia^V
Rōmānīs^{VI} interdixisset^{VII VIII}

=with which haughtiness ~with what haughtiness
Ariovistus employed in the Ariovistus had behaved at the
conference, (and how) he had conference, and how he had
forbidden the Romans from all ordered the Romans to quit Gaul
Gaul

impetumque in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent^{VI}

=and (how) his cavalry had ~and how his cavalry had made
made an attack against our men an attack upon our men

eaque res colloquium ut^{VII} dirēmisset^{VIII IX}

=and (how) this thing had ~and how this had broken off
broken off the conference the conference

IV **quā arrogantia**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūsus**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

V **omni Gallia**, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

VI DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). THE DATIVE IN THIS CONSTRUCTION IS OFTEN CALLED THE DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE OR DISADVANTAGE, AS DENOTING THE PERSON OR THING FOR WHOSE BENEFIT OR TO WHOSE PREJUDICE THE ACTION IS PERFORMED. §376

VII **interdicō, -dixi, -dictus, -ere** (INTER + DICO), to interpose by speaking, forbid, prohibit, interdict

VIII **quā arrogantia...interdixisset**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

VI **ut...fēcissent, ut** = how, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

VII **ut** (or **uti**), AS ADV. OF MANNER. INTERROG. (= *quomodo*), how, in what way or manner

VIII **dirimō, -ēmī, -ēemptus, -ere** (DIS- + EMO), to take apart, part, separate, divide, cut off; Fig., to break off, interrupt, disturb, put off, delay

IX **ut...dirēmisset, ut** = how, INDIR. QUESTION. §573

multō^I maior alacritās^{II} studiumque pugnandī^{III} maius exercituī^{IV}
iniectum est^V

=*by much, a greater alacrity and
a greater zeal of fighting was
cast on to (our) army*

~*a much greater alacrity and
eagerness for fighting was
infused into our army*

I ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

II **alacritās, -ātis**, F. (ALACER), *liveliness, ardor, eagerness, alacrity, cheerfulness, encouragement*

III GEN. OF THE GERUND. §504

IV DAT. OF REF. §376

V **iniciō, iēcī, iectus, -ere** (IN + IACIO), *to throw in, put in, hurl upon, put on, cast on, set into; Fig., to bring into, inspire, suggest, impress, infuse, occasion, cause*

I.XLVII



ARIOVISTUS REOPENS NEGOTIATIONS.



I.XLVIII.



ĪDUŌ POST ARIOVISTUS AD CÆSAREM
LĒGĀTŌS MITTIT: VELLE SĒ DĒ EĪS RĒBUS
QUÆ ĪNTER EŌS AGĪ CĒPTÆ NEQUĒ
PERFECTÆ ESSĒNT AGERE CUM EŌ: UTĪ AUT
ITERUM COLLOQUĪŌ DIEM CŌNSTITUĒRET AUT, SĪ ID
MĪNUS VELLE, E SUIIS LĒGĀTĪS ALIQUĒM AD SĒ
MITTERET.

Bīduō post^I Ariovistus ad Cæsarem lĕgātōs mittit

=later by two days, Ariovistus ~two days after, Ariovistus
sends ambassadors to Cæsar sends ambassadors to Cæsar

[dixit] velle^{II} sĕ dĕ eĭs rĕbus

=[he said] that he wished /to ~to state that he wished about
deliberate with that man/ about those matters
those things

I **bīduō post**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **velle sĕ**, INDIR. DISC. IMPLIED FROM **lĕgātōs mīsīt**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

quæ inter eōs agī cœptæ [essent]^I

=(those things) which had been begun to be deliberated between those men ~which had been begun to be treated of between them

agere cum eō

=to deliberate with him ~to treat with him

neque perfectæ essent

=and had not been concluded ~but had not been concluded

[et rogāvit] utī aut iterum colloquiō^{II} diem cōstitueret

=[and he asked] that he would either again set a day for a conference ~[and to beg] that he would either again appoint a day for a conference

aut

=or ~or

sī id minus [facere] vellet^{III}

=if he less wished [to do] that ~if he were not willing to do that

I **quæ...cœptæ...perfectæ essent**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

II DAT. OF PURP. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

III **sī...vellet**, PROTASIS OF SIMPLE PRES. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

e suis^I *lēgātīs* aliquem ad sē mitteret^{II}

=that he would send one from ~that he would send one of his
his own officers (as an [officers] as an ambassador to
ambassador) to him him

I.XLVII.II.

COLLOQUENDĪ CÆSARĪ CAUSA VĪSA NŌN EST, ET EŌ
MAGIS QUOD PRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒĪ GERMĀNĪ RETĪNĒRĪ NŌN
POTERĀNT QUĪN IN NOSTRŌS TĒLA COICERĒNT.

Colloquendī^{III} Cæsari causa vīsa nōn est

=it did not seem to Cæsar (a ~there did not appear to Cæsar
good) cause of talking any good reason for holding a
conference

et eō magis^{IV} quod prīdiē eius diē^V Germānī retinērī nōn poterant

=and on this account, the more ~and the more so as on the
because on the day before of this previous day, the Germans could
day, the Germans were not able not be restrained
to be restrained

I Sometimes *de* or *ex* is used with the Ablative instead of the Genitive of the Whole; so regularly with *quidam* and words referring to Number. Thus, *quidam ex his*, *some of these* (II.XVII); *pauci de nostris*, *a few of our men* (I.XV)

II FORUM NOTE: I think that *legati* are technically just officers in a high position who are often used as ambassadors. So *e suis legatis aliquem* is here made one of his officers, and as an ambassador is added to clarify for English readers who are unaware that in Roman times these officers were used as ambassadors.

III GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504

IV *eō magis*, ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

V *prīdiē eius diē*, ablative of time. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

quīn^I in nostrōs tēla coicerent^{II}

=that they would not cast ~from casting weapons at our
projectiles at our men men

I.XLVII.III.

LĒGĀTUM E SUIS SĒSĒ MAGNŌ CUM PERĪCULŌ AD EUM
MISSŪRUM ET HOMĪNIBUS FERĪS OBIECTŪRUM
EXĪSTIMĀBAT.

Lēgātum [e suis] sēsē magnō cum perīculō^{III} ad eum missūrum
[esse]

=that he would to send an envoy ~he should not without great
[from his own (officers)] (as an danger send to him as
envoy) with great danger to him ambassador one of his [Roman]
officers

et hominibus ferīs ^{IV}obiectūrum [esse]^V

=and would throw (him) to ~and should expose him to
savage men savage men

I Substantive Clauses with the Subjunctive introduced by *ne*, *that not*, *quo minus*, *that not* (Lit. *by which the less*), and *quīn*, *that not*, are used after Verbs of Hindering, Preventing, and Refusing; the Conjunction often may best be rendered by *from* with a Participle. Thus, *hos...detertere ne frumentum conferant*, *these through fear were holding back (the people) from furnishing the grain* (I.XVII); *retineri non potuerant quīn...tela conicerent*, *could not be restrained from hurling darts* (I.XLVII)

II **quīn...conicerent**, **quīn** CLAUSE. A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE WITH QUĪN IS USED AFTER VERBS AND OTHER EXPRESSIONS OF HINDERING, RESISTING, REFUSING, DOUBTING, DELAYING, AND THE LIKE, WHEN THESE ARE NEGATIVED, EITHER EXPRESSLY OR BY IMPLICATION. §558

III **magnō cum perīculō**, abl. of manner. THE MANNER OF AN ACTION IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE; USUALLY WITH CUM, UNLESS A LIMITING ADJECTIVE IS USED WITH THE NOUN. §412

IV **hominibus ferīs**, dat. with comp. v. **obiectūrum**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

V **missūrum...obiectūrum**, indir. disc. dependent on **exīstimābat**. §580

existimābat

=he thought

~he thought

I.XLVII.IV.

COMMODISSIMUM VĪSUM EST C. VALERIUM PROCILLUM, C. VALERĪ CABŪRĪ FĪLIUM, SUMMĀ VIRTŪTE ET HŪMĀNITĀTE ADULĒSCENTEM, CUIUS PATER Ā C. VALERIO FLACCŌ CĪVITĀTE DŌNĀTUS ERAT, ET PROPTER FIDEM ET PROPTER LĪNGUĀE GALLICĀE SCIĒNTIAM, QUĀ MULTĀ IAM ARIOVISTUS LONGĪNQUĀ CŌNSUĒTŪDĪNE ŪTĒBĀTUR, ET QUOD ĪN EŌ PECCANDĪ GERMĀNĪS CAUSA NŌN ESSET, AD EŪM MITTERE, ET M. MĒTTIUM, QŪI HOSPITIŌ ARIOVISTĪ ŪTĒBĀTUR.

Commodissimum vīsum est

=(therefore) it seemed most proper

~[therefore] it seemed most proper

C[āiūm] Valerium Procillum, C[āiī] Valerī Cabūrī^I filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte^{II} adulēscēntem

=Caius Valerius Procillus, the son of Caius Valerius Caburus, an adolescent with the highest courage and refinement

~C. Valerius Procillus, the son of C. Valerius Caburus, a young man of the highest courage and accomplishments

I **Caburus, -ī**, m., the personal name of *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul, made a Roman Citizen by C. Valerius Flaccus, and father of C. Valerius Procillus and C. Valerius Donnotaurus

II **summā virtūte et hūmānitāte**, ABL. OF QUALITY. THE QUALITY OF A THING IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AN ADJECTIVE OR GENITIVE MODIFIER. THIS IS CALLED THE DESCRIPTIVE ABLATIVE OR ABLATIVE OF QUALITY. §415

cuius pater ā C[aiō] Valeriō Flaccō^{I II} cīvitatē^{III} dōnātus erat^{IV}

=of whose father had been ~whose father had been
presented with citizenship by presented with the freedom of
C[aius] Valerius Flaccus the city by C. Valerius Flaccus

et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicæ scientiam^V

=both on account of (his) fidelity ~both on account of his fidelity
and on account of (his) and on account of his knowledge
knowledge of the Gallic of the Gallic language
language

quā multā^{VI} iam Ariovistus longinquā^{VII} cōnsuētūdine^{VIII} ūtēbātur

=with which Ariovistus, by long ~which Ariovistus, by long
custom, was now making use of practice, now employed fluently
by much

I **ā C. Valeriō Flaccō**, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH Ā OR AB. §405

II **Flaccus, -ī**, M., a Roman name, see Valerius

III TAKES ACC. OF THE PERSON & ABL. OF THE THING. CERTAIN VERBS MAY TAKE EITHER THE DATIVE OF THE PERSON AND THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE THING, OR (IN A DIFFERENT SENSE) THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE PERSON AND THE ABLATIVE OF THE THING. SUCH ARE DŌNŌ, IMPERTIŌ, INDUŌ, EXUŌ, ADSPERGŌ, INSPERGŌ, CIRCUMDŌ, AND IN POETRY ACCINGŌ, IMPLICŌ, AND SIMILAR VERBS. §364

IV **dōnŏ, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DONUM), To give as a present, present, bestow, grant, vouchsafe, confer

V **scientia, -æ**, F. (SCIENS), a knowing, knowledge, science

VI **quā multā**, ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **ūtēbātur**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410

VII **longinquus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. (LONGUS), far removed, far off, remote, distant; Long, of long duration, prolonged, lasting, continued, tedious

VIII **longinquā cōnsuētūdine**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

et quod in eō peccandī^I II Germānīs^{III} causa nōn esset^{IV}

=and because there was not a ~and because in his case the
cause of doing amiss to the Germans would have no motive
Germans in him for committing violence

ad eum mittere^V

=to send to him ~to send to him

et M[arcum] Mēttium^{VI} quī hospitio^{VII} Ariovistī ūtēbātur

=and (as his colleague) M[arcus] ~and [as his colleague] M.
Mettius, who was enjoyed the Mettius, who had enjoyed the
hospitality of Ariovistus hospitality of Ariovistus

I.XLVII.V.

Hīs MANDAVIT UT QUÆ DĪCERET ARIOVISTUS
COGNŌSCERENT ET AD SĒ REFERRENT.

His mandāvit

=he orders those men ~he commissioned them

ut

=that ~that

I **peccō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (PIK-, to be angry of), to miss, mistake, do amiss, transgress, commit a fault, offend, sin

II GEN. OF THE GERUND. §504

III DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. §373

IV **quod...esset**, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. THE CAUSAL PARTICLES QUOD AND QUIA TAKE THE INDICATIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF THE WRITER OR SPEAKER; THE SUBJUNCTIVE, WHEN THE REASON IS GIVEN ON THE AUTHORITY OF ANOTHER. §540 & A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE MERELY EXPLANATORY, OR CONTAINING STATEMENTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS TRUE INDEPENDENTLY OF THE QUOTATION, TAKES THE INDICATIVE. §583

V GRAMMATICALLY, THE SUBJ. NOM. OF **vīsum est**

VI **Mēttius, -i, m.**, a Gaul in relations of hospitality with Ariovistus

VII **hospitiō**, ABL. OF SPECIAL V. **ūtēbātur**. §410

quæ diceret^I Ariovistus

=*what (things) Ariovistus said* ~*what Ariovistus had to say*

cognōscerent^{II}

=*they should learn* ~*to learn*

et ad sē referrent^{III}

=*and that they should report* ~*and to report to him*
back to him (Cæsar)

I.XLVII.VI.

QUŌS CUM APUD SĒ IN CASTRĪS ARIOVISTUS
CŌNSPEXISSET, EXERCITŪ SUŌ PRÆSENTE
CONCLĀMĀVIT: QUID AD SĒ VENĪRENT?

Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset^{IV}

=*(but) when (those men) whom* ~*but when Ariovistus saw them*
Ariovistus had observed, among ~*before him in his camp*
himself, in the camp

exercitū suō præsente^V

=*with his own army <being>* ~*in the presence of his army*
present

conclāmāvit

=*he (Ariovistus) cried out* ~*he cried out*

I *quæ diceret*, SUBORDINATE CLAUSE IN INDIR. DISC. §583

II *ut...cognōscerent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. §563

III *ut...referrent*, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. §563

IV *cum...cōnspexisset*, *cum* CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V *exercitū suō præsente*, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

Quid^I ad sē venīrent^{II}

=*why should they come to him* ~*why were they come to him?*

I.XLVII.VII.

AN SPECULANDĪ CAUSĀ?

An^{III} speculandī^{IV} v causā

=*or for the sake of spying* ~*was it perhaps for the purpose of acting as spies?*

I.XLVII.VIII.

CŌNANTĒS DĪCERE PROHIBUIT ET IN CATĒNĀS COIĒCIT.

Cōnantēs^{VI} [eos] dīcere prohibuit

=*he prohibited [those men] (when they were) attempting to speak* ~*he stopped them when they were attempting to speak*

I **quis, quid**, PRON. INTERROG. (CA-), NEUT., *what, what thing?; TRANSF. Quid? how? why? wherefore?*

II **quid...venīrent**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

III The first part of the interrogation is freq. not expressed, but is to be supplied from the context; in this case, an begins the interrog., *or, or rather, or indeed, or perhaps* (but it does not begin an absolute, i.e. not disjunctive, interrog.)

IV GEN. OF THE GERUND WITH **causā**. §504

V **speculor, -ātus, -ārī**, DEP. (SPECULA), *to spy out, watch, observe, examine, explore*

VI A Participle is often used to express concisely an idea which might have been expanded into a Clause, particularly an idea of Cause, Condition, Opposition, Characterization, or Description. Thus *conantes: when they were attempting* (I.XLVII)

et in catēnās^I [eos] coiēcīt

=and he threw together [those ~and cast them into chains
men] into chains

I **catēna, -æ**, F. (CAT-), *a chain, fetter, shackle*

I.XLVIII

ARIORISTUS MOVES CAMP.

I.XLVIII.I.



ÖDEM DIË CASTRA PRÖMÖVIT ET MĪLIBUS
PASSUUM SEX Ā CÆSARIS CASTRĪS SUB MONTE
CÖNSĒDIT.

Eödem diē^I castra prömōvit^{II}

=on the same day he moved the
camp forward

~the same day he moved his
camp forward

et mīlibus^{III} passuum sex ā Cæsaris castrīs^{IV} sub monte cōnsēdit

=and he settled under the foot of
a hill by six thousands of paces
from the camp of Cæsar

~and encamped under a hill six
miles from Cæsar's camp

I **eödem diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

II **prömoveö, -mövi, -mötus, -ëre** (PRO + MOVEO), to move forward, cause to advance, push onward, advance

III ABL. DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

IV **ā castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

I.XLVIII.II.

POSTRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒI PRÆTER CASTRA CÆSARIS SUĀS
COPIĀS TRĀDŪXIT ET MĪLIBUS PASSUUM DUŌBUS ULTRĀ
EUM CASTRA FĒCIT, EŌ CŌNSILIŌ UTĪ FRŪMENTŌ
COMMEĀTŪQUE QUI EX SĒQUANĪS ET ÆDUĪS
SUPPORTĀRĒTUR CÆSAREM ÎTERCLŪDERET.

Postrīdiē eius diē^I præter castra Cæsaris suās copiās trādūxit

=on the day after of this day, he ~the day following he led his
led his own troops past the forces past Cæsar's camp
camp of Cæsar

et mīlibus^{II} passuum duōbus ultrā^{III} eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō^{IV}

=and he made a camp beyond ~and encamped two miles
him, by two thousand of paces, beyond him with this design
with this plan

utī^V

=[namely,] in order that ~that

frūmentō commeātūque^{VI}

=from the corn and provisions ~from the corn and provisions

I **postrīdiē eius diēi**, abl. of time. §423

II **ABL. DEG. OF DIF.** §414

III **ultrā**, ADV., *on the other side*; Of time or degree, *beyond, farther, over, more, besides, in addition*

IV **eō cōnsiliō**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

V Clauses of Purpose are most often introduced by *ut, uti, in order that, that, or nē, in order that not, lest*, and have their Verb in the Subjunctive

VI **frūmentō commeātūque**, ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

qui^{VII} ex Sēquanīs et Æduīs supportārētur^{VIII}

=which were being furnished ~which might be conveyed to
from the Sequani and the Ædui him from the Sequani and the
Ædui

Cæsarem interclūderet^{III}

=he might shut out Cæsar ~he might cut off Cæsar

I.XLVIII.III.

EX EŌ DIĒ DIĒS CONTĪNUŌS QUĪNQUE CÆSAR PRŌ
CASTRĪS SUĀS CŌPIĀS PRŌDŪXIT ET ACIEM ĪNSTRŪCTAM
HABUIT, UT, SĪ VELLET ARIOVISTUS PRĒLIŌ
CONTĒNDERE, EĪ POTESTĀS NŌN DEESSET.

Ex eō diē diēs continuōs^{IV} quīnque Cæsar prō castrīs^V suās cōpiās
prōdūxit

=from that day, for five ~for five successive days from
continous days, Cæsar led forth that day, Cæsar drew out his
his own troops before the camp forces before the camp

VII A Relative referring to two or more Antecedents of different Gender or Number may agree with the nearest Antecedent, or be Masculine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a man, Feminine Plural in case one Antecedent denotes a woman and the others things, or Neuter Plural in case only things are denoted; thus, *frumento* (NEUT.) *commeatuque, qui* (M., sg.), *grain and (other) supplies which...* (I.XLVIII)

VIII **quī...supportārētur**, SUBJUNCTIVE OF INTEGRAL PART, OR ATTRACTION. A CLAUSE DEPENDING UPON A SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE OR AN EQUIVALENT INFINITIVE WILL ITSELF TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE IF REGARDED AS AN INTEGRAL PART OF THAT CLAUSE. §593

III **utī...interclūderet**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF PURP. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

IV **continuus, -a, -um**, ADJ. (COM- + TA-), *joining, connecting, uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken*; Fig., of time, successive, continuous

V ABL. OF MEANS. §409

et aciem īnstrūctam habuit

=and he inserted a battle line

~and he had a battle line drawn up

ut

=<in order> that

~that

sī vellet^I Ariovistus praeliō^{II} contendere

=if Ariovistus is wished to engage in a battle

~if Ariovistus should be willing to engage in battle

eī^{III} potestās nōn deesset^{IV}

=an opportunity might not be absent for him

~an opportunity might not be wanting to him

I.XLVIII.IV.

ARIOVISTUS Hīs OMNIBUS DIēBUS EXERCITUM CASTRīs CONTĪNUIT, EQUESTRī PRĒLIŌ COTĪDIē CONTENDIT.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus^V exercitum castrīs continuit

=Ariovistus, in all those days, held (his) army in the camp

~Ariovistus all this time kept his army in camp

I ***sī...vellet***, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. § 592

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III DAT. OF POSSESSION. THE DATIVE IS USED WITH ESSE AND SIMILAR WORDS TO DENOTE POSSESSION. II. DESUM TAKES THE DATIVE; SO OCCASIONALLY ABSUM (WHICH REGULARLY HAS THE ABLATIVE). §373^{II}

IV ***ut...nōn deesset***, CLAUSE OF PURP. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. § 531

V ***hīs omnibus diēbus***, ABL. OF DUR. OF TIME. SPECIAL CONSTRUCTIONS OF TIME ARE THE FOLLOWING: DURATION OF TIME IS OCCASIONALLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE. §424^{II}

equestrī prœliō^I cotidiē contendit

=(but) he contended in daily battle of cavalry ~but engaged daily in cavalry skirmishes

I.XLVIII.V.

GENUS HOC ERAT PUGNÆ, QUO SĒ GERMĀNĪ
EXERCUERANT.

Genus^{II} hoc erat pugnæ

=the kind of battle // was this ~the method of battle // was this

quō sĒ Germānī exercuerant^{III}

=in which the Germans had trained themselves ~in which the Germans had trained themselves

I.XLVIII.VI.

EQUITUM MĪLIA ERANT SEX, TOTIDEM NŪMERŌ PEDITES
VĒLŌCISSIMĪ AC FORTISSIMĪ, QUŌS EX OMNĪ CŌPIĀ
SĪNGULĪ SĪNGULŌS SUÆ SALŪTIS CAUSĀ DĒLĒGERANT;
CUM HĪS ĪN PRĒLIĪS VERSĀBANTUR.

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **genus, -eris**, N. (GEN-), a race, stock, family, birth, descent, origin; Of things, a kind, sort, description, class, order, character, division

III **exerceō, -uī, -itus, -ēre** (EX + ARCEO), to drive, keep busy, keep at work, oversee, work, agitate; Fig., to engage busily, occupy, employ, exercise, train, discipline

Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem^I numero^{II} pedites v̄lōcissimī^{III} ac fortissimī

=there were six thousands of horse, (and) just as many in number very swift and very courageous foot soldiers
~there were 6,000 horse, and just as many very swift and courageous foot

quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī^{IV} singulōs suæ salūtis^V causā dēlēgerant

=(the foot soldiers,) one of each whom, (the cavalry,) one at a time, had chosen out from all the troops for the sake of their own safety
~one of whom each of the horse selected out of the whole army for his own preservation

cum hīs in prœliis versābantur^{VI}

=they were engaged with these (foot soldiers) in battles
~by these [foot] they were constantly accompanied in their engagements

I **totidem**, ADJ. NUM INDECL. (TOT + DEM), *just so many, just as many, the same number of*

II ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

III **v̄lōx**, **-ōcis**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (VOL-), *swift, quick, fleet, rapid, speedy*

IV PL. M. NOM. OF *singulus*

V **suæ salūtis**, GEN. WITH **causā**. PECULIAR GENITIVE CONSTRUCTIONS ARE THE FOLLOWING: THE GENITIVE IS OFTEN USED WITH THE ABLATIVES **CAUSĀ**, **GRĀTIĀ**, FOR THE SAKE OF; **ERGŌ**, BECAUSE OF; AND THE INDECLINABLE **INSTAR**, LIKE; ALSO WITH **PRIDIĒ**, THE DAY BEFORE; **POSTRIDĒ**, THE DAY AFTER; **TENUS**, AS FAR AS. §359

VI **versō**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, **-āre** (VERTO), *to turn often, keep turning, handle, whirl about, turn over; In gen., to be; to be circumstanced or situated; In partic., to occupy or busy one's self with any action, to be engaged in any thing*

I.XLVIII.VII.

AD EŌS SĒ EQUITĒS RECIPIĒBANT: HĪ, SĪ QUID ERAT
DŪRIUS, CONCURREBANT; SĪ QUĪ GRAVIŌRE VULNERE
ACCEPTŌ EQUŌ DĒCIDERAT, CIRCŪMSISTĒBANT; SĪ QUŌ
ERAT LONGIUS PRŌDEUNDUM AUT CELERIUS
RECIPIENDUM, TANTA ERAT HŌRUM EXERCITATIŌNE
CELERITĀS UT IUBĪS EQUŌRUM SUBLEVĀTĪ CURSUM
ADÆQUĀRENT.

Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant

=to these men (i.e. the foot soldiers) the horse were taking
back themselves ~to these the horse retired

hī

=these men (horse men) ~these

sī quid erat dūrius^{I II}

=if anything was more hard ~on any emergency

concurrēbant^{III IV}

=they ran together ~rushed together in hostility

sī quī

=if any one ~if any one

I SG. NEUT. PRED. NOM. COMP. *dūrus*

II *dūrus, -a, -um*, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP., *hard* (to the touch); PL. N. AS SUBST., *hardships, difficulties*

III *sī...erat...concurrēbat*, SIMPLE PAST COND. (SEE CHART §514)

IV *concurrō, -currī, -cursus, -ere* (CON + CURRŌ), *to run together, assemble, flock together*; In partic. MILIT., *to rush together in hostility, to engage in combat, to join battle, to fight*

graviōre vulnere acceptō^v

=with a very grave wound ~upon receiving a very severe
<having been> received wound

equōⁱⁱ dēcideratⁱⁱⁱ

=should fall from (his) horse ~had fallen from his horse

[eum] circumsistēbant^{iv v}

=they stood around [him] ~they stood around him

sī quō^{vi vii} erat longius [sibi] prōdeundum^{viii}

=if it was <having> to be advanced more far (than usual) to anywhere [by him] ~if they needed to advance somewhat further than usual to any place

aut celerius recipiendum [erat]^{ix}

=or (if) it was <having> to be taken back more quickly (by them) ~or if they had to retreat more rapidly

V **graviōre vulnere acceptō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

III **dēcidō, cidi, —, -ere** (DE + CADO), to fall down, fall off, fall away

IV **sī...dēciderat...circumsistēbant**, SIMPLE PAST COND. (SEE CHART §514)

V **circumsistō, -stetī, -status, -ere** (CIRCUM + SISTŌ), to take one's stand around, surround, stand around

VI FORUM NOTE: I'd interpret *quo* as meaning *to where*. Remember that after *si, nisi, num, ne* (and a few other things), *quis, quid, quando, quot, quotiens, quo*, and any of those types of words, are indefinite (*si quis* = if anyone, *si quid* = if anything, *si quando* = if at some time, etc.) so, *si quo erat longius prōdeundum* as, if they needed to advance somewhat far(ther than usual) to anywhere

VII **quō**, ADV. AND CONJ. DAT. AND ABL. (OF *qui*), LOCAT. AND ABL. USES, of place, where, in what place, in what situation; INDEF., AFTER **si** or **ne**, any whither, to any place, in any direction

VIII SEE V. *eō*

IX **sī...erat...prōdeundum...recipiendum...erat**, FUT. PASS. PERIPHRASTIC IN SIMPLE PAST COND. (SEE CHART §196) & (SEE CHART §514)

tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne^I celeritās^{II}

=the swiftness of these men (foot soldiers) was so great from practice, was (because) of (their) training ~so great, from practice, was their swiftness

ut iubīs^{III} ^{IV} equōrum sublevātī cursum^V adæquārent^{VI} ^{VII}

=that, (the men,) <having been> supported by the manes of the horses, they could keep pace with their speed ~that, supported by the manes of the horses, they could keep pace with their speed

I ABL. OF MEANS, §409

II **celeritās, -ātis**, F. (CELER), swiftness, quickness, speed, celerity

III ABL. OF MEANS, §409

IV **iūba, -æ**, F., the flowing hair on the neck of an animal, the mane

V **cursus, -ūs**, M. (CEL-), a running, course, way, march, passage, voyage, journey

VI **ut...adæquārent**, CLAUSE OF RES. §536

VII **adæquō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (AD + ÆQUO), to make equal, equalize, level with

I.XLIX

CAESAR FORTIFIES A CAMP BEYOND ARIOVISTUS.

I.XLIX.I.



BI EUM CASTRIS SE TENERE CAESAR
INTELLĒXIT, NE DIUTIUS COMMEATU
PROHIBERETUR, ULTRA EUM LOCUM, QUO IN
LOCO GERMANI CONSEDERANT, CIRCITER
PASSUS SESCENTOS AB HIS, CASTRIS IDONEUM LOCUM
DELEGIT ACIEQUE TRIPLICI INSTRUCTA AD EUM LOCUM
VENIT.

Vbi

=when

~when

eum castris^I se tenere

=that he (Ariovistus) held
himself in the camp

~that Ariovistus kept himself in
camp

Cæsar intellēxit^{II}

=Cæsar understood

~Cæsar perceiving

I ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

II **eum...tenere**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellēxit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

nē diutius commeātū^{III} prohibērētur^{IV}

=<in order> that he might not be held back any longer from provisions ~so that he might not any longer be cut off from provisions

ultrā eum locum

=beyond that place

~beyond that place

quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant

=in which place the Germans had settled ~where the Germans had encamped

circiter passūs sescentōs ab hīs, castrīs^{III} idoneum^{IV} locum dēlēgit

=he chose an ideal place for the camp /beyond that place/ /in which the Germans had settled/ around six-hundred of paces from those men ~chose a convenient position for a camp // at about 600 paces from them

aciēque triplici īnstrūctā^V ad eum locum vēnit

=and with a triple battle line <having been> inserted, he came to that place ~and having drawn up his army in three lines, marched to that place

III ABL. OF SEPAR. WORDS SIGNIFYING SEPARATION OR PRIVATION ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. §400

IV *nē...prohibērētur*, NEG. CLAUSE OF PURP. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UT) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

III DAT. OF PURP. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

IV *idōneus*, -a, -um, ADJ., fit, meet, proper, becoming, suitable, apt, capable, convenient, sufficient

V *aciēque triplici īnstrūctā*, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

I.XLIX.II.

PRĪMAM ET SECUNDAM ACIEM IN ARMĪS ESSE, TERTIAM
CASTRA MŪNĪRE IUSSIT.

Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse^I

=*the first and second battle line* ~*the first and second lines to be
to be in arms* *under arms*

tertiam castra mūnīre^{II}

=(*and he ordered*) *the third to* ~*the third to fortify the camp
fortify the camp*

iussit

=*he (Cæsar) ordered* ~*he ordered*

[Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs

=*this place // around six-* ~*this place // from the enemy
hundred of paces from the* *about 600 paces*
enemy

utī dictum est

=(*this place*) *as has been said* ~*as has been stated*

aberat]

=*was away* ~*was distant*

I.XLIX.III.

EŌ CIRCITER HOMĪNŪM NUMERO SĒDECIM MĪLIA
EXPEDITA CŪM OMNĪ EQUITATŪ ARIOVISTUS MĪSIT,
QUÆ CŌPLÆ NOSTRŌS PERTERRĒRENT ET MŪNĪTIŌNE
PROHIBĒRENT.

I ***prīmam et secundam aciem...esse***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***iussit***.
§580.

II ***tertiam...munīre***, INDIR. DISC. §580.

Eō^I circiter hominum numero sēdecim milia expedita cum omnī
equitātū Ariovistus mīsit

*thither, Ariovistus sent lightly- ~thither Ariovistus sent light
burdened troops, around troops, about 16,000 men in
sixteen-thousands of men in number, with all his cavalry
number, with all the cavalry*

quæ cōpiæ nostrōs perterrērent^{II}

*=which forces should frighten ~which forces were to terrify
thoroughly our men our men*

et mūnitiōne^{III} prohibērent^{IV}

*=and they should hinder (them) ~and hinder them in their
from fortifying fortification*

I.XLIX.IV.

NIHILO SĒTIUS CÆSAR, UT ANTE CŌNSTITUERAT, DUĀS
ACIĒS HOSTEM PRŌPULSĀRE, TERTIAM OPUS PERFICERE
IUSSIT.

Nihilō^V sētius^{VI} Cæsar

=Cæsar, less than nothing ~Cæsar nevertheless

ut ante cōstituerat

*=as he (Cæsar) had before ~as he had previously arranged
determined*

I **eō**, ADV. (I-), LOCAT. AND ABL., USES, *there, in that place*

II **quæ...perterrērent...**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. THE ABLATIVE QUŌ (= UT EŌ) IS USED AS A CONJUNCTION IN FINAL CLAUSES WHICH CONTAIN A COMPARATIVE. §531

III ABL. OF SEPAR. §400

IV **quæ...prohibērent**, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. §531

V ABL. OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

VI **sētius**, ADV. COMP. (SEC-), *less, in a less degree*—ONLY WITH NEGATIVES, *nilo setius, nevertheless*

duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre^I

=/he ordered/ two battle lines to ~two lines to drive off the enemy
drive off the enemy

tertiam opus perficere^{II}

=(and) (he ordered) the third ~the third to execute the work
(battle line) to complete the
work

iussit

=(Cæsar) ordered ~ordered

I.XLIX.V.

MŪNĪTĪS CASTRĪS, DUĀS IBI LEGIŌNĒS RELĪQUIT ET
PARTEM AUXILIORUM; QUATTUOR RELIQUĀS LEGIONES
ÎN CASTRA MAIŌRA REDŪXIT.

Mūnītis castrīs^{III}

=with the camp <having been> ~the camp being fortified
fortified

duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliorum

=he (Cæsar) left behind two ~he left there two legions and a
legions and a part of the portion of the auxiliaries
auxiliaries there

quattuor reliquās legiones in castra maiōra redūxit

=(and) he led back the four ~and led back the other four
remaining legions into the legions into the larger camp
larger camp

I **duās aciēs...prōpulsāre**, INDIR. DISC. §580

II **tertiam...perficere**, INDIR. DISC. §580

III **mūnītis castrīs**, ABL. ABS. §420

I.L



THE GERMANS CONSULT THE SPIRITS.



I.L.I.



PROXIMŌ DIĒ ĪNSTITŪTŌ SUŌ CÆSAR E
CASTRĪS UTRĪSQUE CŌPIĀS SUĀS ĒDŪXIT
PAULŪMQUE Ā MAIŌRIBUS CASTRĪS
PRŌGRESSUS ACIEM ĪNSTRŪXIT;
HOSTIBUSQUE PUGNANDĪ POTESTĀTEM FĒCIT.

Proximō diē^I Īnstitūtō suō^{II} Cæsar e castrīs^{III} utrīsque cōpiās suās
ēdūxit

=on the next day, with his own design, Cæsar led out his own forces from each camp ~the next day, in accordance with his design, Cæsar led out his forces from both camps

-
- I **proximō diē**, ABL. OF TIME. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423
- II **īnstitūtō suō**, ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418
- III **ex castrīs**, ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB, DE, OR EX. §426

paulumque^I ā maiōribus castrīs^{II} prōgressus^{III} aciem instrūxit
 =and (he,) <having> advanced a ~and having advanced a little
 little from the larger camp, from the larger one, drew up his
 drew up a battle line line of battle

hostibusque^{IV} pugnandī^V potestātem fēcit
 =and he made an opportunity of ~and gave the enemy an
 fighting for the enemy opportunity of fighting

I.L.II.

VBI NĒ TUM QUIDEM EŌS PRŌDIRE ĪNTELLĒXIT,
 CIRCITER MERĪDIĒ EXERCITUM ĪN CASTRA REDŪXIT.

Vbi

=when

~when

nē tum quidem^{VI} eŏs prōdire^{VII VIII}
 =that not even then those men ~that they did not even then
 came forth come out [from their
 intrenchments,]

-
- I **paulum**, ADV. (PAULUS), *a little, somewhat*
- II **ā maiōribus castrīs**, ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401
- III **prōgredior, -gressus, -ī**, DEP. (PRO + GRADIOR), *to come forth, go forth, go forward, go on, advance, proceed*
- IV DAT. OF REF. THE DATIVE OFTEN DEPENDS, NOT ON ANY PARTICULAR WORD, BUT ON THE GENERAL MEANING OF THE SENTENCE (DATIVE OF REFERENCE). §376
- V SUBJ. GEN. OF THE GERUND. THE GENITIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER NOUNS OR ADJECTIVES, EITHER AS SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. §504
- VI *Ne tum quidem, not even then*—**nē** and **quidem** emphasize the intervening word
- VII **nē...prōdire**, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON **intellēxit**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580
- VIII **prōdeō, -ī, -itus, -ire** (PRŌ + EŌ), *to go forth, come forth, come forward*

intellēxit

=he understood

~he found

circiter merīdiēm^{I II} exercitum in castra redūxit

=around mid-day, he led the army back into the camp

~he led back his army into camp about noon

I.L.III.

TUM DĒMUM ARIOVISTUS PARTEM SUĀRUM CŌPIĀRUM
QUĀE CASTRA MĪNORA OPPUGNĀRET MĪSIT.

Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum

=then, at length, Ariovistus
/sent/ part of his own forces

~then, at length, Ariovistus // a
portion of his forces

quāe castra minora oppugnāret^{III}

=which should attack the lesser
camp

~to attack the lesser camp

mīsīt

=sent

~sent

I.L.IV.

ĀCRITER UTRIMQUE USQUE AD VESPERUM PUGNĀTUM
EST.

I ABL. OF TIME. §423

II merīdiēs, ACC. -em, M. (MEDIUS + DIES), mid-day, noon

III quāe...oppugnāret, REL. CLAUSE OF PURP. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE ARE INTRODUCED BY THE RELATIVE PRONOUN QUĪ OR A RELATIVE ADVERB (UBI, UNDE, QUO, ETC.). THE ANTECEDENT IS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED IN THE MAIN CLAUSE. §531

Ācriter utrimque^I usque^{II} ad vesperum pugnātum est

=it was fought harshly on both sides all the way to the evening ~the battle was vigorously maintained on both sides till the evening

I.L.V.

SŌLIS OCCĀSŪ SUĀS CŌPIĀS ARIOVISTUS, MULTĪS ET INLĀTĪS ET ACCEPTĪS VULNERIBUS, IN CASTRA REDŪXIT.

Sōlis occāsū^{III} suās cōpiās Ariovistus

=on the falling of the sun /with ~at sunset // Ariovistus // his many wounds.../ Ariovistus /led forces back/ his own troops

multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus^{IV}

=with many wounds, both ~after many wounds had been <having been> inflicted and inflicted and received <having been> received

in castra redūxit

=led back // into the camp ~led back // into camp

I **ūtrinquē**, ADV. (UTERQUE), from or on both sides or parts, on the one side and on the other

II **usquē**, ADV., Lit., all the way to or from any limit of space, time, etc.; Of place, all the way, right on, without interruption, continuously, constantly

III **sōlis occāsū**, ABL. OF TIME. §423

IV **multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

I.L.VI.

CUM EX CAPTIVIS QUÆRERET CÆSAR QUAM OB REM
 ARIOVISTUS PRÆLIŌ NŌN DĒCERTĀRET, HANC
 REPERIĒBAT CAUSAM, QUOD APUD GERMĀNŌS EA
 CŌNSUĒTUDŌ ESSET UT MĀTRĒS FAMILIÆ EŌRUM
 SORTIBUS ET VĀTICINĀTIONIBUS DĒCLĀRĀRENT UTRUM
 PRÆLIUM COMMITTĪ EX ŪSŪ ESSET NECNE; EĀS ITA
 DĪCERE: NŌN ESSE FĀS GERMĀNŌS SUPERĀRE, SĪ ANTE
 NOVAM LŪNAM PRÆLIŌ CONTĒNDISSENT.

Cum ex captivis quæreret^I Cæsar

=when Cæsar inquired from the
 captives

~when Cæsar inquired of his
 prisoners

quam ob rem^{II} Ariovistus præliō^{III} nōn dēcertāret^{IV V}

=for what thing (reason)
 Ariovistus did not fight (it) out
 in a battle

~wherefore Ariovistus did not
 come to an engagement

hanc [esse] reperiēbat causam

=he ascertained [that] this [was]
 the reason

~he discovered this to be the
 reason

I **cum...quæreret, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **quam ob rem**, ADV., INTERROG., *for what reason? on what account? wherefore? why?*

III ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

IV **quam ob rem...dēcertāret**, INDIR. QUESTION. AN INDIRECT QUESTION IS ANY SENTENCE OR CLAUSE WHICH IS INTRODUCED BY AN INTERROGATIVE WORD (PRONOUN, ADVERB, ETC.), AND WHICH IS ITSELF THE SUBJECT OR OBJECT OF A VERB, OR DEPENDS ON ANY EXPRESSION IMPLYING UNCERTAINTY OR DOUBT. §573

V **dēcertō, -āvi, -ātus, -āre** (DE + CERTŌ), In battle, *to go through a contest, fight out*

quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset^I

=(namely,) that among the Germans, the custom was this ~that among the Germans it was the custom

ut mātērēs familiāe eōrum sortibus^{II} et vāticinātiōnibus^{III} IV
dēclārārent^V

=that the mistresses of their family would pronounce by lots ~for their matrons to pronounce from lots and divination and soothsayings

utrum praelium^{VI} committī ex ūsū esset^{VII} necne^{VIII}

=whether or not it was from (of) use (advantage) that a battle be engaged in ~whether it were of benefit to battle should be engaged in or not

eās ita dīcere

=that those (mistresses) thus ~that they had said said

I **quod...esset**, INFORMAL INDIR. DISC. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE WHEN IT EXPRESSES THE THOUGHT OF SOME OTHER PERSON THAN THE WRITER OR SPEAKER. §592

II **sors, -tis**, F. (SER-), a lot, consisting of bits of wood from a branch of a fruit-bearing tree, which were scattered at random over a white cloth and then picked up. these were inspired by, 'eddies of rivers and whirlings and noises of currents'

III **sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus**, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

IV **vāticinātiō, -ōnis**, F. (VATICINOR), a foretelling, soothsaying, prophesying; a prediction, vaticination

V **ut...dēclārārent**, SUBST. CLAUSE OF RES. CLAUSES OF RESULT MAY BE USED SUBSTANTIVELY: AS THE OBJECT OF FACIŌ ETC. (§568) §567

VI SUBJ. ACC. OF committī

VII **utrum...esset**, DOUBLE INDIR. QUESTION. IN DOUBLE OR ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS, UTRUM OR -NE, WHETHER, STANDS IN THE FIRST MEMBER; AN, ANNE, OR, ANNŌN, NECNE, OR NOT, IN THE SECOND; AND USUALLY AN IN THE THIRD, IF THERE BE ONE. §335 & §573

VIII **necne**, ADV. (NED + NE), or not, in the second part of an indirect alternative question

nōn esse fās^I II Germānōs superāre

=*that it was not divine law to overcome Germans* ~*that it was not possible that the Germans should conquer*

sī ante novam lūnam^{III} prœliō contendissent^{IV}

=*if they should have contended in a battle before the new moon* ~*if they engaged in battle before the new moon*

I ***nōn esse fās***, INDIR. DISC. DEPENDENT ON ***reperiēbat causam***. §580

II ***fās***, (ONLY NOM. AND ACC SG.) N. (FA-), *the dictates of religion, divine law*; In gen. (*justice, equity*, BUT USU. TO BE TRANSLATED AS AN ADJECTIVE); *right, proper, allowable, lawful, fit, permitted*; hence, *possible* (the predominant meaning of the word in prose and poetry)

III ***lūna, -ae***, F. (LVC-), *the moon*

IV ***sī...contendissent***, PROTASIS OF FUT. COND. IN INDIR. DISC. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PROTASIS, BEING A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE, IS ALWAYS IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE APODOSIS, IF INDEPENDENT AND NOT HORTATORY OR OPTATIVE, IS ALWAYS IN SOME FORM OF THE INFINITIVE. §589

I.LI

CAESAR FORCES AN ENGAGEMENT.

I.LI.I.



POSTRĪDIĒ EIUS DIĒI CÆSAR PRÆSIDIŌ
UTRISQUE CASTRIS QUOD SATIS ESSE VĪSUM
EST RELIQUIT; ALĀRIŌS OMNĒS IN
CŌNSPECTŪ HOSTIUM PRŌ CASTRIS
MĪNŌRIBUS CŌSTITUIT, QUOD MĪNUS MULTITŪDĪNE
MĪLITUM LEGIŌNĀRIŌRUM PRŌ HOSTIUM NŪMERŌ
VALĒBAT, UT AD SPECIEM ALĀRIIS ŪTERĒTUR; IPSE
TRIPLICĪ INSTRŪCTĀ ACIĒ USQUE AD CASTRA HOSTIUM
ACCESSIT.

Postrīdiē eius diēi Cæsar præsidio utrisque castris¹

=on the day after of this day, ~the day following, Cæsar /// as
Cæsar // // for (the purpose of) a guard for both camps
defense for either camp

quod satis esse vīsum est

=(the defense) which seemed to ~what seemed sufficient
be enough

I ***præsidio utrisque castris***, DOUBLE DAT. CONST. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382

[id] reliquit

=left /(the defence) which ~left
seemed to be enough/ behind

[et deinde] *ālārīōs*^I ^{II} *omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit*

=[and then] (Caesar) stationed ~[and then] drew up all the
all the auxiliary troops in sight auxiliaries in sight of the enemy,
of the enemy in front of the in front of the smaller camp
lesser camp

quod minus multitudīne^{III} *mīlitum legiōnārīōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat*

=because, in <respect to> the ~because he was not very
multitude of legionary soldiers, powerful in the number of
he (Cæsar) was less strong in legionary soldiers, considering
comparison with the number of the number of the enemy
enemy

I The light-armed troops were called *ālārī*, because they usually stationed on the wings (*ālæ*) of an army

II **ālārius, -a, -um**, ADJ. (ALA), of the wing (of an army): PL. AS SUBST., auxiliary troops

III ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

ut ad^I speciem^{II} alārīs^{III} ūterētur^{IV}

=that (thereby) he might use the
auxiliary troops for appearance

~that [thereby] he might make
use of his auxiliaries for
appearance

ipse

=he himself (Cæsar)

~he himself

triplicī instrūctā aciē^V

=with a triple battle-line <having
been> drawn up (e.g. after a
battle-line was drawn up...)

~having drawn up his army in
three lines

usque ad castra hostium accessit

=(Caesar) approached all the
way to the camp of the enemy

~advanced to the camp of the
enemy

-
- I **ad**, præp. INDECLFORM., With the cause or reason, according to, at, on, in consequence of, for, in order to
- II **speciēs** —, acc. -em, F. (SPEC-), a sight, look, view, appearance, aspect, mien
- III ABL. WITH THE SPECIAL V. **ūterētur**. THE DEONENTS ŪTOR, FRUOR, FUNGOR, POTIOR, VESCOR, WITH SEVERAL OF THEIR COMPOUNDS, GOVERN THE ABLATIVE. §410
- IV **ut...ūterētur**, PURP. CLAUSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTI) OR NE (UT NE), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §53
1
- V **triplicī instrūctā aciē**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

I.LI.II.

TUM DĒMUM NECESSÁRIO GERMĀNĪ SUĀS CŌPIĀS
 CASTRĪS ĒDŪXĒRUNT GĒNERĀTIMQUE CŌNSTITUĒRUNT
 PARIBUS ĪNTERVĀLLĪS, HARŪDĒS, MARCOMANŌS,
 TRIBOCES, VANGIONĒS, NEMETĒS, SEDŪSIŌS, SUĒBŌS,
 OMNEMQUE ACIEM SUAM RĒDĪS ET CARRĪS
 CIRCUMDEDĒRUNT, NĒ QUĀ SPĒS ĪN FUGĀ
 RELĪNQUERĒTUR.

Tum dēmum necessariō^I Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs^{II} ēdūxērunt
 =then, at last, by (because of) ~then at last of necessity the
 necessity, the Germans drew Germans drew their forces out
 their own forces out from the of camp
 camp

generātimque^{III} cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs^{IV}
 =and they (the Germans) ~and disposed them canton by
 placed /the Harudes, canton, at equal distances
 Marcomanni.../ by kinds, at
 equal distances

I ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

II ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

III **generātim**, ADV. (GENUS), *by kinds, by species, in classes, in detail; copias eduxerunt, i.e. by nations*

IV **paribus intervāllīs**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: OFTEN IN INDEFINITE WORDS, SUCH AS LOCŌ, PARTE, ETC. §429

Harūdēs, Marcomanōs^I, Triboces^{II}, Vangionēs^{III}, Nemetēs^{IV},
Sedusiōs^V, Suēbōs

=*Harudes, Marcomanni, ~the Harudes, Marcomanni,*
Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes, Tribocci, Vangiones, Nemetes,
Sedusii, Suevi Sedusii, Suevi

omnemque aciem suam rēdis^{VI} et carrīs^{VII} circumdedērunt

=*and they surrounded all their ~and surrounded their whole*
own battle-line with travelling- army with their travelling-
carriages and baggage wagons carriages and wagons

nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur^{VIII}

=*<in order> that not any hope ~so no hope might be left for*
might remain in flight flight

I.LI.III.

EŌ MULIERĒS IMPOSUĒRŪNT, QUÆ AD PRÆLIUM
PROFICISCENTĒS PASSIS MANIBUS FLENTĒS
IMPLŌRĀBANT NĒ SĒ IN SERVITŪTEM RŌMĀNĪS
TRĀDERENT.

I **Marcomannī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a supposed German tribe in the army of Ariovistus

II **Triboces, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe on the Rhine, about Strasburg

III **Vangiones, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine, about modern Worms

IV **Nemetes, -um**, M. PL., a German tribe on the Rhine

V **Sedusii, -ōrum**, M. PL., a tribe of Germans

VI **ræda, -æ**, F., Celtic, a travelling-carriage with four wheels

VII **rēdis et carrīs**, ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VIII **ne...relinquerētur**, NEG. PURP. CLAUSE. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UT) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §531

Eō mulierēs imposuērunt

=thither, they placed the women ~there, they placed their women

quæ ad prælium proficiscentēs^I passīs^{II} manibus^{III} flentēs
implōrābant

=(those women) whom, weepng ~who // as they went forward to
with hands spread (out), battle
implored (the soldiers) (who
were) setting out for battle

nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent^{IV}

=that they (the soldiers) might ~not to deliver them into slavery
not hand themselves (the to the Romans
weeping women) over into
servitude to the Romans

I PRES. PART. *proficīscor*

II **pandō, -dī, passum, -ere** (PAT-), *spread or open (out), extend*

III **passīs manibus**, ABL. ABS. §420

IV **nē...trāderent**, NEG. SUBST. PURP. CLAUSE. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT (NEGATIVE NĒ) ARE USED AS THE OBJECT OF VERBS DENOTING AN ACTION DIRECTED TOWARD THE FUTURE—SUCH ARE, VERBS MEANING TO ADMONISH, ASK, BARGAIN, COMMAND, DECREE, DETERMINE, PERMIT, PERSUADE, RESOLVE, URGE, AND WISH. §563

I.LII



DESPERATE FIGHTING, HAND-TO-HAND.



I.LII.1.



CÆSAR SINGULIS LEGIÖNIBUS SINGULÖS
LĒGÄTÖS ET QUÆSTÖREM PRÆFĒCIT, UTĪ EÖS
TESTĒS SUÆ QUISQUE VIRTÜTIS HABĒRET;
IPSE Å DEXTRÖ CORNÜ, QUOD EAM PARTEM
MÏNIMĒ FIRMAM HOSTIÜM ESSE ÅNIMADVERTERAT,
PRÆLIÜM COMMĪSIT.

Cæsar singulis legiönibus^I singulös lĕgätös et quæstörem præfĕcit
=Cæsar set over single legions ~Cæsar appointed over each
lieutenants and questor legion a lieutenant and a
questor

utĭ eös testēs suæ quisque^{II} virtütis habĕret^{III}
=<in order> that each one might ~that each might have them as
have those men (as) witnesses of witnesses of his own valor
his own valor

I **singulis legiönibus**, INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP. V. **præfĕcit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AO, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRÖ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT. §370

II **quisque**, each, is used in close connection with **sē** and **suus**; **uti eos testes suæ quisque virtutis haberet**, that each might have them as witnesses of his own valor (I.LII)

III **utĭ...habĕret**, CLAUSE OF PURP. PURE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE, WITH UT (UTĪ) OR NĒ (UT NĒ), EXPRESS THE PURPOSE OF THE MAIN VERB IN THE FORM OF A MODIFYING CLAUSE. §53

ipse ā^I dextrō cornū^{II}

=he (Cæsar) himself // from (the point of view of) the right wing

~he himself // at the head of the right wing

quod

=because

~because

eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse^{III}

=that that part of the enemy was the least strong

~that part of the enemy to be the least strong

animadverterat^{IV}

=had considered

~he had observed

prœlium commisit

=he began the battle

~began the battle

I.LII.II.

ITA NOSTRĪ ĀCRITER IN HOSTĒS SIGNŌ DATŌ IMPETUM
FĒCĒRUNT, ITAQUE HOSTĒS REPENTE CELERITERQUE
PRŌCURRĒRUNT, UT SPATIUM PĪLA IN HOSTĒS
COICIENDĪ NŌN DARĒTUR.

I *a, ab*, and sometimes *ex* are used to indicate a Local Relation, where we use *on, in*, or *at*; as, *a dextro cornu, on the right wing*, Lit. *from (the point of view of) the right wing* (I.LII)

II *ā dextrō cornū*, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: II. POSITION IS FREQUENTLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH *ab* (RARELY *ex*), PROPERLY MEANING FROM. §429^{II}

III *eam partem...esse*, INDIR. DISC. DEP. ON *animadverterat*. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV *animadvertō, -tī, -sus, -ere* (ANIMUM + ADVERTO), *to direct the mind, give attention to, attend to, consider, regard, observe*

Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō^I impetum fēcērunt

=thus our men, with the signal ~thus our men, upon the signal
<having been> given (e.g. by the being given, made an attack
sound of the trumpet), vigorously upon the enemy
vigorously made an attack
against the enemy

itaque hostēs^{II} repente^{III} celeriterque prōcurrērunt^{IV}

=and the enemy so suddenly and ~and the enemy so suddenly and
(so) quickly ran forward rapidly rushed forward

ut spatium^V pila in hostēs coiciendī^{VI} nōn darētur^{VII}

=that a space of (for) hurling ~that there was no opportunity
spears against the enemy was for casting the javelins at them
not given

I.LII.III.

REIECTĪS PĪLĪS COMMĪNUS GLADIĪS PUGNĀTUM EST.

I **signō datō**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II NOM. PL., SUBJ. OF **prōcurrērunt**

III **repēns, -entis**, ADJ., sudden, hasty, unexpected, unlooked for; TRANSF., ADV., suddenly, unexpectedly, **rēpentē**

IV **prōcurro, -cūcurri, -cursum, -ere** (PRŌ + CURRO), to run forth, rush forwards, Lit., freq. of armies

V SG. NOM., SUBJ. OF **darētur**

VI Genitive after Nouns and Adjectives, and with *causa* and *gratia* expressing Purpose: war (I.II) *bellandi cupidi, desirous of waging; Galliae impugnandae causa, in order to attack Gaul* (I.XLIV)

VII **ut...darētur**, CLAUSE OF RES. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES IS A DEVELOPMENT OF THE USE OF THAT MOOD IN CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (AS EXPLAINED IN §534). §536

Reiectis pilis comminus^I gladiis^{II} pugnatum est

=with the javelins <having been> ~throwing aside [therefore]
thrown back, it was fought their javelins, they fought with
hand-to-hand by swords swords hand to hand

I.LII.IV.

AT GERMĀNĪ CELERITER EX CŌNSUĒTUDĪNE SUĀ
PHALANGE FACTĀ IMPETŪS GLADIŌRUM EXCĒPĒRUNT.

At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuetudine suā

=but, the Germans, from their ~but the Germans, according to
own habit, quickly their custom, rapidly

phalange factā^{III}

=with a phalanx <having been> ~forming a phalanx
made

impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt^{IV}

=(the Germans) received the ~sustained the attack of our
attacks of (our) swords swords

I.LII.V.

REPERTĪ SUNT COMPLŪRĒS NOSTRĪ MILITES QUI IN
PHALANGAS ĪNSILĪRĒNT ET SCŪTA MANIBUS
REVELLERĒNT ET DĒSUPER VULNERĀRĒNT.

I **comminus**, ADV. (COM- + MANUS), in close contest, hand to hand, at close quarters

II **reiectis pilis comminus gladiis**, ABL., ABS. §420

III **suā phalange factā**, ABL., ABS. §420

IV **excipiō, -cēpī, -ceptus, -ere** (EX + CAPIO), To take out, withdraw; To take up, catch, receive, capture, take; to take upon one's self, to receive, support, sustain (the figure being taken from the reception of an enemy's blows or shots)

Repertī sunt complūrēs^I nostrī^{II} milites

=our several soldiers were found ~there were found very many of our soldiers

quī in phalangas insilirent^{III} ^{IV}

=(our several soldiers) who ~who leaped upon the phalanx leaped on the phalanxes

et scūta manibus^V revellerent^{VI} ^{VII}

=and they pulled away the shields (of the enemies) with (their) hands ~and with their hands tore away the shields

et dēsuper^{VIII} vulnerārent^{IX}

=and they wounded (the enemy) from above ~and wounded the enemy from overhead

I.LII.VII.

CUM HOSTIUM ACIĒS Ā SĪNISTRŌ CORNŪ PULSA ATQUE
ĪN FUGAM CŌNVERSA ESSET, Ā DEXTRŌ CORNŪ
VEHEMĒTER MULTITŪDĪNE SUŌRŪM NOSTRAM ACIEM
PREMĒBANT.

I SUBJ. NOM., SUBJ. OF **repertī sunt**

II NOM. PL. M. OF ADJ. **complūrēs**

III **quī...insilirent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. A RELATIVE CLAUSE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS OFTEN USED TO INDICATE A CHARACTERISTIC OF THE ANTECEDENT, ESPECIALLY WHERE THE ANTECEDENT IS OTHERWISE UNDEFINED. §535

IV **insiliō, -uī, —, -ire** (IN + SALIO), to leap in, spring up, throw oneself upon, bound, mount

V ABL. OF SEPAR. VERBS MEANING TO REMOVE, SET FREE, BE ABSENT, DEPRIVE, AND WANT, TAKE THE ABLATIVE (SOMETIMES WITH AB OR EX). §401

VI **quī...revellerent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

VII **revellō, -velli, -vulsus, -ere** (RE + VELLO), to pluck away, pull away, tear out, tear off

VIII **dēsuper**, ADV. (DE + SUPER), Of motion, from above, from overhead

IX **quī...vulnerārent**, REL. CLAUSE OF CHAR. §535

Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistro^I cornū^{II} pulsa^{III} atque in fugam conversa esset^{IV V}

=*although the battle line of the enemy <having been> (was) repulsed from the left wing and was turned into flight* ~*although the army of the enemy was routed on the left wing and wheeled about to flight*

ā dextrō cornū^{VI} vehementer multitūdine^{VII} suōrum nostram aciem premēbant^{VIII}

=*they (nonetheless) pressed heavily on our battle-line from the right wing with a multitude of their own (troops)* ~*they [still] pressed heavily on our men from the right wing, by the great number of their troops*

I.LII.VIII.

ID CUM ANIMADVERTISSET P. CRASSUS ADULĒSCĒNS, QUĪ EQUITĀTUĪ PRÆERAT, QUOD EXPEDITIOR ERAT QUAM EĪ QUĪ ĪTER ACIEM VERSĀBANTUR, TERTIAM ACIEM LABŌRANTIBUS NOSTRĪS SUBSIDIŌ MĪSIT.

I **ā sinistro cornū**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE. THE PLACE WHERE IS DENOTED BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION IN THE FOLLOWING INSTANCES: II. POSITION IS FREQUENTLY EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH AB (RARELY EX), PROPERLY MEANING FROM. §429^{II}

II **cornū, -ūs**, N. (CAR-), *a horn, antler*; Of an army, *the wing, extremity, side*

III PPP. OF *pellō*

IV **cum...conversa esset**, *cum* CLAUSE. CUM CAUSAL OR CONCESSIVE TAKES THE SUBJUNCTIVE. CUM CAUSAL MAY USUALLY BE TRANSLATED BY SINCE; CUM CONCESSIVE BY ALTHOUGH OR WHILE; EITHER, OCCASIONALLY, BY WHEN. §549

V PPP. OF *convertō*

VI **ā dextrō cornū**, ABL. OF PLACE WHERE, §429^{II}

VII ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

VIII **premō, -essi, -essus, -ere** (PREM-), *to press; To press, press upon, urge, drive, importune, pursue, press hard*

Id cum animadvertisset^I P[ūblius] Crassus adulēscēns^{II}

=when P[ublius] Crassus, an ~on observing which, P. Crassus, adolescent, had observed it a young man (this)

quī equitātū^{III} præerat

=(he) whom presided over the ~who commanded the cavalry cavalry

quod expeditior^{IV} erat quam ei^V [erant]

=because he (Crassus) was more ~as he was more disengaged disengaged than those men than [were]

quī inter aciem versābantur

=(those men) who were engaged ~those who were employed in among the battle-line the fight

I **cum animadvertisset, cum** CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

II **adulēscēns, -entis** (PART. OF *adolesco*), ADJ. WITH COMP, *growing, near maturity, young, youthful*; SUBST., COMM. GEN., *one who has not yet attained maturity, a youth, a young man; a young woman, a maiden* (between the *puer* and *juvenis*, from the 15th or 17th until past the 30th year, often even until near the 40th; but the same person is often called in one place *adulescens*, and in another *juvenis*)

III INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP. V. **præerat**. §370

IV COMP. DEG. OF THE PART. **expeditus**—PRED.-ADJ. AFTER **erat**

V NOM. PL. M.

tertiam aciem [militibus] labōrantibus^{I II} nostrīs subsidio^{III IV} misit
 =he sent the third battle-line for ~sent the third line as a relief to
 <the purpose of> assistance to our men who were distressed
 our struggling [soldiers]

-
- I Participle: Expressing Characterization or Description; *victīs, venientēs, those beaten, those coming up, meaning those who had been beaten, those who were coming up (I.XXV)*
- II PRES. PART. *labōrō*
- III ***labōrantibus nostrīs subsidio***, DOUBLE DAT. CONST. THE DATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE PURPOSE OR END, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. THIS USE OF THE DATIVE, ONCE APPARENTLY GENERAL, REMAINS IN ONLY A FEW CONSTRUCTIONS, AS FOLLOWS: THE DATIVE OF AN ABSTRACT NOUN IS USED TO SHOW THAT FOR WHICH A THING SERVES OR WHICH IT ACCOMPLISHES, OFTEN WITH ANOTHER DATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AFFECTED. §382
- IV ***subsidium, -ī***, N. (SUB + SED), In order of battle, *the troops in reserve, line of reserve, third line of battle, triarii*; ABSTR., support in battle, aid, help, relief, succor, assistance

I.LIII

CAESAR IS VICTORIOUS.

I.LIIII.



TA PROELIUM RESTITUTUM EST, ATQUE
OMNĒS HOSTĒS TERGA VERTĒRUNT NEC
PRIUS FUGERE DĒSTITĒRUNT QUAM AD
FLŪMEN RHĒNUM MĪLIA PASSUUM EX EŌ
LOCŌ CIRCITER QUINQUE PERVĒNĒRUNT.

Ita proelium restitutum est

=thus, the battle was restored

~thereupon the engagement was renewed

atque omnēs hostēs terga¹ vertērunt

=and all the enemy turned
(their) backs

~and all the enemy turned their
backs

nec prius fugere dēstitērunt

=nor did they cease to flee
earlier

~nor did they cease to flee

I **tergum, -i, n.** (TRAG-), the back; WITH *verto* or *do*, to turn the back, turn back, take flight, run away, flee, retreat

quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter
quīnque pervēnērunt

=*than they arrived at the river* ~*before they arrived at the river*
Rhine, around five-thousand of Rhine, about fifty miles from
paces from that place *that place*

I.LIII.II.

IBI PERPAUCĪ AUT VĪRIBUS CŌNFĪSĪ TRĀNĀRE
CONTENDĒRUNT AUT LĪNTRIBUS ĪNVENTĪS SIBI
SALŪTEM REPPERĒRUNT.

Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus^I cōnfīsī^{II} trānāre^{III} contendērunt

=*there, a few men, either* ~*there some few, either relying*
<having> trusted in (their) on their strength, endeavored to
(bodily) strength, endeavored to swim over
swim over

aut

=*or*

~*or*

lintribus inventīs^{IV V}

=*with skiffs <having been> found* ~*finding boats*

sibi salūtem repperērunt

=*they found safety for* ~*procured their safety*
themselves

I ABL. WITH SPECIAL V. **cōnfīsī**. SEVERAL VERBS ARE FOLLOWED BY THE ABLATIVE. THESE ARE ACQUIESCŌ, DĒLECTOR, LĒTOR, GAUDEŌ, GLŌRIOR, NĪTOR, STŌ, MANEŌ, FĪDŌ, CŌNFĪDŌ, CŌNSISTŌ, CONTINEOR. §431

II PPP. OF **cōnfīdō**

III **trānō**, **-āvī**, —, **-āre** (TRANS + NO), *to swim over, swim across, swim through*

IV **lintribus inventīs**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

V **inveniō**, **-vēnī**, **-ventus**, **-īre** (IN + VENIO), *to come upon, find, meet with, light upon*

I.LIII.III.

IN HĪS FUIT ARIOVISTUS, QUĪ NĀVICULAM DĒLIGĀTAM
AD RIPAM NACTUS EĀ PROFUGIT: RELIQUŌS OMNĒS
CŌNSECŪTĪ EQUITĒS NOSTRĪ INTERFĒCĒRUNT

In hīs fuit Ariovistus,

=among those (latter) men was Ariovistus ~among the latter was Ariovistus

quī nāviculam^I dēligātam^{II} ad ripam nactus^{III} eā^{IV} profūgit

=who, <having> obtained a small vessel <having been> tied up to the bank, fled with this (thing) ~who meeting with a small vessel tied to the bank, escaped in it

reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt

=our horse <having> followed, killed all the remaining men ~our horse pursued and slew all the rest of them

I.LIII.IV.

DUÆ FUĒRUNT ARIOVISTĪ UXŌRĒS, ŪNA SUĒBA
NĀTIŌNE, QUAM DOMŌ SĒCUM DŪXERAT, ALTERA
NŌRICA, RĒGIS VOCCIŌNIS SOROR, QUAM IN GALLIĀ
DUXERAT Ā FRĀTRE MISSAM: UTRĒQUE IN EĀ FUGĀ
PERIERUNT; DUÆ FĪLIÆ: HĀRUM ALTERA OCCĪSA, ALTERA
CAPTA EST.

I **nāvicula, -æ**, F. DIM. (NAVIS), a small vessel, boat, skiff

II PPP. OF *dēligō*

III **nancīscor, nactus, -ī**, DEP. (NAC-), to get, obtain, receive, meet with, stumble on, light on, find

IV ABL. OF MEANS. THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE MEANS OR INSTRUMENT OF AN ACTION. §409

Duæ fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs

=two wives were of Ariovistus

~Ariovistus had two wives

ūna Suēba nātiōne^I ^{II} [fuit]

=one [was] a Suevan by birth

~one a Suevan by nation

quam domō^{III} sēcum dūxerat

=whom he led with himself from
home

~whom he brought with him
from home

altera Nōrica [fuit], rēgis Vocciōnis^{IV} soror

=the other [was] a Norican, the
sister of king Vocion

~the other a Norican, the sister
of king Vocion

quam in Galliā duxerat ā frātre^V missam

=whom he had led (into
matrimony) in Gaul, she
<having been> sent by (her)
brother

~whom he had married in Gaul,
she having been sent [thither for
that purpose] by her brother

utræque in eā fugā perierunt^{VI}

=each of the two passed away in
that flight

~both perished in that flight

duæ filiæ

=of (their) two daughters

~Of their two daughters

I ABL. OF SPEC. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION DENOTES THAT IN RESPECT TO WHICH ANYTHING IS OR IS DONE. §418

II nātiō, -ōnis, f. (GEN-), a birth, origin; A race of people, nation, people

III ABL. OF PLACE FROM WHICH. WITH NAMES OF TOWNS AND SMALL ISLANDS, AND WITH DOMUS AND RŪS, THE RELATIONS OF PLACE ARE EXPRESSED AS FOLLOWS: THE PLACE FROM WHICH, BY THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. §427

IV Vocciō, ōnis, m., a king of Noricum

V ā frātre, ABL. OF AGENT. THE VOLUNTARY AGENT AFTER A PASSIVE VERB IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE WITH A OR AB. §405

VI pereō, -iī, -itum, -ire (PER + EO), to pass away, come to nothing, vanish, disappear, be lost; To pass away, be destroyed, perish

hārum altera occīsa [est]

=one of these (ladies) was struck down ~one was slain

altera capta est

=the other was captured ~the other captured

I.LIII.V.

C. VALERIUS PROCILLUS, CUM Ā CUSTŌDIBUS IN FUGĀ TRĪNĪS CATĒNĪS VĪNCTUS TRAHERĒTUR, IN IPSUM CÆSAREM HOSTĒS EQUITĀTŪ PERSEQUENTEM INCIDIT.

C[aius] Valerius Procillus

=C[aius] Valerius Procillus ~C. Valerius Procillus

cum ā custōdibus^I in [eā] fugā trīnīs catēnīs^{II} vīnctus^{III} traherētur^{IV}
V

=as he was being dragged by (his) guards in [this] flight, <having been> bound with a triple chain ~as he was being dragged away by his guards in flight, bound with a triple chain

I ā custōdibus, ABL. OF AGENT. §405

II trīnīs catēnīs, ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III vinciō, vinxī, vinctus, -ire (VI-), to bind, bind about, fetter, tie, fasten, surround, encircle

IV cum...traherētur, cum CLAUSE. A TEMPORAL CLAUSE WITH CUM AND THE IMPERFECT OR PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE DESCRIBES THE CIRCUMSTANCES THAT ACCOMPANIED OR PRECEDED THE ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB. §546

V trahō, trāxī, tractus, -ere (TRAG-), to draw, drag, haul, train along, draw off, pull forth, drag away; To drag away violently, carry off, plunder

in ipsum Cæsarem hostēs [cum] equitātū^I persequentem^{II} incidit^{III}
 =he, pursuing the enemy [with] ~fell in with Cæsar himself, as
 horse, fell into (the hands of) he was pursuing the enemy with
 Cæsar himself his cavalry

I.LIII.VI.

QUÆ QUIDEM RĒS CÆSARĪ NŌN MĪNŌREM QUAM IPSA
 VICTŌRIA VOLUPTĀTEM ATTULIT, QUOD HOMĪNEM
 HŌNESTISSIMUM PRŌVĪNCIÆ GALLIÆ, SUUM
 FAMILIĀREM ET HOSPITEM, ĒREPTUM E MANIBUS
 HOSTIUM SIBI RESTITŪTUM VIDERAT, NEQUE EIUS
 CALAMITĀTE DĒ TANTĀ VOLUPTĀTE ET GRĀTULĀTIŌNE
 QUICQUAM FORTŪNA DĒMĪNUERAT.

Quæ quidem rēs Cæsari^{IV} nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria
 voluptātem^V attulit
 =which thing, indeed, brought to ~this circumstance indeed
 Cæsar no less pleasure than the afforded Cæsar no less pleasure
 victory itself than the victory itself

quod
 =because ~because

I ABL. OF MEANS, §409

II PRES. PART. OF *īnsequor*

III **incidō, -cidi, —, -ere** (IN + CADŌ), *to fall in, fall, light, strike, reach, find the way; To light upon, meet, come upon, fall in with*

IV INDIR. OBJ. WITH COMP.. V. **attulit**. MANY VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH AQ, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, POST, PRÆ, PRŌ, SUB, SUPER, AND SOME WITH CIRCUM, ADMIT THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT, §370

V **voluptās, -ātis**, F. (VOL-), *satisfaction, enjoyment, pleasure, delight*

hominem honestissimum^I prōvinciæ Galliæ

=that a most noble man of the
province of Gaul

~a man of the first rank in the
province of Gaul

suum familiārem et hospitem^{II}

=his own intimate acquaintance
and (his own) friend

~his intimate acquaintance and
friend

ēreptum^{III} e manibus hostium sibi restitūtum [esse]

=rescued from the hands of the
enemy, (and) (he) [was] restored
to him (to Cæsar)

~rescued from the hand of the
enemy, and restored to him

viderat

=he saw

~he saw

neque eius calamitāte^{IV} dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne^V

=nor by his calamity, from such
joy and rejoicing (e.g. of that
day)

~of the joy and rejoicing [of that
day] by his destruction

quicquam fortūna dēminuerat

=had (Cæsar's) fortune
diminished anything

~and that fortune had not
diminished aught

I **honestus, -a, -um**, ADJ. WITH COMP. AND SUP. (HONOS), *regarded with honor, respected, honored, of high birth, distinguished, honorable, respectable, noble*

II **hospes, -itis**, M. (HOSTIS + POT-), *an entertainer, host (as a friend); A friend, one bound by ties of hospitality*

III PPP. OF **ēripiō**

IV ABL. OF CAUSE. THE ABLATIVE (WITH OR WITHOUT A PREPOSITION) IS USED TO EXPRESS CAUSE. §404

V **grātulātiō, -ōnis**, F. (GRATULOR), *a manifestation of joy, wishing joy, congratulation, rejoicing*

I.LIII.VII.

IS SĒ PRÆSENTE DĒ SĒ TER SORTIBUS CŌNSULTUM
DĪCĒBAT UTRŪM IGNĪ STATIM NECĀRĒTUR AN IN ALIUD
TEMPUS RESERVĀRĒTUR: SORTIUM BĒNEFICIO SĒ ESSE
INCOLUMEM.

Is

=he (Procillus)

~He [Procillus]

sĕ præsente^I

=that, with himself <being> ~that, in his own presence
present

dĕ sĕ ter sortibus^{II} cōnsultum^{III} [esse]

=by lots, concerning him, it ~it was consulted three times by
[was] thrice consulted lots concerning him

dīcĕbat

=/he/ (Procillus) was saying

~said

utrum ignī^{IV} statim^V necārĕtur^{VI VII}

=whether he should immediately ~whether he should immediately
be put to death by <means of> be put to death by fire
fire

I **sĕ presente**, ABL. ABS. §420

II ABL. OF MEANS. §409

III INDIR. DISC. DEP. ON **dīcĕbat**. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE THE MAIN CLAUSE OF A DECLARATORY SENTENCE IS PUT IN THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. ALL SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TAKE THE SUBJUNCTIVE. §580

IV ABL. OF MEANS. §409

V **statim**, ADV. (STA-), steadily, regularly; On the spot, forthwith, straightway, at once, immediately, instantly

VI **utrum...necārĕtur**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IS USED IN QUESTIONS IMPLYING (1) DOUBT, INDIGNATION, OR (2) AN IMPOSSIBILITY OF THE THING'S BEING DONE. THE NEGATIVE IS NŌN. §444

VII **necō, -āvī, -ātus, -āre** (NEC-), to kill, slay, put to death

an in aliud tempus reservārētur^I ^{II}

=or (if) he should be reserved ~or be reserved for another time
until another time

sortium beneficiō^{III} sē esse^{IV} incolumem^V

=that because of the favor of the ~that by the favor of the lots he
lots, he was uninjured was uninjured

I.LIII.VIII.

ITEM M. MĒTTIUS REPERTUS ET AD EUM REDUCTUS EST.

Item M[arcus] Mēttius repertus [est] et ad eum reductus est

=M[arcus] Mettius, also, was ~M. Mettius, also, was found
found, and he led back to him and brought back to him
(Cæsar) [Cæsar.]

I **utrum...reservārētur**, DELIBERATIVE SUBJ. §444

II **rēservo**, -āvi, -ātum, -āre (RĒ + SERVO), to keep back, save up
(anything) for future use; to reserve

III ABL. OF CAUSE.

IV **sē esse**, INDIR. DISC. §580

V **incolumis**, -e, ADJ. (IN + COLUMNIS), unimpaired, uninjured, unharmed,
safe, sound, entire, whole

I.LIV

CAESAR GOES TO NORTH ITALY.

I.LIV.I



HOC PROELIO TRANS RHENUM NUNTIATO,
SUEBI QUI AD RIPAS RHENI VENERANT
DOMUM REVERTI COEPERUNT; QUOS UBI QUI
PROXIMI RHENUM INCOLUNT PERTERRITOS
INSECUTI MAGNUM EX EIS NUMERUM OCCIDERUNT.

Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiatio^I

=with this battle <having been>
announced across the Rhine

~this battle having been
reported beyond the Rhine

Suebi

=the Suevi

~the Suevi

qui ad ripas Rheni venerant

=who had come to the banks of
the river

~who had come to the banks of
that river

domum^{II} reverti coeperunt

=began to return home

~began to return home

I **hoc proelio...nuntiatio**, ABL. ABS. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE OFTEN TAKES THE PLACE OF A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE. §420

II ACC. OF PLACE TO WHICH. SPECIAL USES OF PLACE FROM WHICH, TO WHICH, AND WHERE ARE THE FOLLOWING: XI. DOMUM DENOTING THE PLACE TO WHICH, AND THE LOCATIVE DOMI, MAY BE MODIFIED BY A POSSESSIVE PRONOUN OR A GENITIVE. §428XI

quōs Vbiī^I

=(those men) (the Suevi) whom ~when the Ubii
Ubiī

qui proximī^{II} Rhēnum incolunt

=who dwell nearest to the Rhine ~who dwelt nearest to the Rhine

perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex eīs numerum occidērunt

=(those men) (the Ubii) <having> ~pressed upon them, while much
followed the thoroughly alarmed, slew a great number of
terrified men (the Seuvi), killed a them
great number from (of) those
men

I.LIV.II.

CÆSAR, ŪNĀ ÆSTĀTE DUŌBŪS MAXIMĪS BELLĪS
CŌNFECTĪS, MĀTŪRIUS PAULŌ QUAM TEMPUS ANŌNĪ
POSTULĀBAT ĪN HĪBERNA ĪN SEQUANŌS EXERCITUM
DĒDŪXIT; HĪBERNĪS LABIĒNUM PRÆPOSUIT; IPSE ĪN
CITERIŌREM GALLIAM AD CŌVENTŪS AGENDŌS
PROFECTUS EST.

Cæsar ūnā æstāte^{III IV}

=Cæsar // in one summer

~Cæsar // within one campaign

I **Ubiī, -ōrum**, M. PL., a German tribe on the Rhine, opposite Cologne, near which city they afterwards settled

II ADJ. USED AS PREP. CERTAIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES ARE SOMETIMES USED AS PREPOSITIONS: THE ADVERBS PRIDĒ, POSTRIDĒ, PROPIUS, PROXIMĒ, LESS FREQUENTLY THE ADJECTIVES PROPRIOR AND PROXIMUS, MAY BE FOLLOWED BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §432

III **ūnā æstāte**, ABL. OF TIME WITHIN WHICH. TIME WHEN, OR WITHIN WHICH, IS EXPRESSED BY THE ABLATIVE; TIME HOW LONG BY THE ACCUSATIVE. §423

IV **æstās, -ātis**, F. summer

duobus maximis bellis confectis^I

=with two extremely great wars
<having been> completed

~having concluded two very
considerable wars

māturius paulō^{II} quam tempus annī postulābat

=earlier by a little than the
season of the year demanded

~a little earlier than the season
of the year required

in hiberna in Sequanōs exercitum dēdūxit

=he (Cæsar) led away (his) army
among the Sequani into winter
quarters

~conducted his army into winter
quarters among the Sequani

hibernīs Labiēnum præposuit^{III}

=he set Labienus over the
winter-quarters

~he appointed Labienus over the
winter-quarters

ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs^{IV} agendōs^V profectus est

=he (Cæsar) himself departed
into nearest Gaul for <the
purpose of> conducting a
meeting

~and set out in person for Hither
Gaul to administer the meeting

I **duobus maximis bellis confectis**, ABL. ABS. §420

II ABL. OF DEG. OF DIF. WITH COMPARATIVES AND WORDS IMPLYING COMPARISON THE ABLATIVE IS USED TO DENOTE THE DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE. §414

III **præpōnō, -posuī, -positus, -ere** (PRÆ + PŌNŌ), to place in front, put upon, affix; To set over, make commander, intrust with, appoint, depute

IV **conventus, -ūs**, M. (COM- + BA-, VEN-), a meeting, assembly, throng

V **ad conventūs agendōs**, ACC. OF THE GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING PURP. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE IS USED AFTER THE PREPOSITION AD, TO DENOTE PURPOSE. §506

APPENDIX

ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

§39

Declension

1	2	3	3 (i-stem)	4	5
---	---	---	------------	---	---

Singular

	F.	M.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	N.	M.	F.
Nom.	-a	-us	-um				-us	-us	-u	-us	-ū	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	-æ	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-is	is	is	is	-ūs	-ūs	-ēī (-ē)	-ēī (-ē)
Dat.	-æ	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī	-uī (-ū)	-ū	-ēī (-ē)	-ēī (-ē)
Acc.	-am	-um	-um	-em	-em	like nom.	-em	-em	e	-um	-ū	-em	-em
Abl.	-ā	-ō	-ō	-e (-ī)	-e (-ī)	-e (-ī)	-ī/e	-ī/e	-ī	-ū	-ū	-ē	-ē
Voc.	-a	-e	-um	like nom.	like nom.	like nom.	-s	-s		-us	-ū	-ēs	-ēs

Plural

	F.	M.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	N.	M.	F.
Nom.	-æ	-ī	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Gen.	ārum	ōrum	ōrum	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-ium	-uum	-uum	ērum	ērum
Dat.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Acc.	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	a-	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs
Abl.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	-ēbus
Voc.	-æ	-ī	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	-ēs

§113

The following nine adjectives with their compounds have the Genitive Singular in *-ūs* and the Dative in *-ī* in all genders:

<i>alius</i> (N. <i>aliud</i>), <i>other</i>	<i>tōtus</i> , <i>whole</i>	<i>alter</i> , <i>-terius</i> , <i>the other</i>
<i>nūllus</i> , <i>no</i> , <i>none</i>	<i>ūllus</i> , <i>any</i>	neuter, <i>-trius</i> , <i>neither</i>
<i>sōlus</i> , <i>alone</i>	<i>ūnus</i> , <i>one</i>	<i>uter</i> , <i>-trius</i> , <i>which</i> (of two)

Of these the singular is thus declined:

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utrī	utrī	utrī
Acc.	ūnum	ūnqm	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	terum
Gen.	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus
Dat.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Acc.	aliūm	aliām	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Abl.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

i. The plural of these words is regular, like that of *bonus* (§110)

§146

Demonstrative Pronoun Charts:

The Demonstrative Pronouns are used to point out or designate a person or thing for special attention, either with nouns as Adjectives or alone as Pronouns. They are: *hīc*, *this*; *is*, *ille*, *iste*, *that*; with the Intensive *ipse*, *self*; and *īdem*, *same*; and are thus declined:

hic, this

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	hæc	hōc	hī	hæ	hæc
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	hæc
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

is, that

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eæ	ea
Gen.	êius	êius	êius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

ille, that

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illæ	illa
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

Ipse, self.

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsæ	ipsa
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

īdem, the same

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eadem	īdem	īdem, eī	eādem	eadem
Gen.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundeme	eārundeme	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

§147

The Relative Pronoun *quī, who, which*, is thus declined:

Relative pronouns

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quæ	quod	quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quæ
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

§148

The Substantive Interrogative Pronoun *quis, who? quid, what?* is declined in the Singular as follows:

Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns

	Singular				Plural	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis	qius	quid	quī	quæ	quæ
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quæ
Abl.	quō	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

§170

The verb *sum, be*, is both irregular and defective, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

Indicative	Subjunctive
------------	-------------

Present		
Singular	sum, <i>I am</i>	sim
	es, <i>you are</i>	sīs
	est, <i>he (she, it)</i>	sit
Plural	sumus, <i>we are</i>	sīmus
	estis, <i>you (all) are</i>	sītus
	sunt, <i>they are</i>	sint
Imperfect		
Singular	eram, <i>I was</i>	essem
	eras, <i>you were</i>	essēs
	erat, <i>he (she, it)</i>	esset
Plural	erāmus, <i>we were</i>	essēmus
	erātis, <i>you were</i>	essētis
	erant, <i>they were</i>	essent
Future		
Singular	erō, <i>I shall be</i>	
	eris, <i>you will be</i>	
	erit, <i>he (she, it) will be</i>	
Plural	erimus, <i>we shall be</i>	
	eritis, <i>you will be</i>	
	erunt, <i>they will be</i>	
Perfect		
Singular	fuī, <i>I was (have been)</i>	fuerim
	fuistī, <i>you were</i>	fueris
	fuit, <i>he (she, it) was</i>	fuerit
Plural	fuiamus, <i>we were</i>	fuerimus
	fuistis, <i>you were</i>	fueritis
	fuērunt, <i>they were</i>	fuerint
Plurperfect		
Singular	fueram, <i>I had been</i>	fuissem
	fuerās, <i>you had been</i>	fuisēs
	fuerat, <i>he (she, it) had been</i>	fuisset
Plural	fuerāmus, <i>we have been</i>	fuissemus

	fuerātis, <i>you (all) had been</i>	fuissētis
	fuerant, <i>they had been</i>	fuissent
Future Perfect		
Singular	fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>	
	fueris, <i>you will have been</i>	
	fuerit, <i>he (she, it) will have been</i>	
Plural	fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>	
	fueritis, <i>you (all) have been</i>	
	fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>	
Imperative		
Present Singular	es, <i>be you</i>	
Present Plural	este, <i>be you (all)</i>	
Future Singular	estō, <i>you/he (she, it) shalt be</i>	
Future Plural	estōte, <i>you (all) shall be</i>	
	suntō, <i>they shall be</i>	
Infinitive		
Present	esse, <i>to be</i>	
Perfect	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>	
Future	futūrus esse (or fore), <i>to be about to be</i>	
Participle		
Future	futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i>	

§194

There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, known respectively as the First (or Active) and the Second (or Passive).

- i. The First Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Future Active Participle with the forms of sum, and denotes a future or intended action.
- ii. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation combines the Gerundive with the forms of sum, and denotes obligation, necessity, or

propriety.

- iii. The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly throughout the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

§196

Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE	
PRES.	amandus sum, <i>I am to be, must be</i>
IMPER.	amandus eram, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
FUT.	amandus erō, <i>I shall have to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus fui, <i>I was to be, had to be, loved</i>
PLUPERF.	amandus fueram, <i>I had had to be loved</i>
FUT. PERF.	amandus fuerō, <i>I shall have had to be loved</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	amandus sim
IMPERF.	amandus essem
PERF.	amandus fuerim
PLUPERF.	amandus fuisset
INFINITIVE	
PRES.	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
PERF.	amandus fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

§282

A noun used to describe another, and standing in the same part of the sentence with the noun described, is called an Appositive, and is said to be in apposition.

§283

With *sum* and a few other intransitive or passive verbs, a noun or an adjective describing or defining the subject may stand in the predicate. This is called a Predicate Noun or Adjective.

The verb *sum* is especially common in this construction, and when so used is called the copula (i.e. connective).

Other verbs which take a predicate noun or adjective are the so-called copulative verbs signifying *to become*, *to be made*, *to be named*, *to appear*, and the like.

§289

Neuter Adjectives are used substantively in the following special senses:

iv. A neuter adjective may be used as an attributive or a predicate adjective with an infinitive or a substantive clause

§291

Besides their regular signification (as in English), the forms of comparison are used as follows:

- i. The Comparative denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as,—*brevior*, *rather short*; *audācior*, *too bold*.
- ii. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality without implying a distinct comparison: as,—*mōns altissimus*, *a very high mountain*.
- iii. With *quam*, *vel*, or *ūnus* the Superlative denotes the highest possible degree.

§293

Superlatives (and more rarely Comparatives) denoting order and succession—also *medius*, [*cēterus*], *reliquus*—usually designate not what object, but what part of it, is meant.

§301

Special uses of the Reflexive are the following:

vi. *Inter sē (nōs, vōs), among themselves (ourselves, yourselves),* is regularly used to express reciprocal action or relation.

§306

A Relative generally agrees in gender and number with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender or number.

§307

The Antecedent Noun sometimes appears in both clauses, but usually only in the one that precedes. Sometimes it is wholly omitted.

iii. The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite.

§308

In the use of Relatives, the following points are to be observed:

- i. The relative is never omitted in Latin, as it often is in English.
- ii. When two relative clauses are connected by a copulative conjunction, a relative pronoun sometimes stands in the first and a demonstrative in the last.
- iii. A relative clause in Latin often takes the place of some other construction in English,—particularly of a participle, an appositive, or a noun of agency.
- iv. In formal or emphatic discourse, the relative clause usually comes first, often containing the antecedent noun.
- v. The relative with an abstract noun may be used in a parenthetical clause to characterize a person, like the English *such*.

- vi. A relative pronoun (or adverb) often stands at the beginning of an independent sentence or clause, serving to connect it with the sentence or clause that precedes.
- vii. A relative adverb is regularly used in referring to an antecedent in the Locative case; so, often, to express any relation of place instead of the formal relative pronoun.
- viii. The relatives *quī*, *quālis*, *quantus*, *quot*, etc. are often rendered simply by *as* in English.
- ix. The general construction of relatives is found in clauses introduced by relative adverbs: *as*, *ubi*, *quō*, *unde*, *cum*, *quārē*.

§317

Two or more Singular Subjects take a verb in the Plural:

- ii. If the subjects are connected by disjunctives (§223i), or if they are considered as a single whole, the verb is usually singular.

Note. Almost always when the subjects are abstract nouns.

§323

Copulative and Disjunctive Conjunctions connect similar constructions, and are regularly followed by the same case or mood that precedes them.

§326

Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative. Many compounds or phrases of which *nōn* is the first part express an indefinite affirmative:

- i. *nōn nūllus*, *some*; *nōn nūllī* (=aliquī), *some few*.
- ii. *nōn nihil* (=aliquid), *something*.
- iii. *nōn nēmō* (=aliquot), *sundry persons*.

- iv. *nōn numquam* (= *aliquotiēns*), *sometimes*.

Two negatives of which the second is *nōn* (belonging to the predicate) express a universal affirmative:

- i. *nēmō nōn, nūllus nōn, nobody [does] not*, i.e. *everybody [does]*.
[Cf. *nōn nēmō, not nobody*, i.e. *somebody*.]
- ii. *nihil nōn, everything*. [Cf. *nōn nihil, something*.]
- iii. *numquam nōn, never not*, i.e. *always*. [Cf. *nōn numquam, sometimes*.]

§335

In Double or Alternative Questions, *utrum* or *-ne*, whether, stands in the first member; *an, anne*, or, *annōn, necne*, or *not*, in the second; and usually *an* in the third, if there be one.

§343

The Possessive Genitive denotes the person or thing to which an object, quality, feeling, or action belongs.

Note 1. The Possessive Genitive may denote (1) the actual owner (as in Alexander's dog) or author (as in Cicero's writings), or (2) the person or thing that possesses some feeling or quality or does some act (as in Cicero's eloquence, the strength of the bridge, Catiline's evil deeds). In the latter use it is sometimes called the Subjective Genitive; but this term properly includes the possessive genitive and several other genitive constructions (nearly all, in fact, except the Objective Genitive, §347).

- ii. The possessive genitive often stands in the predicate, connected with its noun by a verb (Predicate Genitive).

§345

The Genitive is used to denote Quality, but only when the quality is

modified by an adjective.

- i. The genitive of quality is found in the adjective phrases *ēius modī, cūius modī* (equivalent to *tālis, such; quālis, of what sort.*)
- ii. The genitive of quality, with numerals, is used to define measures of length, depth, etc. (Genitive of Measure.)

§346

Words denoting a Part are followed by the Genitive of the Whole to which the part belongs.

i. Partitive words, followed by the genitive, are:

- a) Nouns or Pronouns.
- b) Numerals, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Pronominal words like *alius, alter, nullus*, etc.
- c) Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, used as nouns.
- d) Adverbs, especially those of Quantity and of Place.

iii. Cardinal numerals (except *mīlia*) regularly take the Ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the Partitive Genitive. So also, *quīdam, a certain one, commonly*, and other words occasionally.

§347

The Objective Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

§348

Nouns of action, agency, and feeling govern the Genitive of the Object.

Note. This usage is an extension of the idea of belonging to (Possessive Genitive). Thus in the phrase *odium Cæsaris, hate of Cæsar*, the *hate* in a passive sense belongs to *Cæsar*, as *odium*, though in its active sense he is

the object of it, as *hate*. The distinction between the Possessive (subjective) and the Objective Genitive is very unstable and is often lost sight of. It is illustrated by the following example: the phrase *amor patris*, *love of a father*, may mean love felt by a father, a father's love (subjective genitive), or love towards a father (objective genitive).

§349

Adjectives requiring an object of reference govern the Objective Genitive include:

- i. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt, and their opposites govern the genitive.
- ii. Participles in *-ns* govern the genitive when they are used as adjectives, i.e. when they denote a constant disposition and not a particular act.

§350

Verbs of remembering and forgetting take either the Accusative or the Genitive of the object:

- ii. *Memini* takes the Genitive when it means to be mindful or regardful of a person or thing, to think of somebody or something (often with special interest or warmth of feeling).

So *oblīvīscor* in the opposite sense,—to *disregard*, or *dismiss from the mind*,—and the adjective *oblītus*, *careless* or *regardless*.

- iii. *Reminīscor* is rare. It takes the Accusative in the literal sense of *call to mind*, *recollect*; the Genitive in the more figurative sense of *be mindful of*.

§359

Peculiar Genitive constructions are the following:

- i. A poetical genitive occurs rarely in exclamations, in imitation of the Greek (Genitive of Exclamation.)

- ii. The genitive is often used with the ablatives *causā, grātiā, for the sake of; ergō, because of*; and the indeclinable *īnstar, like*; also with *prīdiē, the day before; postrīdiē, the day after; tenus, as far as*.

§364

Certain verbs may take either the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (in a different sense) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing.

Such are *dōnō, impertiō, induō, exuō, adspargō, īnspargō, circumdō*, and in poetry *accingō, implicō*, and similar verbs.

§367

Many verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon*, and *spare*, take the Dative.

- i. Some verbs apparently of the same meanings take the Accusative. Such are *iuvō, adiuvō, help; lædō, injure; iubeō, order; dēficiō, fail; dēlectō, please*.

Note. II. Some common phrases regularly take the dative precisely like verbs of similar meaning. Such are—*præstō esse, be on hand* (cf. *adesse*); *mōrem gerere, humor* (cf. *mōrigerārī*); *grātum facere, do a favor* (cf. *grātificārī*); *dictō audiēns esse, be obedient* (cf. *obœdīre*); “*cui fidem habēbat*” (B. G. 1.19), *in whom he had confidence* (cf. *cōnfīdēbat*).

§368

The Dative is used:

- i. With the impersonals *libet (lubet), it pleases*, and *licet, it is allowed*.
- ii. With verbs compounded with *satis, bene, and male*.
- iii. With *grātificor, grātulor, nūbō, permittō, plaudō, probō, studeō*,

supplicō, excellō.

§369

Some verbs ordinarily intransitive may have an Accusative of the direct object along with the Dative of the indirect.

§370

Many verbs compounded with *ao, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super*, and some with *circum*, admit the Dative of the indirect object.

§372

Intransitive verbs that govern the dative are used impersonally in the passive (§208iv). The dative is retained (cf. §365).

§373

The Dative is used with *esse* and similar words to denote Possession.

Note. The Genitive or a Possessive with *esse* emphasizes the possessor; the Dative, the fact of possession: as,—*liber est meus, the book is MINE* (and no one's else): *est mihi liber, I HAVE a book* (among other things).

ii. *Dēsum* takes the dative; so occasionally *absum* (which regularly has the ablative).

§374

The Dative of the Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the necessity rests.

This is the regular way of expressing the agent with the Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (§196).

§376

The Dative often depends, not on any particular word, but on the general meaning of the sentence (Dative of Reference).

The dative in this construction is often called the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage, as denoting the person or thing for whose benefit or to whose prejudice the action is performed.

§377

The Dative of Reference is often used to qualify a whole idea, instead of the Possessive Genitive modifying a single word.

§381

Many verbs of taking away and the like take the Dative (especially of a person) instead of the Ablative of Separation (§401).

Such are compounds of *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, and a few of *ad*.

The distinct idea of motion requires the ablative with a preposition—thus generally with names of things (§426i).

§382

The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, often with another Dative of the person or thing affected. This use of the dative, once apparently general, remains in only a few constructions, as follows:

The dative of an abstract noun is used to show that for which a thing serves or which it accomplishes, often with another dative of the person or thing affected.

Note I. This construction is often called the Dative of Service, or the Double Dative construction. The verb is usually *sum*. The noun expressing the end for which is regularly abstract and singular in number and is never modified by an adjective, except one of degree (*māgnus*, *minor*, etc.), or by a genitive.

§383

The Dative is used after Adjectives or Adverbs, to denote that to which the given quality is directed, for which it exists, or towards which it tends.

§384

The Dative is used with adjectives (and a few Adverbs) of fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination, and their opposites.

Adjectives of this kind are *accommodātus*, *aptus*; *amīcus*, *inimīcus*, *īnfestus*, *invīsus*, *molestus*; *idōneus*, *opportūnus*, *proprius*; *ūtilis*, *inūtilis*; *affinis*, *finitimus*, *propinquus*, *vīcīnus*; *pār*, *dispār*, *similis*, *dissimilis*; *iūcundus*, *grātus*; *nōtus*, *īgnōtus*, and others.

§388

Certain special verbs require notice:

1. Many verbs apparently intransitive, expressing feeling, take an accusative, and may be used in the passive.
2. Verbs of motion, compounds of *circum*, *trāns*, and *præter*, and a few others, frequently become transitive, and take the accusative.
3. The accusative is used after the impersonals *decet*, *dēdecet*, *dēlectat*, *iuvat*, *oportet*, *fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*.

§390

An intransitive verb often takes the Accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or in some other manner.

This construction is called the Cognate Accusative or Accusative of Kindred Signification.

§393

Verbs of naming, choosing, appointing, making, esteeming, showing, and the like, may take a Predicate Accusative along with the direct object.

§396

Some verbs of asking and teaching may take two accusatives, one of the

Person (direct object), and the other of the Thing (secondary object).

i. Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, always, *petō (ab)*, *quæro (ex, ab, dē)*; usually *poscō (ab)*, *flāgitō (ab)*, *postulō (ab)*, and occasionally others.

§400

Words signifying Separation or Privation are followed by the ablative.

§401

Verbs meaning to remove, set free, be absent, deprive, and want, take the Ablative (sometimes with *ab* or *ex*).

§402

Verbs compounded with *ā*, *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, (1) take the simple Ablative when used figuratively; but (2) when used literally to denote actual separation or motion, they usually require a preposition.

§403

The Ablative (usually with a preposition) is used to denote the Source from which anything is derived, or the Material of which it consists.

§404

The Ablative (with or without a preposition) is used to express Cause.

iii. The ablatives *causā* and *grātiā*, *for the sake of*, are used with a genitive preceding, or with a pronoun in agreement.

§405

The Voluntary Agent after a passive verb is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

Note I. This construction is developed from the Ablative of Source. The agent is conceived as the source or author of the action.

Note II. The ablative of the agent (which requires *ā* or *ab*) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of instrument, which has no preposition (§409). Thus *occīsus gladiō*, *slain by a sword*; but, *occīsus ab hoste*, *slain by an enemy*.

Note III. The ablative of the agent is commonest with nouns denoting persons, but it occurs also with names of things or qualities when these are conceived as performing an action and so are partly or wholly personified, as in the last example under the rule.

ii. The personal agent, when considered as instrument or means, is often expressed by *per* with the accusative, or by *operā* with a genitive or possessive.

§406

The Comparative degree is often followed by the Ablative (This is a branch of the Ablative of Separation. The object with which anything is compared is the starting-point from which we reckon. Thus, “*Cicero is eloquent*”; but, starting from him we come to Cato, who is “*more so than he*.”) signifying *than*.

§407

The comparative may be followed by *quam*, *than*. When *quam* is used, the two things compared are put in the same case:

- i. The construction with *quam* is required when the first of the things compared is not in the Nominative or Accusative.
- ii. In sentences expressing or implying a general negative the ablative (rather than *quam*) is the regular construction when the first member of the comparison is in the nominative or accusative.

After the comparatives *plūs*, *minus*, *amplius*, *longius*, without *quam*, a word of measure or number is often used with no change in its case.

§408

Means, Instrument, Manner, and Accompaniment are denoted by the Instrumental Ablative (see §398), but some of these uses more commonly require a preposition. As they all come from one source (the old Instrumental Case) no sharp line can be drawn between them, and indeed the Romans themselves can hardly have thought of any distinction. Thus, in *omnibus precibus orābant*, *they entreated with every [kind of] prayer*, the ablative, properly that of means, cannot be distinguished from that of manner.

§409

The Ablative is used to denote the means or instrument of an action.

§410

The deponents *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, with several of their compounds, govern the Ablative.

i. *Potior* sometimes takes the Genitive, as always in the phrase *potīri rērum*, *to get control or be master of affairs* (§357i).

§411

Opus and *ūsus*, signifying need, take the Ablative.

i. With *opus* the ablative of a perfect participle is often found, either agreeing with a noun or used as a neuter abstract noun.

§412

The Manner of an action is denoted by the Ablative; usually with *cum*, unless a limiting adjective is used with the noun.

- i. But *cum* is often used even when the ablative has a limiting adjective.
- ii. With such words of manner as *modō*, *pactō*, *ratione*, *rītū*, *vī*, *viā*, and with stock expressions which have become virtually adverbs (as *silentiō*, *iūre*, *iniuriā*), *cum* is not used.

§414

With Comparatives and words implying comparison the ablative is used to denote the Degree of Difference.

i. The ablatives *quō...eō* (*hōc*), and *quantō... tantō*, are used correlatively with comparatives, like the English *the...the*.

Note. To this construction are doubtless to be referred all cases of *quō* and *eō* (*hōc*) with a comparative, even when they have ceased to be distinctly felt as degree of difference and approach the Ablative of Cause.

§415

The quality of a thing is denoted by the Ablative with an adjective or genitive modifier. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Ablative of Quality.

In expressions of quality the Genitive or the Ablative may often be used indifferently; but physical qualities are oftener denoted by the Ablative.

§416

The price of a thing is put in the Ablative.

Note. To this head is to be referred the Ablative of the Penalty.

§417

Certain adjectives of quantity are used in the Genitive to denote indefinite value. Such are *māgnī*, *parvī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*.

Note. These are really Genitives of Quality (§345ii).

§418

The Ablative of Specification denotes that in respect to which anything is or is done.

i. To this head are to be referred many expressions where the ablative

expresses that in accordance with which anything is or is done.

Note. As the Romans had no such categories as we make, it is impossible to classify all uses of the ablative. The ablative of specification (originally instrumental) is closely akin to that of manner, and shows some resemblance to means and cause.

§419

A noun or pronoun, with a participle in agreement, may be put in the Ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute.

Note. The ablative absolute is an adverbial modifier of the predicate. It is, however, not grammatically dependent on any word in the sentence: hence its name absolute (*absolutus*, i.e. *free* or *unconnected*). A substantive in the ablative absolute very seldom denotes a person or thing elsewhere mentioned in the same clause.

i. An adjective, or a second noun, may take the place of the participle in the Ablative Absolute construction

§420

The Ablative Absolute often takes the place of a Subordinate Clause.

Thus it may replace—A Temporal Clause, A Causal Clause, A Concessive Clause, A Conditional Clause, and A Clause of Accompanying Circumstance.

§423

Time when, or within which, is expressed by the Ablative; time how long by the Accusative.

§424

Special constructions of time are the following:

i. The Ablative of time within which sometimes takes in, and the

Accusative of time how long *per*, for greater precision.

- ii. Duration of time is occasionally expressed by the Ablative.
- iii. Time *during which* or *within which* may be expressed by the Accusative or Ablative of a noun in the singular, with an ordinal numeral.
- iv. Many expressions have in Latin the construction of time when where in English the main idea is rather of place.
- v. In many idiomatic expressions of time, the Accusative with *ad*, *in*, or *sub* is used. Such are the following.
- vi. Distance of time before or after anything is variously expressed.
- vii. In Dates the phrase *ante diem* (a.d.) with an ordinal, or the ordinal alone, is followed by an accusative, like a preposition; and the phrase itself may also be governed by a preposition.
- viii. The year is expressed by the names of the consuls in the ablative absolute, usually without a conjunction.

§425

Extent of Space is expressed by the Accusative.

- ii. Distance when considered as extent of space is put in the Accusative; when considered as degree of difference, in the Ablative (§414).

§426

Relations of Place are expressed as follows:

- i. The place from which, by the Ablative with *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*.
- ii. The place to which (or end of motion), by the Accusative with *<*>d* or *in*.

- iii. The place where, by the Ablative with *in* (Locative Ablative).

§427

With names of towns and small islands, and with *domus* and *rūs*, the Relations of Place are expressed as follows:

- i. The place from which, by the Ablative without a preposition.
- ii. The place to which, by the Accusative without a preposition.
- iii. The place where, by the Locative.

§428

Special uses of place from which, to which, and where are the following:

- i. With names of towns and small islands *ab* is often used to denote *from the vicinity of*, and *ad* to denote *towards, to the neighborhood of*.
- ii. The general words *urbs*, *oppidum*, *insula* require a preposition to express the place from which, to which, or where.
- iii. With the name of a country, *ad* denotes *to the borders*; *in* with the accusative, *into the country itself*. Similarly *ab* denotes *away from the outside*; *ex*, *out of the interior*.
- iv. With all names of places *at*, meaning *near (not in)*, is expressed by *ad* or *apud* with the accusative.
- v. Large islands, and all places when thought of as a territory and not as a locality, are treated like names of countries.
- vi. The Ablative without a preposition is used to denote the place from which in certain idiomatic expressions.
- xi. *Domum* denoting the place to which, and the locative *domī*, may be modified by a possessive pronoun or a genitive.

§429

The place where is denoted by the Ablative without a preposition in the following instances:

Often in indefinite words, such as *locō*, *parte*, etc.

Frequently with nouns which are qualified by adjectives (regularly when *tōtus* is used.)

In many idiomatic expressions which have lost the idea of place.

- i. The way by which is put in the Ablative without a preposition. Note. In this use the way by which is conceived as the means of passage.
- ii. Position is frequently expressed by the Ablative with *ab* (rarely *ex*), properly meaning from.

§431

Several verbs are followed by the Ablative. These are *acquiēscō*, *dēlector*, *lātor*, *gaudeō*, *glōrior*, *nītor*, *stō*, *maneō*, *fīdō*, *cōnfīdō*, *cōnsistō*, *contineor*.

§432

Certain Adverbs and Adjectives are sometimes used as Prepositions:

- i. The adverbs *prīdiē*, *postrīdiē*, *propius*, *proximē*, less frequently the adjectives *propior* and *proximus*, may be followed by the Accusative.
- ii. *Ūsque* sometimes takes the Accusative, but *ūsque ad* is much more common.
- iii. The adverbs *palam*, *procul*, *simul*, may be used as prepositions and take the Ablative.

§434

Some Prepositions and Adverbs which imply comparison are followed, like comparatives, by *quam*, which may be separated by several words, or even clauses.

Such words are *ante*, *prius*, *post*, *postea*, *prīdi*, *postrīdiē*; also *magis* and *præ* in compounds.

§439

The Hortatory Subjunctive is used in the present tense to express an exhortation or a command. The negative is *nē*.

§444

The Subjunctive is used in questions implying (1) doubt, indignation, or (2) an impossibility of the thing's being done. The negative is *nōn*.

In many cases the question has become a mere exclamation, rejecting a suggested possibility.

§450

Prohibition is regularly expressed in classic prose (1) by *nōlī* with the Infinitive, (2) by *cavē* with the Present Subjunctive, or (3) by *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

§452

The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may be used with *est* and similar verbs (1) as the Subject, (2) in Apposition with the subject, or (3) as a Predicate Nominative.

§457

Many verbs take either a Subjunctive Clause or a Complementary Infinitive, without difference of meaning.

Such are verbs signifying willingness, necessity, propriety, resolve, command, prohibition, effort, and the like.

§463

The Infinitive is often used for the Imperfect Indicative in narration, and takes a subject in the Nominative.

Note. This construction is not strictly historical, but rather descriptive, and is never used to state a mere historical fact. It is rarely found in subordinate clauses. Though occurring in most of the writers of all periods, it is most frequent in the historians Sallust, Livy, Tacitus. It does not occur in Suetonius.

§469

The Present in lively narrative is often used for the Historical Perfect.

Note. This usage, common in all languages, comes from imagining past events as going on before our eyes (repræsentātiō, §585. b. N.)

§470

The Imperfect denotes an action or a state as continued or repeated in past time.

Note. The Imperfect is a descriptive tense and denotes an action conceived as in progress or a state of things as actually observed. Hence in many verbs it does not differ in meaning from the Perfect. Thus *rēx erat* and *rēx fuit* may often be used indifferently; but the former describes the condition while the latter only states it. The English is less exact in distinguishing these two modes of statement. Hence the Latin Imperfect is often translated by the English *Preterite*.

§481

The tenses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses were habitually used in certain fixed connections with the tenses of the main verb.

These connections were determined by the time of the main verb and the time of the dependent verb together. They are known, collectively, as the Sequence of Tenses.

§495

Participles are often used as Predicate Adjectives. As such they may be joined to the subject by *esse* or a copulative verb.

Note. From this predicate use arise the compound tenses of the passive, —the participle of completed action with the incomplete tenses of *esse* developing the idea of past time: as, *interfectus est*, *he was* (or *has been*) *killed*, Lit. *he is having-been-killed* (i.e. *already slain*).

§496

The Present and Perfect Participles are often used as a predicate, where in English a phrase or a subordinate clause would be more natural.

In this use the participles express time, cause, occasion, condition, concession, characteristic (or description), manner, means, attendant circumstances.

§503

When the Gerund would have an object in the Accusative, the Gerundive is generally used instead. The gerundive agrees with its noun, which takes the case that the gerund would have had.

§504

The Genitive of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after nouns or adjectives, either as subjective or objective genitive.

- i. The genitive of the gerund sometimes takes a direct object, especially a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used substantively.
- ii. The genitive of the gerund or gerundive with *causā* or *gratiā* expresses purpose (§533. ii.)
- iii. The genitive of the gerund is occasionally limited by a noun or pronoun (especially a personal pronoun in the plural) in the objective genitive instead of taking a direct object.

§506

The Accusative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used after the preposition *ad*, to denote Purpose.

The Accusative of the gerund with a preposition never takes a direct object in classic Latin.

§507

The Ablative of the Gerund and Gerundive is used:

- i. to express manner, means, cause, etc.
- ii. after Comparatives.
- iii. after the propositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *in*, and (rarely) *prō*.

§508

The Supine is a verbal abstract of the fourth declension (§94ii), having no distinction of tense or person, and limited to two uses. (1) The form in *-um* is the Accusative of the end of motion (§428i). (2) The form in *-ū* is usually Dative of purpose (§382), but the Ablative was early confused with it.

§509

The Supine in *-um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose. It may take an object in the proper case.

§510

The Supine in *-ū* is used with a few adjectives and with the nouns *fās*, *nefās*, and *opus*, to denote an action in reference to which the quality is asserted.

The only common supines in *-ū* are *auditū*, *dictū*, *factū*, *inventū*, *memorātū*, *nātū*, *vīsū*. In classic use this supine is found in comparatively few verbs. It is never followed by an object-case.

Note 1. The supine in *-ū* is thus in appearance an Ablative of Specification (§418).

§513

Conditions are either (i) Particular or (ii) General:

- i. A Particular Condition refers to a definite act or series of acts occurring at some definite time.
- ii. A General Condition refers to any one of a class of acts which may occur (or may have occurred) at any time.

§514

The principal or typical forms of Conditional Sentences may be exhibited as follows:

SIMPLE CONDITIONS (nothing implied as to fulfilment):	
Present Time	Pres. Indic. in both clauses.
Past Time	Imperf. or Perf. Indic. in both clauses.
FUTURE CONDITIONS (as yet unfulfilled):	
More Vivid	Fut. Indic. in both clauses
	Fut. Perf. Indic. in protasis, Fut. Indic. in apodosis.
Less Vivid	Pres. Subj. in both clauses.
	Perf. Subj. in protasis, Pres. Subj. in apodosis.
CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT:	
Present Time	Imperf. Subj. in both clauses.
Past Time	Pluperf. Subj. in both clauses.
GENERAL CONDITIONS	
General Conditions do not usually differ in form from the Conditions above, but are sometimes distinguished in the cases following:	
Present General Condition (Indefinite Time)	Pres. Subj. 2nd. per. sg. (Indefinite Subject) in protasis, Pres. Indic. in apodosis.
	Perf. Indic. in protasis, Pres. Indic. in apodosis:
Past General Condition (Repeated Action)	Pluperf. Indic. in protasis, Imperf. Indic.

in Past Time)	in apodosis.
	Imperf. Subj. in protasis, Imperf. Indic. in apodosis.
PARTICULAR CONDITIONS	
Simple Present and Past Conditions	Nothing Implied.

§516

Future Conditions may be more vivid or less vivid.

In a more vivid future condition the protasis makes a distinct supposition of a future case, the apodosis expressing what will be the logical result.

In a less vivid future condition, the supposition is less distinct, the apodosis expressing what would be the result in the case supposed:

- i. In the more vivid future condition the Future Indicative is used in both protasis and apodosis.
- ii. In the less vivid future condition the Present Subjunctive is used in both protasis and apodosis.

§524

Conditional Clauses of Comparison take the Subjunctive, usually in the Present or Perfect unless the sequence of tenses requires the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Such clauses are introduced by the comparative particles *tamquam*, *tamquam sī*, *quasi*, *ac sī*, *ut sī*, *velut sī* (later *velut*), *poetic ceu* (all meaning *as if*), and by *quam sī* (*than if*).

§526

The concessive idea is rather vague and general, and takes a variety of forms, each of which has its distinct history. Sometimes concession is expressed by the Hortatory Subjunctive in a sentence grammatically independent (§440), but it is more frequently and more precisely expressed by a dependent clause introduced by a concessive particle. The

concessive force lies chiefly in the Conjunctions (which are indefinite or conditional in origin), and is often made clearer by an adversative particle (*tamen, certē*) in the main clause. As the Subjunctive may be used in independent clauses to express a concession, it is also employed in concessive clauses, and somewhat more frequently than the indicative.

§527

The Particles of Concession (meaning although, granting that) are *quamvis, ut, licet, etsi, tametsi, etiam si, quamquam*, and *cum*.

Some of these take the Subjunctive, others the Indicative, according to the nature of the clause which each introduces.

§529

The Subjunctive in the clause of Purpose is hortatory in origin, coming through a kind of indirect discourse construction.

Thus, *mīsit lēgātōs quī dicerent* means *he sent ambassadors who should say*, i.e. *who were directed to say*; in the direct orders the verb would be *dīcite*, which would become *dīcant* in the Indirect Discourse of narrative (§588) or *dicerent* in the past (cf. hortatory subjunctive in past tenses, §439. b). The Subjunctive with *ut* and *nē* is, in general, similar in origin.

§531

Final Clauses take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut* (*utī*), negative *nē* (*ut nē*), or by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb.

Pure Clauses of Purpose, with *ut* (*utī*) or *nē* (*ut nē*), express the purpose of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

Relative Clauses of Purpose are introduced by the relative pronoun *quī* or a relative adverb (*ubi, unde, quō*, etc.). The antecedent is expressed or implied in the main clause.

The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) is used as a conjunction in final clauses which contain a comparative.

§534

The relative clause of Characteristic with the Subjunctive is a development peculiar to Latin. A relative clause in the Indicative merely states something as a fact which is true of the antecedent; a characteristic clause (in the Subjunctive) defines the antecedent as a person or thing of such a character that the statement made is true of him or it and of all others belonging to the same class. Thus,— *nōn potest exercitum* is *continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn continet* (indicative) means simply, *that commander who does not* (as a fact) *restrain himself cannot restrain his army*; whereas *nōn potest exercitum* is *continēre imperātor quī sē ipse nōn contineat* (subjunctive) would mean, *that commander who is not such a man as to restrain himself*, etc., that is, who is not characterized by self-restraint.

This construction has its origin in the potential use of the subjunctive (§445) Thus, in the example just given, *quī sē ipse nōn contineat* would mean literally, *who would not restrain himself* (in any supposable case), and this potential idea passes over easily into that of general quality or characteristic. The characterizing force is most easily felt when the antecedent is indefinite or general. But this usage is extended in Latin to cases which differ but slightly from statements of fact, as in some of the examples below.

The use of the Subjunctive to express Result comes from its use in Clauses of Characteristic. Thus, *nōn sum ita hebes ut hæc dicam* means literally, *I am not dull in the manner (degree) in which I should say this*, hence, *I am not so dull as to say this*. Since, then, the characteristic often appears in the form of a supposed result, the construction readily passes over into Pure Result, with no idea of characteristic; as,— “*tantus in cūriā clāmor factus est ut populus concurreret*” (Verr. 2.47), *such an outcry was made in the senate-house that the people hurried together*.

§535

A Relative Clause with the Subjunctive is often used to indicate a characteristic of the antecedent, especially where the antecedent is otherwise undefined.

When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, *cum* takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of

the main verb.

§536

The Subjunctive in Consecutive Clauses is a development of the use of that mood in Clauses of Characteristic (as explained in §534).

§537

Clauses of Result take the Subjunctive introduced by *ut*, *so that* (negative, *ut nōn*), or by a relative pronoun or relative adverb.

Pure Clauses of Result, with *ut* or *ut nōn*, express the result of the main verb in the form of a modifying clause.

§539

Causal Clauses take either the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according to their construction; the idea of cause being contained, not in the mood itself, but in the form of the argument (by implication), in an antecedent of causal meaning (like *propterea*), or in the connecting particles.

Quod is in origin the relative pronoun (stem *quo-*) used adverbially in the accusative neuter (cf. §214. d) and gradually sinking to the position of a colorless relative conjunction (cf. English *that* and see §222). Its use as a causal particle is an early special development. *Quia* is perhaps an accusative plural neuter of the relative stem *qui-*, and seems to have developed its causal sense more distinctly than *quod*, and at an earlier period. It is used (very rarely) as an interrogative, *why?* (so in classical Latin with *nam* only), and may, like *quandō*, have developed from an interrogative to a relative particle.

Quoniam (for *quom iam*) is also of relative origin (*quom* being a case-form of the pronominal stem *quo-*). It occurs in old Latin in the sense of when (cf. *quom*, *cum*), from which the causal meaning is derived (cf. *cum* causal). The Subjunctive with *quod* and *quia* depends on the principle of Informal Indirect Discourse (§592).

Quandō is probably the interrogative *quam* (*how?*) compounded with a form of the pronominal stem *do-* (cf. *dum*, *dō-nec*). It originally denoted

time (first interrogatively, then as a relative), and thus came to signify cause. Unlike *quod* and *quia*, it is not used to state a reason in informal indirect discourse and therefore is never followed by the Subjunctive.

§540

The Causal Particles *quod* and *quia* take the Indicative, when the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive, when the reason is given on the authority of another.

Note 1. *Quod* introduces either a fact or a statement, and accordingly takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. *Quia* regularly introduces a fact; hence it rarely takes the Subjunctive. *Quoniam*, *inasmuch as*, *since*, *when now*, *now that*, has reference to motives, excuses, justifications, and the like and takes the Indicative.

ii. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō* take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, like any other dependent clause (see §580).

§543

The particles *postquam* (*posteaquam*), *ubi*, *ut* (*ut primum*, *ut semel*), *simul atque* (*simul ac*, or *simul* alone), take the Indicative (usually in the perfect or the historical present).

§545

A temporal clause with *cum*, *when*, and some past tense of the Indicative dates or defines the time at which the action of the main verb occurred.

When the time of the main clause and that of the temporal clause are absolutely identical, *cum* takes the Indicative in the same tense as that of the main verb.

§546

A temporal clause with *cum* and the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive describes the circumstances that accompanied or preceded the action of the main verb.

§549

Cum causal or concessive takes the Subjunctive. *Cum* causal may usually be translated by *since*; *cum* concessive by *although* or *while*; either, occasionally, by *when*.

§551

Antequam and *priusquam* take sometimes the Indicative sometimes the Subjunctive:

- i. With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Perfect Indicative states a fact in past time.
- ii. With *antequam* or *priusquam* the Imperfect Subjunctive is common when the subordinate verb implies purpose or expectancy in past time, or when the action that it denotes did not take place.
- iii. *Antequam* and *priusquam*, when referring to future time, take the Present or Future Perfect Indicative; rarely the Present Subjunctive.

§553

Dum and *quoad*, until, take the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive in temporal clauses implying intention or expectancy.

§555

Dum, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, as long as, take the Indicative.

§556

Dum, while, regularly takes the Present Indicative to denote continued action in past time.

In translating, the English Imperfect must generally be used.

A past tense with *dum* (usually *so long as*) makes the time emphatic by

contrast; but a few irregular cases of *dum* with a past tense occur where no contrast is intended.

§557

The original meaning of *quīn* is *how not? why not? (quī-nē)*, and when used with the Indicative or (rarely) with the Subjunctive it regularly implies a general negative. Thus, *quīn ego hōc rogem? why shouldn't I ask this?* implies that there is no reason for not asking. The implied negative was then expressed in a main clause, like *nūlla causa est* or *fieri nōn potest*. Hence come the various dependent constructions introduced by *quīn*.

Quōminus is really a phrase (*quō minus*), and the dependent constructions which it introduces have their origin in the relative clause of purpose with *quō* and a comparative (see §531i).

§558

A subjunctive clause with *quīn* is used after verbs and other expressions of hindering, resisting, refusing, doubting, delaying, and the like, when these are negated, either expressly or by implication.

i. *Quīn* is especially common with *nōn dubitō, I do not doubt, nōn est dubium, there is no doubt*, and similar expressions.

ii. Verbs of hindering and refusing often take the subjunctive with *nē* or *quōminus* (= *ut eō minus*), especially when the verb is not negated.

§560

A clause which is used as a noun may be called a Substantive Clause, as certain relative clauses are sometimes called 'adjective clauses'. But in practice the term is restricted to clauses which represent a nominative or an accusative case, the clauses which stand for an ablative being sometimes called adverbial clauses.

Even with this limitation the term is not quite precise. The fact is rather that the clause and the leading verb are mutually complementary; each reinforces the other. The simplest and probably the earliest form of such

sentences is to be found in the paratactic use (see §268) of two verbs like *volō abeās, dicāmus cēseō, adeam optimum est*. From such verbs the usage spread by analogy to other verbs, and the complementary relation of the clause to the verb came to resemble the complementary force of the accusative, especially the accusative of cognate meaning (§390).

§561

A clause used as a noun is called a Substantive Clause.

A Substantive Clause may be used as the Subject or Object of a verb, as an Appositive, or as a Predicate Nominative or Accusative.

§562

Substantive Clauses are classified as follows:

- i. Subjunctive Clauses (*ut, nē, ut nōn*, etc.). a. Of purpose (command, wish, fear) (§563, §564). b. Of result (happen, effect, etc.) (§568).
- ii. Indicative Clauses with *quod*: Fact, Specification, Feeling (§572).
- iii. Indirect Questions: Subjunctive, introduced by an Interrogative Word. (§573, §576).
- iv. Infinitive Clauses a. With verbs of ordering, wishing, etc. (§563). b. Indirect Discourse (§579 ff.).

§563

Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used as the object of verbs denoting an action directed toward the future—Such are, verbs meaning to admonish, ask, bargain, command, decree, determine, permit, persuade, resolve, urge, and wish.

§564

Verbs of fearing take the Subjunctive, with *nē* affirmative and *nē nōn* or *ut* negative.

In this use *nē* is commonly to be translated by *that*, *ut* and *nē nōn* by *that not*.

§565

Volō and its compounds, the impersonals *licet* and *oportet*, and the imperatives *dīc* and *fac* often take the Subjunctive without *ut*.

i. Verbs of commanding and the like often take the subjunctive without *ut*.

Note. The subjunctive in this construction is the hortatory subjunctive used to express a command in Indirect Discourse.

§566

A Substantive Clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive (Impersonal Construction.)

ii. Some verbs that take an infinitive instead of a subjunctive are used impersonally in the passive, and the infinitive becomes the subject of the sentence.

§567

Clauses of Result may be used substantively:

- i. as the object of *faciō* etc. (§568)
- ii. as the subject of these same verbs in the passive, as well as of other verbs and verbal phrases (§569)
- iii. in apposition with another substantive, or as predicate nominative etc.

§568

Substantive Clauses of Result with *ut* (negative *ut nōn*) are used as the object of verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort—Such are especially *faciō* and its compounds (*efficiō*, *cōnficiō*, etc.)

Verbs and phrases taking an *ut*-clause of result as subject or object are *accēdit*, *accidit*, *additur*, *altera est rēs*, *committō*, *cōsequor*, *contingit*, *efficiō*, *ēvenit*, *faciō*, *fit*, *flerī potest*, *fore*, *impetrō*, *integrum est*, *mōs est*, *mūnus est*, *necesse est*, *prope est*, *rēctum est*, *relinquitur*, *reliquum est*, *restat*, *tantī est*, *tantum abest*, and a few others.

§569

Substantive Clauses of Result are used as the subject of the following:

Of passive verbs denoting the accomplishment of an effort.

Fore (or *futūrum esse*) *ut* with a clause of result as subject is Often used instead of the Future Infinitive active or passive; so necessarily in verbs which have no supine stem.

§572

A peculiar form of Substantive Clause consists of *quod* (in the sense of *that*, *the fact that*) with the Indicative.

The clause in the Indicative with *quod* is used when the statement is regarded as a fact.

Note. Like other substantive clauses, the clause with *quod* may be used as subject, as object, as appositive, etc., but it is commonly either the subject or in apposition with the subject.

§573

An Indirect Question is any sentence or clause which is introduced by an interrogative word (pronoun, adverb, etc.), and which is itself the subject or object of a verb, or depends on any expression implying uncertainty or doubt.

In grammatical form, exclamatory sentences are not distinguished from interrogative (see the third example below).

§576

In colloquial usage and in poetry the subject of an Indirect Question is often attracted into the main clause as object (Accusative of Anticipation).

An indirect question is occasionally introduced by *sī* in the sense of whether.

§577

The use of the Accusative and Infinitive in Indirect Discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) is a comparatively late form of speech, developed in the Latin and Greek only, and perhaps separately in each of them. It is wholly wanting in Sanskrit, but some forms like it have grown up in English and German.

The essential character of Indirect Discourse is, that the language of some other person than the writer or speaker is compressed into a kind of Substantive Clause, the verb of the main clause becoming Infinitive, while modifying clauses, as well as all hortatory forms of speech, take the Subjunctive. The person of the verb necessarily conforms to the new relation of persons.

The construction of Indirect Discourse, however, is not limited to reports of the language of some person other than the speaker; it may be used to express what any one—whether the speaker or some one else—says, thinks, or perceives, whenever that which is said, thought, or perceived is capable of being expressed in the form of a complete sentence. For anything that can be said etc. can also be reported indirectly as well as directly.

The use of the Infinitive in the main clause undoubtedly comes from its use as a case-form to complete or modify the action expressed by the verb of saying and its object together. This object in time came to be regarded as, and in fact to all intents became, the subject of the infinitive. A transition state is found in Sanskrit, which, though it has no indirect discourse proper, yet allows an indirect predication after verbs of saying and the like by means of a predicative apposition, in such expressions as “*The maids told the king [that] his daughter [was] bereft of her senses.*”

The simple form of indirect statement with the accusative and infinitive was afterwards amplified by introducing dependent or modifying clauses; and in Latin it became a common construction, and could be used to report whole speeches etc., which in other languages would have the direct form. (Compare the style of reporting speeches in English, where only the person and tense are changed.)

The Subjunctive in the subordinate clauses of Indirect Discourse has no significance except to make more distinct the fact that these clauses are subordinate; consequently no direct connection has been traced between them and the uses of the mood in simple sentences. It is probable that the subjunctive in indirect questions (§574), in informal indirect discourse (§592), and in clauses of the integral part (§593) represents the earliest steps of a movement by which the subjunctive became in some degree a mood of subordination.

The Subjunctive standing for hortatory forms of speech in Indirect Discourse is simply the usual hortatory subjunctive, with only a change of person and tense (if necessary), as in the reporter's style.

§580

In Indirect Discourse the main clause of a Declaratory Sentence is put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. All subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive.

i. The verb of saying etc. is often not expressed, but implied in some word or in the general drift of the sentence:

§583

A Subordinate Clause merely explanatory, or containing statements which are regarded as true independently of the quotation, takes the Indicative.

§584

The Present, the Perfect, or the Future Infinitive is used in Indirect Discourse, according as the time indicated is present, past, or future with reference to the verb of saying etc. by which the Indirect Discourse is

introduced, such as:

cadō	<i>I am falling.</i>
dīcit sē cadere	<i>he says that he is falling.</i>
dīxit sē cadere	<i>he said that he was falling.</i>
cadēbam	<i>I was falling.</i>
cecidī	<i>I fell, have fallen.</i>
cecideram	<i>I had fallen.</i>
dīcit sē cecidissee	<i>he says that he was falling (fell, has fallen, had fallen).</i>
dīxit sē cecidissee	<i>he said that he fell (had fallen).</i>
cadam	<i>I shall fall.</i>
dīcit sē cāsūrum [esse]	<i>he says that he shall fall.</i>
dīxit sē cāsūrum [esse]	<i>he said that he should fall.</i>
cecidērō	<i>I shall have fallen.</i>
dīcit fore ut ceciderit [rare]	<i>he says that he shall have fallen.</i>
dīxit fore ut cecidisset [rare]	<i>he said that he should have fallen.</i>

i. All varieties of past time are usually expressed in Indirect Discourse by the Perfect Infinitive, which may stand for the Imperfect, the Perfect, or the Pluperfect Indicative of the Direct.

Note. Continued or repeated action in past time is sometimes expressed by the Present Infinitive, which in such cases stands for the Imperfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse and is often called the Imperfect Infinitive.

The present infinitive *posse* often has a *future sense*—“*totius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant* ” (I.III), *they hope that they shall be able to get possession of all Gaul*.

§586

A question in Indirect Discourse may be either in the Subjunctive or in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

A real question, asking for an answer, is generally put in the Subjunctive; a rhetorical question, asked for effect and implying its own answer, is put in the Infinitive.

§587

A Deliberative Subjunctive (§444) in the Direct Discourse is always retained in the Indirect.

§588

All Imperative forms of speech take the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse. This rule applies not only to the Imperative of the direct discourse, but to the Hortatory and the Optative Subjunctive as well.

§589

Conditional sentences in Indirect Discourse are expressed as follows:

The Protasis, being a subordinate clause, is always in the Subjunctive.

The Apodosis, if independent and not hortatory or optative, is always in some form of the Infinitive.

i. The Present Subjunctive in the apodosis of less vivid future conditions (§516ii) becomes the Future Infinitive like the Future Indicative in the apodosis of more vivid future conditions.

Thus there is no distinction between more and less vivid future conditions in the Indirect Discourse.

ii. In changing a Condition contrary to fact (§517) into the Indirect Discourse, the following points require notice:

- i. The Protasis always remains unchanged in tense.
- ii. The Apodosis, if active, takes a peculiar infinitive form, made by combining the Participle in *-ūrus* with *fuisse*.
- iii. If the verb of the Apodosis is passive or has no supine stem, the periphrasis *futūrum fuisse ut* (with the Imperfect Subjunctive) must be used.
- iv. An Indicative in the Apodosis becomes a Perfect Infinitive.

§592

A Subordinate Clause takes the Subjunctive when it expresses the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker.

When the clause depends upon another containing a wish, a command, or a question, expressed indirectly, though not strictly in the form of Indirect Discourse.

§593

A clause depending upon a Subjunctive clause or an equivalent Infinitive will itself take the Subjunctive if regarded as an integral part of that clause.

§601

In the structure of the Period, the following rules are to be observed:

- iii. In coördinate clauses, the copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted (asyndeton). In such cases the connection is made clear by some antithesis indicated by the position of words.

§640

Anastrophe: inversion of the usual order of words.

Apodosis: the conclusion of a conditional sentence (see Protasis).

Asyndeton: omission of conjunctions (§323ii).

Ellipsis: omission of a word or words necessary to complete the sense.

Hendiadys (hen dia duoin): the use of two nouns, with a conjunction, instead of a single modified noun.

Protasis: a clause introduced by a conditional expression (*if, when, whoever*), leading to a conclusion called the Apodosis (§512).

LEWIS & SHORT'S LATIN
DICTIONARY